



ChineseClass101.com



**+ BONUS
AUDIOBOOK**

**HOLIDAYS
IN CHINA**

LEARN CHINESE

A COMPLETE PHRASE COMPILATION FOR

**TRAVELING TO
CHINA**

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM



TRAVEL TO CHINA

Conversation Cheat Sheet

Create Your
FREE Account

CLICK

MONEY & SHOPPING

Is there an ATM
nearby?

Fùjìn yǒu zìdòng qǔkuǎnjī
ma?
附近有自动取款机吗?

How much is ~?

~duō shǎo qián?
~多少钱?



one hundred yuan
yì bǎi yuán
一百元



fifty yuan
wǔshí yuán
五十元



twenty yuan
èrshí yuán
二十元



ten yuan
shí yuán
十元



five yuan
wǔ yuán
五元



one yuan
yì yuán
一元



five jiao
wǔ jiǎo
五角



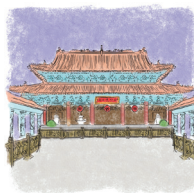
one jiao
yì jiǎo
一角

AROUND TOWN

Where is ~?

~zài nǎlǐ?
~在哪里?

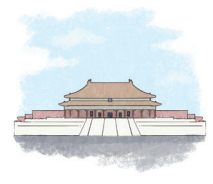
I'd like to go to ~.
Wǒ xiǎng qù~.
我想去~.



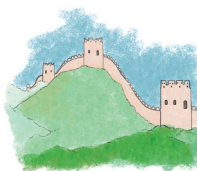
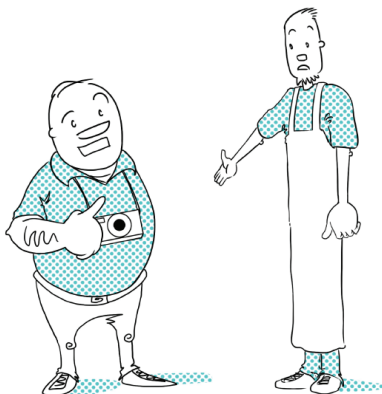
Temple of Heaven
Tiāntán
天坛



Mogao Caves
mò gāo kū
莫高窟



Forbidden City
gù gōng
故宫



Great Wall of China
chángchéng
长城



Summer Palace
yí hé yuán
颐和园



Terracotta Army
bīng mǎ yǒng
兵马俑

SURVIVAL PHRASES

Please take me to ~

qǐng dài wǒ qù~.
请带我去~.

Where is the station?

chēzhàn zài nǎlǐ?
车站在哪里?

Where is the restroom?

xǐshǒujiān zài nǎlǐ?
洗手间在哪里?

COMMUNICATION

Hello.

Nihǎo.
你好。

Excuse me.

Bù hǎo yìsi.
不好意思。

I'm sorry.

Duìbùqǐ.
对不起。

Excuse me.

Bù hǎo yìsi.
不好意思。

Hello.

Nǐ hǎo.
你好。

Nice to meet you.

Hěn gāoxìng jiàn dào nǐ.
很高兴见到你。

Please.

Qǐng.
请。

Yes.

Shì de.
是的。

I am ~

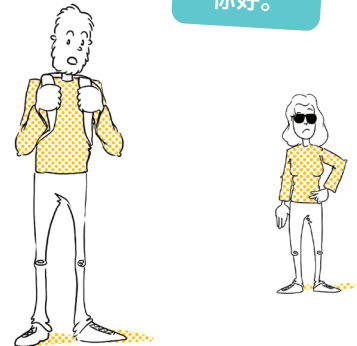
Wǒ Shì~.
我是~。

Thank you.

Xièxiè.
谢谢。

No.

Bù.
不。



ASKING QUESTIONS

Do you understand?

Nǐ míngbai ma?
你明白吗？

I understand.

Wǒ míngbai.
我明白。

I don't understand.

Wǒ bù míngbai.
我不明白。

I don't understand.

Wǒ bù míngbai.
我不明白。

Do you speak English?

Nǐ huì jiǎng Yīngyǔ ma?
你会讲英语吗？

Yes, I do.

Wǒ huìjiǎng.
我会讲。

No I don't.

Wǒ búhuì jiǎng.
我不会讲。

Can you eat sushi?

Nǐ néng chī shòusī ma?
你能吃寿司吗？

Of course.

Dāngrán.
当然。

No, I can't eat it.

Wǒ bù néng chī.
我不能吃。



ORDERING FOOD



Peking duck
Běijīng kǎoyā
北京烤鸭



century egg
pídàn
皮蛋



Chinese buns
bāozi
包子



dumpling
jiǎozi
饺子



Kung Pao Chicken
Gōngbào jīdīng
宫保鸡丁



mantou
mántou
馒头



moon cake
yuèbǐng
月饼



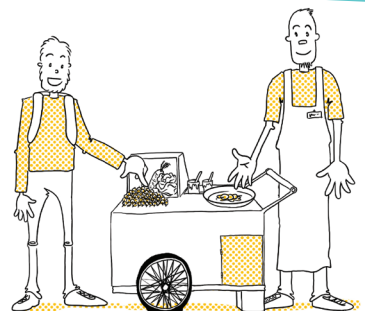
soup dumpling
xiǎolóngbāo
小笼包

~ please.

~, xièxiè.
~, 谢谢。

What do you recommend?

Nǐ yǒu shénme
tuījiàn de?
你有什么推荐的？



COUNTERS

1

yī

一

2

èr

二

3

sān

三

4

sì

四

5

wǔ

五

6

liù

六

7

qī

七

8

bā

八

9

jiǔ

九

10

shí

十

~ please.

~, xièxiè.
~, 谢谢。

COUNTERS

FAMILY & RELATIVES

Conversation Cheat Sheet



FAMILY RELATIONS

What kind of person
is your ~?
~shì shénmeyàng de rén?
~是什么样的人?


grandmother
nǎinai; wàipó
奶奶; 外婆


grandfather
yéye; wàigōng
爷爷; 外公


uncle
shūshu, bófu,
jiùjiu
叔叔, 伯父,
舅舅


cousin
tángxiōngdì,
biǎoxiōngdì
堂兄弟, 表兄弟


aunt
shēnshen,
bómǔ, jiùmā
婶婶, 伯母, 舅妈


I
wǒ
我


father
fùqīn
父亲


mother
mǔqīn
母亲


younger sister
mèimei
妹妹


older sister
jiějie
姐姐


older brother
gēge
哥哥


younger brother
dìdi
弟弟

How's your mother?

☹ Nǐ mǔqīn hái hǎo ma?
你母亲还好吗?

My mother is well.

😊 Wǒ mǔqīn hěn hǎo.
我母亲很好。

FAMILY RELATIONS


husband
zhàngfu
丈夫


wife
qīzi
妻子


son
érzi
儿子


daughter
nǚér
女儿

Forward my greetings
to your ~.
Dài Wǒ xiàng nǐ~wènhǎo.
代我向~问好。

PETS

I have a ~.
Wǒ yǒu yí ge~.
我有一个~。

dog
gǒu
狗

cat
māo
猫

bird
niǎo
鸟

fish
yú
鱼

bunny
tùzi
兔子

snake
shé
蛇

FIRST MEETING

Nice to meet you.

Hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ.
很高兴认识你。

Where are you from?

Nǐ shì nǎlǐ rén?
你是哪里人?

Can I sit here?

Wǒ kěyǐ zuò zhèlǐ ma?
我可以坐这里吗?

What's your name?

Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì?
你叫什么名字?

I'm from Beijing.

Wǒ shì Běijīng rén.
我是北京人。

What is this?

Zhè shì shénme?
这是什么?

How are you?

Nǐ hái hǎo ma?
你还好吗?

This is for you.

Zhè shì gěi nǐ de.
这是给你的。

How long will you stay?

Nǐ huì dāi duōjiǔ?
你会呆多久?

I've heard a lot about you.

jiǔyǎng jiǔyǎng.
久仰久仰。

How many people are there in your family?

Nǐ jiā yǒu jǐ gè rén?
你家有几个人?

It was nice to meet you.

Rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng.
认识你很高兴。

HOLIDAYS AND OBSERVANCES

What do you do on ~?

Zài ~nǐ huì zuò shénme?
在~你会做什么?

When is ~?

~shì shénme shíhòu?
~是什么时候?

Please tell me more about ~.

qǐng gēn wǒ jiǎngjiǎng~.
请跟我讲讲~。



Spring Festival
nónglì xīnnián
农历新年



Tomb Sweeping Day
Qīngmíng jié
清明节



Dragon Boat Festival
Duānwǔ jié
端午节



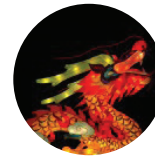
Double Seventh Festival
qīxī
七夕



National Day
guóqīng jié
国庆节



Ghost festival
zhōng yuán jié
中元节



Mid-Autumn Festival
Zhōngqiūjié
中秋节



Double Ninth Festival
chóng yáng jié
重阳节

CELEBRATIONS

Happy birthday!

Shēngrì kuàilè!
生日快乐!

April Fools' joke!

Yú rén jié wánxiào!
愚人节玩笑!

Merry Christmas!

Shèngdàn kuàilè!
圣诞快乐!

Congratulations!

Gōngxǐ!
恭喜!

Happy Halloween!

Wànshèngjié kuàilè!
万圣节快乐!

Happy New Year!

Xīnnián kuàilè!
新年快乐!

CLICK HERE to get our Chinese Learning System! Get your **Free Lifetime Account!**



DINING LIKE A CHAMP

Conversation Cheat Sheet

Create Your
FREE Account

CLICK

Phrases You Need to Know at the Dining Table

I have a reservation at nine.

Wǒ yǒu yíge Jiǔ diǎnzhōng de yùdìng.
我有一个九点钟的预定。

Do you have a table for two?

Yǒu méiyǒu liǎng ge rén de zhuōzi?
有没有两个人的桌子？

May I have a menu?

Bǎ càidān gěi wǒ hǎo ma?
把菜单给我好吗？

May I order?

Kěyǐ diǎncài le ma?
可以点菜了吗？

What do you recommend?

Yǒu shénme tuījiàn ma?
有什么推荐吗？

I'll have this, please.

Wǒ jiù yào zhège, xièxie.
我就要这个，谢谢。

Waiter!

Fúwùyuán!
服务员！

My order hasn't come yet.

Wǒ diǎn de cài hái méi shàng.
我点的菜还没上。

Check, please.

Mǎidān.
买单。

Top Words You'll Need at the Restaurant

POINT & SPEAK

biān zhǐ biān shuō.
边指边说。

This ~, please.

zhège ~.
这个~。



appetizer

qiáncài
前菜



main dish

zhǔcài
主菜



dessert

tiándiǎn
甜点



chicken

jīròu
鸡肉



beef

niúròu
牛肉



pork

zhūròu
猪肉



salad

shālā
沙拉



seafood

hǎixiān
海鲜

What are today's specials?

Jīntiān de tègōng cài shì shénme?
今天的特供菜是什么？

Can I have a drink menu?

Bǎ jiǔshuǐ dān gěi wǒ kàn yíxià hǎo ma?
把酒水单给我看一下好吗？

Can I have some more ~?

zài gěi wǒ lái yíxiē ~.
再给我来一些~。

Counters

1

yí fèn
一份

2

liǎng fèn
两份

3

sān fèn
三份

4

sì fèn
四份

5

wǔ fèn
五份

6

liù fèn
六份

7

qī fèn
七份

8

bā fèn
八份

9

jiǔ fèn
九份

10

shí fèn
十份

How to Choose The Best Foods to Fit Your Preferences

With ~, please.

jiā ~.
加 ~。

meat

ròu
肉

fish

yú
鱼

vegetables

shūcài
蔬菜

butter

huángyóu
黄油

sugar

táng
糖

olive oil

gǎnlǎnyóu
橄榄油

Without ~, please.

búyào jiā ~.
不要加 ~。

bell pepper

tián jiāo
甜椒

onions

yángcōng
洋葱

wine

pútáo jiǔ
葡萄酒

cheese

nǎilào
奶酪

tomato

fānqié
番茄

alcohol

jiǔ
酒

Does this dish contains any ~?

Zhège cài lǐ yǒu méiyǒu ~?
这个菜里有没有 ~ ?

I can't eat/drink ~.

Wǒ bù chī / hē ~.
我不吃 / 喝 ~。

Please remove ~ from this dish.

Zhè dào cài lǐ qǐng búyào jiā ~.
这道菜里请不要加 ~。

Table Request In The Restaurant

Can you bring me (a) ~?

Gěi Wǒ (yíge) ~hǎo ma ?
给我 (一个) ~ 好吗 ?

I need (a) ~.

Wǒ yào (yíge) ~.
我要 (一个) ~。

spoon

sháozi
勺子

fork

chāzi
叉子

knife

dāo
刀

napkin

cānjīn
餐巾

salt

yán
盐

black pepper

hēi hújiāo
黑胡椒

water

shuǐ
水

bread

miànbāo
面包

juice

guǒzhī
果汁

menu

càidān
菜单

coffee

kāfēi
咖啡

dessert

tiándiǎn
甜点

Complimenting and Criticizing the Food

It's delicious!

Hěn hǎochī!
很好吃 !

It looks tasty.

Wèidao hěn bàng!
味道很棒 !

It's very good!

Hěn zàn!
很赞 !

It's overcooked.

Tài lǎole.
太老了。

It lacks salt.

Bú gòu xián.
不够咸。

It's raw!

Shì shēngde!
是生的 !

It smells so nice.

Hǎo xiāng.
好香。

This is not fresh.

Bù xīnxiān.
不新鲜。

It's too spicy.

Tài là le.
太辣了。

Food Allergies & Restrictions!

I am allergic to ~.

Wǒ ~ guòmǐn.
我 ~ 过敏。

meat

ròu
肉

eggs

jīdàn
鸡蛋

milk

niúnnǎi
牛奶

peanuts

huāshēng
花生

shellfish

bèilèi
贝类

wheat

xiǎomài
小麦

soy

dòulèi
豆类

fish

yú
鱼

I am a vegetarian.

Wǒ chīsù.
我吃素。

I can't eat spicy food.

Wǒ bù chī là.
我不吃辣。

I can't eat pork.

Wǒ bù chī zhūròu.
我不吃猪肉。



ChineseClass101.com

Save 50% on any
ChineseClass101.com subscription
with coupon code

AUDIOBOOK

Gain access to hundreds of audio and video lessons, lesson notes, online vocabulary, flashcards, the voice recording tool and more with a Basic or Premium Subscription!

Click here to get started today!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #1

Thank You!

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

#1

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 谢谢。
2. 多谢。
3. 我很感谢。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 謝謝。
2. 多謝。
3. 我很感謝。

PINYIN

1. Xiè xie.
2. Duō xiè.
3. Wǒ hěn gǎn xiè.

ENGLISH

1. Thank you.
2. Thanks a lot. Thank you very much.

CONT'D OVER

3. I am very thankful. Thank you so much.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
我	我	wǒ	I, me
很	很	hěn	very
多	多	duō	many, much
您	您	nín	you (formal)
谢谢	謝謝	xièxiè	thank you
多谢。	多謝。	Duō xiè.	Thank you very much.
我很感谢。	我很感謝。	Wǒ hěn gǎnxiè.	I am very thankful.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.
今天我们有很多工作要做。 Jīntiān wǒmen yǒu hěn duō gōngzuò yào zuò. We have a lot of work to do today.	请问您贵姓? Qǐngwèn nín guìxìng? May I ask your surname?
谢谢你的帮助。 Xièxiè nǐ de bāngzhù. Thanks for your help.	感谢你的晚饭。 gǎn xiè nǐ de wǎnfàn. Thank you for the dinner.

我以公司的名义向你表示感谢。

wǒ yǐ gōngsī de míngyì xiàng nǐ biǎoshì gǎnxiè.

I express thanks to you in the name of the company.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Today's lesson covered a phrase there is no excuse not bring with you to China. In Chinese there are several ways to express ones gratitude; however by far the most common phrase used to express ones thanks is *xiè xie* (Thank you.). This is undoubtedly the phrase of gratitude you will hear the most throughout your journeys, and conveniently the easiest to pronounce.

As Chinese is a tonal language, it is important to correctly pronounce the tones, as an incorrect pronunciation of a tone can change the meaning of a word and in turn, the meaning of the phrase. In the case of *xiè xie*, however, the phrase is used so frequently that it is likely no matter how badly you mispronounce the tones, this expression of gratitude will be understood. The tones for *xiè xie* are 4th and no tone respectively. Chinese characters have meanings, and the character 谢 (*xiè*) means thanks, to thank. As the phrase *Xiè xie* consists of two of the same characters, it literally means, "Thank(s), thank(s)." However, it is translated as "Thank you."

Xiè xie nǐ. (Thank you.), or the politer version *Xiè xie nín*. (Thank you.[formal]), are common variations of the phrase *Xiè xie*. (Thank you.). In both of these phrases *xiè xie* is followed by the word for you, *nǐ* (you) or the politer version *nín* (you, formal). The literal meaning of these phrases are closer to their English counterpart "Thank you." as both phrases includes the word you.

Another polite way to express one's gratitude is the phrase, *Duō xiè*. (Thank you so much.) which literally means "Many thanks." or "A lot of thanks." The components of this sentence are *duō* (many) and *xiè* (to thank). Literally *many thanks*, but translated as "Thank you very much." The tones for this phrase are the 1st tone, the flat tone, and 4th tone, the falling tone, respectively.

Finally there is a phrase that expresses one's utmost gratitude. This phrase is Wǒ hěn gǎn xiè. (Thank you so much.) which literally means "I very feel thanks." but is translated as "Thank you so much." This phrase is reserved for very special occasions, such as when someone does something extremely kind or particularly helpful.

As mentioned previously, the tones in Chinese are extremely important. In the phrase Wǒ hěn gǎn xiè. (Thank you so much.) The first three characters in this sentence are 3rd tone, the rising falling tone. When there are two consecutive 3rd tones, the first 3rd tone changes to the 2nd tone, the rising tone, while the second 3rd tone remains 3rd tone.

For example, the word wǒ (I, me) is 3rd tone; the word hěn (very) is also 3rd tone. However, when combined to form the phrase wǒ hěn, the first 3rd tone becomes a second tone.

Wǒ hěn

In the case of Wǒ hěn gǎn xiè. (Thank you so much.) there are 3 consecutive 3rd tones! While there are exceptions to the following rule and linguistics may take issue with this, for this particular point in your studies the following rule of thumb should suffice.

When there are 3 or more consecutive 3rd tones, change each 3rd tone preceding the final 3rd tone into a 2nd tone.

The phrase Wǒ hěn gǎn xiè. (Thank you so much.) is pronounced, Wó hén gǎn xiè. Notice that the first two 3rd tones are pronounced as 2nd tones.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

The gesture for *thank you* in Chinese is to cover one's right hand with the left, and raise them chest or head high while bowing one's head.

Quick Tip #2

When in a dining situation, the waiter or waitress will often pour beverages for the patrons. A commonly used way of expressing gratitude for this action is to tap the table with one's index and middle fingers. This gesture, often repeated several times, and expresses the receiver's gratitude as well as that notion "that is enough of what is being poured."

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #2

You're Welcome!

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

2

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 不用谢。
2. 不客气。
3. 没事。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 不用謝。
2. 不客氣。
3. 沒事。

PINYIN

1. Bú yòng xiè.
2. Bú kèqì.
3. Méi shì.

ENGLISH

1. You're welcome. (literally, No need for thanks.)
2. You're welcome. (literally, No polite. or Don't be polite.)

CONT'D OVER

3. You're welcome. (literally, It's nothing.)

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
不	不	bù	(negative prefix)
不用谢。	不用謝。	Bú yòng xiè.	You're welcome. (lit. No need for thanks.)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我不认识他。 Wǒ bù rènshi tā. I don't know him.	这是我应该做的，不用谢。 zhèshìwǒyīnggāizuòde , bú yòng xiè. You are welcome. It's what I should do.
---	--

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Basic etiquette is a common characteristic shared by societies throughout the world, and China is no exception. In fact, the Chinese are exceptionally hospitable, and phrases of gratitude and those related are used at an extremely high frequency. During your travels in China, it is more probable you will hear, rather than use, one of the phrases for "You're welcome."

In Chinese there are multiple ways to acknowledge and respond to an expression of gratitude. Again, as you will be using thank you repeatedly, there is a good chance you will come into contact with all three variations of "You're welcome." The following phrases are all frequently used, with usage depending on the speaker's style rather than other factors such as politeness level, etc.

Bú yòng xiè. ("You're welcome.")

The phrase *Bú yòng xiè.* (You're welcome.) literally means "No need for thanks." or "No need for your thanks." Looking at the components of the sentence, *bu* is a negation marker. *Yong* means need/necessary, and *xiè* is thank/thanks. This phrase can be translated literally into a colloquial English expression "No need for thanks." The tone for *bù* is the 4th tone; however, when *bù* is followed by another 4th tone, the tone changes from 4th tone, the falling tone, to the 2nd tone, the rising tone.

For example:

Bùhǎo ("not good") is 4th tone and 2nd tone, and as the tone following *bù* in **not** 4th tone, *bù* remains 4th tone.

Bú yòng ("no need/not necessary") is 4th tone and 2nd tone, and as the tone following *bú* **is** 4th tone, the tone changes from 4th tone, the falling tone, to the 2nd tone, the rising tone.

Bú kèqì. ("You're welcome.")

The phrase *Bú kèqì.* literally means "Don't be polite." This phrase also begins with *bu* (the negation marker), which precedes *kèqì* (polite). Similar to the phrase *Bú yòng xiè.* ("You're welcome."), the tone for *bú* in this phrase changes from 4th tone, the falling tone, to the 2nd tone, the rising tone, as *bù* is followed by another 4th tone.

Méi shì. ("It's nothing.")

Is the most casual way of expressing the notion of "You're welcome." The phrase *Méi shì.* literally means "It's nothing." Looking at the components of the sentence, *méi* is also a negation marker, while *shì* ("thing") indicates something. When taken together in context, this phrase can be translated as "It doesn't matter." or "It's nothing."

In each of the phrases above the speaker is emphasizing that there is no need for thanks or gratitude. In fact, each phrase is a negative sentence. This provides interesting insight into how the Chinese acknowledge and respond to an expression of gratitude, as the speaker is almost discouraging the thanking party showing appreciation. The negative commonality of these phrases provides interesting insight into how the Chinese perceive gratitude.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Méi shì. ("It's nothing.") in the Beijing dialect is *Méi shìr*. The frequent use of the noun suffix -r

is distinctive characteristic of the Beijing dialect.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #3

This Please

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

3

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 请给我。
2. 请给我这个。
3. 请给我那个。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 請給我。
2. 請給我這個。
3. 請給我那個。

PINYIN

1. Qǐng gěi wǒ.
2. Qǐng gěi wǒ zhège.
3. Qǐng gěi wǒ nàge

ENGLISH

1. Please give me.
2. Please give me this.

CONT'D OVER

3. Please give me that.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
我	我	wǒ	I, me
那个	那個	nàge	that
请给我。	請給我。	Qǐng gěi wǒ.	Please give me.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	我想问一下，那个人是谁？ Wǒ xiǎng wèn yíxià, nàge rén shì shéi? I want to ask, who is that?
小姐，请给我菜单。 Xiǎojiě, qǐng gěi wǒ càidān. Miss, please give me the menu.	请给我一杯水。 Qǐng gěi wǒ yī bēi shuǐ. Please give me a glass of water.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

China is a large and diverse country. In addition to the many places to see and visit, there are also many foods to try and goods to buy! However, in order to sample these new tastes and capitalize on some of the jaw-dropping deals you are sure to come across, you must be able to ask for what you want. In China there are many street vendors, shops, stores, restaurants, and other locals where you can practice the phrase *Qǐng gěi wǒ* [something]. ("Please give me [something]."), which is commonly used when asking for something.

When asking for something in Chinese, you need to include the verb *to give* and the pronoun for the person receiving the object. The phrase used to accomplish this is *Qǐng gěi wǒ* [something]. ("Please give me [something]."), with the "something" desired positioned at the end of the sentence.

Compared to its English counterpart phrase, "[something] please." the phrase used to ask for something in Chinese is relatively complex as the receiver of the object, the indirect object, must be included. In English, the same request can be accomplished by identifying the "something" desired and following it with "please." (If it is just one thing, an indefinite article would be needed too.) The difference is exemplified here:

English: "A Big Mac please."

Chinese: *Qǐng gěi wǒ jùwá bà.* ("Please give me a Big Mac.")

As it is highly unlikely that you will know the word for each "something" you come to desire, so using the physical location of the "something" you want to communicate this is an extremely useful tactic. For something located nearby, you can refer to the thing with the word *zhège* ("this"). Therefore, to ask for something nearby you can use the phrase *Qǐng gěi wǒ zhège*. ("This please.") For something further away, there is the phrase *Qǐng gěi wǒ nàge*. ("Please give me that.")

The first three characters in this sentence are 3rd tone, the rising-falling tone. When there are two consecutive 3rd tones, the first 3rd tone changes to the 2nd tone, the rising tone, while the second 3rd tone remains 3rd tone. For example, the word *nǐ* ("you") is 3rd tone, and the word *hǎo* is also 3rd tone. However, when combined to form the phrase *Ní hǎo*. ("Hello.") The first 3rd tone becomes a 2nd tone.

In the case of *Qǐng gěi wǒ*! there are three consecutive 3rd tones! While there are exceptions to this rule and linguists may take issue with this, the following rule for encountering three or more consecutive 3rd tones should suffice.

When there are three or more consecutive 3rd tones, change each 3rd tone preceding the last one to a 2nd tone.

The phrase *Qǐng gěi wǒ* ("Please give me") is pronounced *Qíng géi wǒ*. ("Please give me"), with the first two 3rd tones changing to 2nd tones.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

An extremely useful tactic for conveying what you want to a vender is using body language to identify the item you want while saying, *Qǐng gěi wǒ*. This should be more than enough to clearly convey your intention.

Quick Tip #2

When asking for something or shopping at locals where there are no price tags, be sure to haggle over the price! The quoted price is usually much higher than the price the vender would be willing to sell at.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #4

Basic Greetings

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

4

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你好。
2. 早上好。
3. 你好吗。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你好。
2. 早上好。
3. 你好嗎。

PINYIN

1. Nǐ hǎo.
2. Zǎo shang hǎo.
3. Nǐ hǎo ma?

ENGLISH

1. Hello.
2. Good morning.

CONT'D OVER

3. How are you?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
你	你	nǐ	you	
好	好	hǎo	good	adjective
早上好。	早上好。	Zǎo shang hǎo.	good morning	expression
你好吗？	你好嗎？	Nǐ hǎo ma?	hello, how are you ?	expression

SAMPLE SENTENCES

是你吗？ Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	我感觉很好。 wǒ gǎnjué hěn hǎo . I feel good.
他真的是个很好的人。善良又大方。 tā zhēnde shì gè hěn hǎo de rén . shànláng yòu dàfāng . He is a really good person, kind and generous.	加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.
早上好，先生。 Zǎoshàng hǎo, Xiānshēng. Good morning, Sir.	Frank，你好吗？ Frank, nǐ hǎo ma ? How are you, Frank?

GRAMMAR

In Chinese there are several basic greetings, with usage dependent on the time of day. However, there is one universal phrase that can be used regardless of the time of day and is more than appropriate for any social situation you may find yourself in. This universal phrase is *Nǐ hǎo ma?* ("How are you?") The components of this phrase are *nǐ* ("you"), *hǎo* ("good"), and *ma* (a question-marker indicating that the sentence is a question), and this phrase literally means "You good?" The *ma* is sometimes omitted resulting in the greeting *Nǐ hǎo* ("Hello.").

The first two words in this sentence are 3rd tone, the rising-falling tone. When there are two consecutive 3rd tones, the first 3rd tone changes to the 2nd tone, the rising tone, while the second 3rd tone remains 3rd tone. The word *nǐ* ("you") is 3rd tone, and the word *hǎo* is also 3rd tone. However, when combined to form the phrase *Nǐ hǎo*. ("Hello.") The first 3rd tone becomes a 2nd tone, *Nǐ hǎo*.

To increase the politeness level of this statement for instances when you want to show the utmost respect, simply replace *nǐ* ("you") with its formal counterpart *nín* ("you," formal). *Nín hǎo ma?* ("How are you?" [formal]). This simple substitution increases the formality and politeness level of the sentence.

In Chinese the phrase *Zǎo shang hǎo*. ("Good morning.") is used in the morning. Literally this phrase means "morning good," and is translated as "Good morning". The components of this phrase are *zǎo* ("morning"), *shang* ("up") and *hǎo* ("good"). Together *zǎoshang* means "morning," and this is followed by "good" (*hǎo*).

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

The handshake is now a common form of greeting among most Chinese. In particular, when greeting a foreigner, most Chinese will offer a greeting with a handshake.

The traditional Chinese greeting is to cup one's hands, left over right, chest high with the elbows bent so that the knuckles are facing up, while bowing. In the past, the hands were raised even higher to show respect for someone of higher social status.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #5

Goodbye

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

5

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 再见。
2. 明天见。
3. 晚安。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 再見。
2. 明天見。
3. 晚安。

PINYIN

1. Zài jiàn.
2. Míngtiān jiàn.
3. Wǎn ān.

ENGLISH

1. See you (later).
2. See you tomorrow.

CONT'D OVER

3. Good night.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
再	再	zài	again
明天	明天	míngtiān	tomorrow
再见	再見	zài jiàn	see you again
明天见	明天見	míngtiān jiàn	see you tomorrow
晚安	晚安	wǎn'ān	good evening, good night

SAMPLE SENTENCES

再做一遍吧。 Zài zuò yī biàn ba. Do it again.	明天我去公园。 Míngtiān wǒ qù gōngyuán. Tomorrow, I'm going to the park.
谢谢，再见！ Xièxie, zàijiàn! Thanks, bye!	我们明天见。 Wǒmen míngtiān jiàn. We'll see each other tomorrow.
我先走。 晚安！ Wǒ xiān zǒu. Wǎn'ān! I'll go now. Good night!	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Chinese there are several parting greetings; however, there is one universal phrase that can be used for almost every situation. This universal phrase is *Zài jiàn* ("See you again."). Literally this phrase means, "Again meet." The components that make up this phrase are *zài* ("again") *jiàn* ("meet"), and both tones of the words in this sentence are 4th tone, the falling tone. The word *jiàn* ("meet") appears in multiple parting greetings. For example, there is the parting phrase *Míngtiān jiàn*. ("See you tomorrow.") In this phrase, the word *zài* ("again") is replaced with *míngtiān* ("tomorrow"), forming the phrase, "See you tomorrow." *Jiàn* ("to meet") doesn't change, and can be used as the basis for forming other parting phrases. For example, if you are meeting your friend at four o'clock you can say, *Sì-diǎn jiàn*. ("See you at four o'clock.") In short, when used in a parting phrase, *jiàn* ("meet") means "See you," but in Chinese this cannot stand alone. In order to complete the phrase, one must specify time when they will see each other again. If there is a specific time or a general idea of when the two parties will meet next, that time can be used and precedes *jiàn* ("meet").

Specific time (4:30): *Sì-diǎn jiàn*. ("See you at four-thirty.")

General time (tomorrow): *Míngtiān jiàn*. ("See you tomorrow.")

If the time of the next meeting is not known, *zài jiàn* ("See you again.") can be used.

In English, the position of the first part of the phrase, "See you," is fixed, while what follows changes: "See you tomorrow." "See you tonight." "See you at 2." This is the opposite in Chinese, as the first part of the phrase changes, while the latter part, *jiàn*, is fixed.

In Chinese *Wan an*. ("Good night!") is used as a final parting phrase at night or before going to bed. The words for "evening" (*wan*) and "peaceful" (*an*) are paired, meaning peaceful night. This is a common greeting before turning in for the night.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

When saying goodbye, it would not be unusual for the host of a dinner, or get-together, to make time to see you off. In fact, it would not be surprising if this includes watching you ride off into the night, sunset, or any other applicable place one drives off into! In fact, Chinese etiquette dictates that it is the host's duty to accompany each guest to the door at the end of

the festivities.

Quick Tip #2

Gua la. is used when hanging up the phone.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #6

Where is the Bathroom?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

6

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 洗手间在哪儿?
2. 洗手间在哪儿啊?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 洗手間在哪裡?
2. 洗手間在哪兒啊?

PINYIN

1. Xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr?
2. Xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr a?

ENGLISH

1. Where is the bathroom?
2. Where is the bathroom?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
洗手间	洗手間	xǐshǒujiān	bathroom

在	在	zài	to exist
哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where
银行	銀行	yínháng	bank

SAMPLE SENTENCES

洗手间在那儿。 Xǐshǒujiān zài nàr. The washroom is there.	一个人在外面漂泊了很多年，真想再回家看看。 Yī ge rén zài wàimiàn piāobó le hěn duō nián , zhēn xiǎng zài huí jiā kànkàn. I've been drifting far from home for many years -- I'd really love to go home for a visit.
ATM机在哪儿? ATMjī zài nǎr? Where is the ATM?	你们去哪儿? Nǐmen qù nǎr? Where are you going?
你可以到银行去转账。 Nǐ kěyǐ dào yínháng qù zhuǎnzhàng. You can go to the bank to transfer funds.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

For visiting foreigners, using the bathroom in China can be quite a memorable experience for many reasons. However, before using one, you have to find one. There is one linguistically hard way to do this, and one linguistically easy way to. We will look at the former first.

In Chinese, you can ask for the location of the bathroom with the following phrase *Xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr?* ("Where is the bathroom?"). Literally this phrase means "Bathroom is where?", with the components of the sentence being *xǐshǒujiān* ("bathroom") *zài* ("exists") *nǎr* ("where"). As

nǎr is an interrogative, the question-marker *ma* is not needed.

The first two tones of *xǐshǒu* are 3rd tones, the rising falling tone. When there are two consecutive 3rd tones, the first 3rd tone changes to the 2nd tone, the rising tone, while the second 3rd tone remains 3rd tone. Therefore, *xǐshǒu* is pronounced *xíshǒu*: 2nd tone, 3rd tone.

The following is the basic pattern for asking where something can be found (exists or is):

(something) *zài nǎr?* ["Where is (something)?"]

For example, when asking about the location of a bank (*yínháng*), the word for "bank" (*yínháng*) would be placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Yínháng zài nǎr? ["Where is the bank?"]

Notice how the latter parts of the sentence, *zài nǎr*, do not change.

The linguistically easy way to ask about the restroom in China is to say the letters "WC." These two letters stand for "Water Closet," which is widely understood in China as bathroom or restroom. By saying these two letters, not only will the reference to bathroom/restroom be understood, but the notion that the speaker is looking for one is also conveyed.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

The sanitary standards of certain bathrooms in China may be considered shocking by tourists from developed countries. Even at extremely good restaurants, it is not surprising if you find a less than tidy bathroom. So be sure to carry tissues and especially wet tissues wherever you go. You can pick some up at most convenience stores.

Quick Tip #2

The two letters WC convey not only the notion of bathroom, but the fact that the speaker is looking for one. "W" and "C" are the two most important and useful letters when traveling in China.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #7

I Don't Understand

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

#7

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我不明白。
2. 不好意思。
3. 我不会说中文。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我不明白。
2. 不好意思。
3. 我不會說中文。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ bù míngbaí.
2. Bù hǎo yìsi.
3. Wǒ bù huì shuō zhōngwén.

ENGLISH

1. I don't understand.
2. I'm sorry. I feel bad.

CONT'D OVER

3. I can't speak Chinese.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
说	說	shuō	to speak
中文	中文	Zhōngwén	Chinese (language)
我不明白。	我不明白。	Wǒ bù míngbai.	I don't understand.
我不会说中文。	我不會說中文。	Wǒ bù huì shuō zhōngwén.	I can't speak Chinese.
不好意思。	不好意思。	Bù hǎo yìsi.	I'm sorry. I feel bad.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

南方人的普通话不太标准。 Nánfāng rén de pǔtōnghuà bù tài biāozhǔn. The mandarin of Southerners is not terribly standard.	我不学中文。 Wǒ bù xué Zhōngwén. I don't study Chinese.
我不明白你的意思。 Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ de yìsi. I don't get your meaning.	我从小在国外长大，所以我不会说中文。 wǒ cóng xiǎo zài guówàizhǎng dà, suǒyǐ wǒ bùhuì shuō Zhōngwén. I can't speak Chinese, because I grew up in a foreign country.
不好意思，给我们照张相好吗？ Bùhǎo yìsi, gěi wǒmen zhào zhāng xiàng hǎo ma? Excuse me; can you take a photo for us?	

GRAMMAR

"I don't understand" is going to be a very useful phrase because most of the time, maybe even almost 100% of the time, you won't understand. The Chinese language sounds very different from English and in the beginning it will be very difficult to get your ear used to it. Michael himself spent a good month or two in China before he could really understand what the locals were saying. But don't worry. If you keep it up, you'll get it. Until then, practice the phrase *Wǒ bù míngbaí*. ("I don't understand.")

The first two parts of this phrase are words you have seen before: *wǒ* ("I") and *bù* ("no"). The verb in this phrase is *míngbaí*, which means "to understand." The phrase is literally "I no understand." ("I don't understand.")

Most people don't speak in isolated, four syllable phrases. In the lesson, we asked you to try to add *Bù hǎo yìsī*. ("I'm sorry" or "I feel bad") onto the beginning of *Wǒ bù míngbaí*. This will make you sound more fluid and also more polite. (It is nice when a foreigner comes your country for them to apologize for not speaking your language.) Literally, *Bù hǎo yìsī* means "no good meaning." As was mentioned in a previous lesson, *Bù hǎo yìsī* is used as an apology or to say excuse me. Together, these two phrases become: "I'm sorry. I don't understand."

Wǒ bù huì shuō zhōngwén means "I don't speak Chinese." *Huì* is a verb that indicates the ability to do something. (*Huì* also has other meanings, but we will try not to confuse you.) Generally *huì* refers to having knowledge or a certain skill. It is not used when the ability to do something is based on physical ability (for example a task that requires a certain amount of physical strength). You can place *huì* before another verb to say that you (or another subject) have the ability to do the second verb. In this phrase the second verb is *shuō*. *Shuō* means to say or to speak. *Huì shuō* means to be able to speak. In this sentence we combine the noun *zhōngwén* with the verb *shuō*. *Zhōngwén* means Chinese. Literally, this noun can be broken into two pieces: *hōng* and *wén*. *Zhōng* means middle. In ancient times the Chinese believed their land was the center of the world, thus the Chinese word for China is *Zhōngguó* ("middle kingdom"). In Chinese the character *zhōng* is used to indicate all things Chinese. *Wén* means language, literature, or culture. Put together, *Zhōngwén* literally means "middle language" or the language of the middle kingdom. Thus we get the word *Zhōngwén*, which means "the Chinese language." *Zhōngwén* can be attached onto the end of the verb *shuō* ("to speak") to make the compound verb phrase "to speak Chinese." Notice that this is just like English. You just add the word for a certain language after the verb "to speak." This can be done in exactly the same way for any language you want. (For example English, which is *yīngyǔ*, can be

added onto the end of *shuō* for the verb phrase *shuō yīngyǔ* ["to speak English."] Adding *huì*, the phrase is *huì shuō zhōngwén* ("to be able to speak Chinese").

We negate this phrase by adding the word *bù* ("no") onto the beginning. (This is the same way we negate all verbs in the present tense except for one. More about that in a later lesson.) It is important that you pay attention to the way *bù* is pronounced. Normally *bù* is the fourth tone, the falling tone, but when it is put in front of another fourth tone (here *huì*) *bù* becomes *bú*, the second tone, the rising tone. The phrase then is *bú huì shuō zhōngwén* ("not able to speak Chinese"). Now we just add *wǒ* ("I") onto the beginning (the subject comes first, just like in English) and you are all set. *Wǒ bù huì shuō zhōngwén*. ("I can't speak Chinese.")

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Sadly, China's most beautiful tourist destinations are swarming with peddlers. There probably will be one time where you see something being sold and think "Oh, hey, that's cool." Or maybe you say to yourself, "That's convenient, postcards right outside the Forbidden City." But you probably do not need fifty people selling postcards outside the Forbidden City. Nor do most people come to China to buy fake Rolexes. (Though they can be a neat souvenir for your relatives.) The Chinese believe in the hard sell. These peddlers generally ignore "I don't want any." At least the first few times you say it. Try today's phrases out on them. When they approach you, even if they're speaking English, say, "*Bù hǎo yìsī. Wǒ bù míngbaí. Wǒ bù huì shuō zhōngwén.*" ("I'm sorry. I don't understand. I can't speak Chinese.") Then walk away quickly, your head held high, possibly giggling to yourself a little. They will be too shocked to react. Hopefully, the peddler will just laugh a little and let you go.

Quick Tip #2

Watch out, there are many different ways of saying the word Chinese (as in the language). In addition to *zhōngwén*, two common forms are *Hànyǔ* and *Guóyǔ*, but there are others out there and they can be different for different regions. So stay on your toes.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #8

Can You Speak English?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

8

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你会说英语吗?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你會說英語嗎?

PINYIN

1. Nǐ huì shuō yīngyǔ ma?

ENGLISH

1. Can you speak English?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
你	你	nǐ	you
说	說	shuō	to speak
你会说英语吗?	你會說英語嗎?	Nǐ huì shuō yīngyǔ ma.	Can you speak English?

SAMPLE SENTENCES

是你吗?

Shì nǐ ma?

Is it you?

南方人的普通话不太标准。

Nánfāng rén de pǔtōnghuà bù tài biāozhǔn.

The mandarin of Southerners is not terribly standard.

你会说英语吗?

Nǐ huì shuō yīngyǔ ma?

Can you speak English?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Today's lesson covers an important phrase you that will prove useful when searching for someone who can speak English, or another language. Using this phrase as opposed to speaking English at someone is important for many reasons. For one, if the party you're speaking to doesn't understand English, at least they'll be able to understand what you're asking. Furthermore, if they cannot speak English, they may be able to help you find someone who does. And finally, it shows a lot of respect to show that you took the effort to learn even a little bit of the language, and for these reasons and many more, we're going to cover this phrase.

In Chinese, the following phrase is used to ask if the listening party can speak English: *Nǐ huì shuō yīngyǔ ma*. ("Can you speak English?"). Looking at this question by component, *nǐ*, the pronoun for you, is the first word in the sentence. This is followed by the auxiliary verb *huì* ("can") and the verb *shuō* ("to speak"). In our example this is followed by *yīngyǔ* ("English"). "*Nǐ huì shuō yīngyǔ*" literally means "You can speak English." This is a statement, and can be used accordingly. However, if we attach the question-marker *ma*, this statement becomes a question. This is illustrated in the following example:

Nǐ huì shuō yīngyǔ. - "You can speak English."

Nǐ huì shuō yīngyǔ ma? - "Can you speak English?"

To ask someone if they can speak a different language, simply replace *yīngyǔ* with the Chinese word for the language you would like to ask about. For example, if you would like to ask,

"Can you speak **French**?"

Nǐ huì shuō **fǎyǔ** ma? ("Can you speak French?")

Notice the common word, *yǔ* ("to speak"), shared by both Chinese words for French and English. In fact, the *yǔ* ("to speak") will appear as part of a word for languages. For example, "English" is *yīngyǔ*, "French" is *fǎyǔ*, and "Chinese" can be *Hànyǔ*.

The following is an excerpt from a previous lesson on the verb *huì* ("to be able"). *Huì* is a verb that indicates the ability to do something. (*Huì* also has other meanings, but we will try not to confuse you.) Generally *huì* refers to having knowledge or a certain skill. It is not used when the ability to do something is based on physical ability (for example, a task that requires a certain amount of physical strength). You can place *huì* before another verb to say that you (or another subject) have the ability to do the second verb. In this phrase the second verb is *shuō*. *Shuō* means "to say" or "to speak." *Huì shuō* means "to be able to speak." In this sentence we combine the noun *yīngyǔ* with the verb *shuō*. *Yīngyǔ* means "English." Literally, this noun can be broken into two pieces: *yīng* and *yǔ*. *Yīng* means "English." *Yǔ* means language, words, or speech. Put together, *yīngyǔ* literally means "English language," or the language of the middle kingdom. Thus we get the word *Zhōngwén*, which means "the Chinese language." *Zhōngwén* can be attached onto the end of the verb *shuō* ("to speak") to make the compound verb phrase "to speak Chinese."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Other languages:

Japanese - *Rìyǔ* (日语)

German - *Déyǔ* (德语)

Korean - *Hányǔ* (韩语)

Italian - *Yìdàlìyǔ* (意大利语)

Spanish - *Xībānyáyǔ* (西班牙语)

Arabic - *Alābóyǔ* (阿拉伯语)

Russian - *Eluósīyǔ* (俄罗斯语)

Hindi - *Yìndùyǔ* (印度语)

Quick Tip #2

In Chinese there are usually two ways to refer to a language. For example, *Yīngyǔ* ("English") and *Yīngwén* ("English"). The pattern including *yǔ* ("to speak") is commonly used when referring to the spoken language; whereas, *wén* ("language," "literature," or "culture") can be used to refer to spoken language and literature. However, they are often used interchangeably.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #9

Please Say it Once Again

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

9

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 请再说一遍。
2. 请慢一点。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 請再說一遍。
2. 請慢一點。

PINYIN

1. Qǐng zài shuō yībiàn.
2. Qǐng màn yīdiǎn.

ENGLISH

1. Please say it again.
2. A little slower please.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
再	再	zài	again

说	說	shuō	to speak
慢	慢	màn	slowly, slow
请再说一遍。	請再說一遍。	Qǐng zài shuō yībiàn.	Please say it again.
请慢一点。	請慢一點。	Qǐng màn yīdiǎn.	Slowly, please.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

再做一遍吧。 Zài zuò yī biàn ba. Do it again.	南方人的普通话不太标准。 Nánfāng rén de pǔtōnghuà bù tài biāozhǔn. The mandarin of Southerners is not terribly standard.
你可以说得慢一点吗? Nǐ kěyǐ shuō de màn yīdiǎn ma? Can you speak a little slower?	不好意思, 请再说一遍, 好吗? Bùhǎoyìsi, qǐng zài shuō yī biàn, hǎo ma? Excuse me, please say that again, okay?
我听不懂, 请说慢一点儿。 wǒ tīngbùdǒng, qǐng shuō màn yīdiǎnr I don't understand. Please speak more slowly.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Here at ChineseClass101.com we believe that there is a tremendous amount of Chinese you can learn from speakers of the language wherever you are located geographically. Therefore, we do our best to provide you with the tools to allow you to turn everyday encounters into a learning opportunity. Today's lesson is one of the first steps in that process.

In Chinese, the following phrase is used to ask the speaking party to repeat what was said: *Qǐng zài shuō yībiàn.* ("Please say it again.") Chinese people speak fast. They use words you

haven't studied before. They don't necessarily use the simplest grammar. All this can make interactions with Chinese people very frustrating for the beginner. The best thing is to remember to be patient. Every time you talk to a Chinese person you are improving. If you're not actually learning things that you can write down later, at least you're getting your brain accustomed to how Chinese people speak; you are working on one of the most important parts of any language: an unconscious feeling for that language. So be patient, and when you don't understand, say *Qǐng zài shuō yībiàn*.

Looking at this question by component, *qǐng* means "please." It can be used almost exactly as the English "please" except that it always comes at the beginning of the sentence. (Unlike in English where you can add "please" onto the end of a request.) *Qǐng* must be either the first word in a sentence or directly follow the subject of the sentence. In this phrase there is no subject (the subject, "you," is implied) so *qǐng* is the first word.

The next word, *zài*, means "again." *Zài* is always placed before the verb in a sentence. The verb in this phrase is *shuō* which means "to say." So far our phrase is: *Qǐng zài shuō*. This means "Please say again." You could get by just saying this; however, Chinese people almost always add *yībiàn*. *Yī* means "one," and *biàn* is a measure word for a number of times. We will cover the way measure words are used in another lesson. For now, it's just fine to remember *biàn* is translated as "time(s)." Thus *yībiàn* is "one time." Added onto the end of the phrase, the whole phrase becomes "*Qǐng zài shuō yībiàn*." ("Please say again one time.") In English we would want to add the object "it" into this sentence to make it "Please say it again one time." but in Chinese this object is unnecessary and actually would hurt the flow of the sentence. Objects and subjects in Chinese are often left out when their meaning can be inferred from context. So, again, the whole phrase is *Qǐng zài shuō yībiàn*. This is translated as "Please say it again one time."

Unfortunately, getting someone to repeat themselves doesn't guarantee you'll understand them the second time. (Or the third, or fourth time, for that matter. Did we mention how it's important to be patient?) One key to understanding people is getting them to speak slower. *Qǐng shuō màn yīdiǎn*. means "A little slower, please." *Qǐng*, again, means "please." *Màn* means "slow." *Yīdiǎn* means "a little." Literally, the phrase would be "Please a little slow." and this is kind of what it means. "*Màn yīdiǎn*" does mean "a little slow," but often *yīdiǎn* attached to an adjective implies the meaning "more" of a certain adjective. Thus here *màn yīdiǎn* means "a little slower." If someone were to say they wish they were *gāo yīdiǎn*, they are not saying they wish they were "a little tall" (the speaker could already be very tall), they are saying they wish they were "a little taller." (*Gāo* means "tall" or "high.") Now we can understand how our phrase, "*Qǐng shuō màn yīdiǎn*." comes to mean "A little slower, please."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

In Chinese there are two ways of saying "again." *Zài* means "again," but it refers to events that are going to happen in the future. Thus in our phrase we used *zài*. The person you are talking to is going to repeat themselves after you ask. Events that have happened again in the past are given the word *yòu*. *Yòu* also means "again," but it is only for the past. "*Yòu shuō le yībiàn*" means "(He/she/you) said it again." Notice how this sentence is in the past tense. (Please allow us to ignore "/e" for now. That must be saved for another time. We just wanted to point out an interesting feature of the Chinese language. This is just a Quick Tip after all.)

Quick Tip #2

Michael lied in the lesson. He said he learned most of his Chinese in China from Chinese people. That may be true, but when he first got to China he didn't understand anything the Chinese people were saying. That made it very hard to have Chinese friends. So Michael cheated. He made friends with Koreans and Japanese people. He spent a lot of his first few months in China hanging out with these fellow foreigners. They didn't speak English, so he was forced to speak Chinese with them. Their Chinese wasn't great, but this taught Michael to use Chinese as a form of communication and not just see it as a hobby. It also helped that they only used basic words and tended to speak more slowly. The ChineseClass101.com team encourages you to cheat. Cheating is only wrong in professional sports and gambling. In language it doesn't matter how you get fluent, only that you do it. So go look for some non-English speakers who can practice Chinese with you at your level. In this case, we really mean it; you'll be surprised how far your little Chinese will go.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #10

Apologies

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

10

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 对不起。
2. 不好意思。
3. 没问题。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 對不起。
2. 不好意思。
3. 沒問題。

PINYIN

1. Duì bùqǐ.
2. Bùhǎo yìsī.
3. Méi wèntí.

ENGLISH

1. I am sorry. Excuse me.
2. I am sorry. Literally, to feel embarrassed

CONT'D OVER

3. No problem.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
不	不	bù	(negative prefix)
好	好	hǎo	good
不好意思。	不好意思。	Bù hǎo yìsi.	I'm sorry. I feel bad.
对不起	對不起	duìbùqǐ	I'm sorry
没问题。	沒問題。	Méi wèntí.	no problems, ok

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我不认识他。 Wǒ bù rènshi tā. I don't know him.	加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.
不好意思，给我们照张相好吗？ Bùhǎo yìsi, gěi wǒmen zhào zhāng xiàng hǎo ma? Excuse me; can you take a photo for us?	对不起,我很忙。 Duìbuqǐ, wǒ hěn máng. Sorry, I'm very busy.
你放心吧，没问题。 Nǐ fàngxīn ba, méi wèntí. You should relax. No problem.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Many foreigners coming to China speak no Chinese at all. (Well, besides a garbled *Nǐ hǎo ma*?) Chinese people have come to expect this from foreigners on the street. Most Chinese people will not say anything to you if they are trying to get past you or would like you to move out of the way. Some wave their hands to indicate they'd like you to move, some lower their head and just try to push through. Some Chinese people will even say "I'm sorry." or "Excuse me." in English when squeezing past you on a crowded bus. This lesson is your chance to shock complete strangers. Saying "Sorry." or "Excuse me." in Chinese (*Duì bùqǐ.* or *Bùhǎo yìsī.*) will make people do a double-take as you pass. Saying *Méi wèn tí.* ("No problem.") in response to their English "I'm sorry." will make their eyes go wide. It may even elicit a stunned "Your Chinese is really good." To which you can respond with the *Xièxiè.* we have already learned. Other people don't have to know that you've just started learning. (Chinese people in general have very low expectations of foreigners' Chinese levels, especially when they are taken by surprise in public. Often a couple words in understandable Chinese are enough to get a "Your Chinese is very good.") *Duì bùqǐ.* means "I'm sorry." or "Excuse me." *Bùhǎo yìsī.* can be broken into three separate words: *bù* (no) *hǎo* (good) *yìsī* (meaning). Altogether this would be "No good meaning." *Bùhǎo yìsī.* actually means something more like "I feel bad." and can also be used as "I'm sorry." or "Excuse me." Teaching a language we feel that we have a responsibility to give you ways to distinguish between words that have very similar meanings. In the lesson we tried to do this. The truth is, the difference is miniscule. If you want to, you can use the two words interchangeably. If you must distinguish between them, the difference is that *Duì bùqǐ.* is more often used as an apology, whereas *Bùhǎo yìsī.* more often is used the way English speakers use "Excuse me." However, just like in English where "I'm sorry." and "Excuse me." can often be used in the same situations, *Bùhǎo yìsī.* and *Duì bùqǐ.* can always be switched out for one another. Let's look at some examples:

You're riding the subway. You can't remember the name of the station that you're supposed to get off at. You pull out your little notebook where you've written down the name of the station. While you're still flipping through your book, the subway pulls into the next station and the brakes come on. The sudden decrease in speed causes you to lose your balance a little. You take a couple steps to your right, trying to regain your balance, but your foot lands squarely on the leather shoe of a man sitting in the seats in front of you. He looks up at you surprised, sees you're a foreigner, and immediately gives up any hope of communication. In this case, both forms are equally acceptable. For many people *Duì bùqǐ.* might be more natural because it is used a little more often as an apology, but *Bùhǎo yìsī.* would also be totally fine. Both will probably increase the man's surprise. Most likely he will say nothing and just wave his hand,

indicating that it's no problem. Don't feel too bad if he then brushes off his shoe, it's probably been stepped on at least once today.

Now, let's take the same situation, in the subway, trying to figure out where to get off, and say you want ask the person next to you what the next stop is. (We'll have to leave the actual question "What's the next stop?" to a later lesson.) You gently tap the woman next to you on the shoulder. Here many people would say *Bùhǎo yìsī*. because it is probably closer to "Excuse me." It means you feel bad for disturbing the other person. However, *Duì bùqǐ*. would also be perfectly fine. It would be like saying "Sorry, but..." Hopefully, these two examples help demonstrate the difference between *Duì bùqǐ*. and *Bùhǎo yìsī*. Most importantly, they should show just how small this difference is.

So how do you respond when someone says to you "I'm sorry." Probably the most common response is a very casual *Méi wèntí*. This literally means "no problem." *Méi* means "no." (It indicates the absence of something, in this case the absence of a problem. The difference between *méi* and *bù* is very important, but we will have to save that for another lesson. For now, always translating "no" as *bù* unless given a specific example is a safe bet.) *Wèntí* means "problem" or "question." So, together we get "no problem." Using *Méi wèntí*. is a snap. Just drop it whenever someone says *Duì bùqǐ*. or *Bùhǎo yìsī*. It's bound to get a good reaction.

Méi wèntí. can also be used in the other way that the English "No problem." is used. It can be used to mean "Okay." If some asks you to do something, or if you want to do something, you can respond *Méi wèntí*. "No problem."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Another way to respond to *Bùhǎo yìsī*. or *Duì bùqǐ*. is *Méi shì*. *Méi* means "no," and *shì* can mean "business," "affair," "matter," or "trouble." So *Méi shì*. can be translated as "No trouble." *Méi shì*. can be used just the same as *Méi wèntí*. and is probably equally common. *Méi shì*. also has one advantage over *Méi shì*. it gives you a chance to toy with a Beijing accent.

Accents in China range widely. Beijing Chinese is often considered the most standard Chinese, and Chinese people with strong accents from other places often seem to think of themselves as having somewhat defective Mandarin. This is not to say that everyone thinks

the Beijing accent sounds nice. There is a big rivalry between Shanghai and Beijing and thus Shanghai people may not like the Beijing accent very much at all. Many Chinese people think Beijingers are somewhat full of themselves and haughty about being from the capital; but there is still a certain degree to which Beijing Chinese is respected throughout China. Lots of people will think it's great fun if you come out sporting a Beijing accent.

One part of the Beijing accent is a tendency to add *er* onto the end of all sorts of words. Thus *Méi shì* is pronounced *Méi shìr*. Try it a couple times. This one is very easy and comes out very naturally. Many other words also can get an *er* at the end, but not all words. There is no real rule for this, it just requires experience, so you might want to hold off before you just start adding *er* to everything.

Quick Tip #2

You might find the word *lǎojià* when you look up "excuse me" in a dictionary or a beginner's Chinese book. It's true this word does mean "excuse me," it's used to clear the way when navigating a crowd, but no one ever uses it. Michael reports hearing it one time, in a supermarket when a stocker was trying to get through a group of people while pushing a cart full of yoghurt. Michael was shocked because he had seen that word in books before, but never actually heard anyone use it. You're welcome to say *lǎojià* if you want, just know that nobody else uses it.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #11

Business Greetings - Welcome!

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

11

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 欢迎光临。
2. 欢迎再来。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 歡迎光臨。
2. 歡迎再來。

PINYIN

1. Huānyíng guānglín!
2. Huānyíng zàilái.

ENGLISH

1. Welcome!
2. Thank you come again.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
欢迎	歡迎	huān yíng	to welcome

欢迎光临	歡迎光臨	huānyíng guānglín	welcome
欢迎再来。	歡迎再來。	Huānyíng zàilái.	Thank you come again.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

欢迎各位到来。 Huānyíng gè wèi dào lái 。 Welcome, everybody.	(进商场) 欢迎光临。 (jìn shāng chǎng) huān yíng guāng lín 。 (Entering a store) Welcome to our shop.
欢迎你来我家。 huān yíng nǐ lái wǒ jiā Welcome to my home.	欢迎光临，请问您几位？ Huānyíng guānglín, qǐngwèn nín jǐwèi? Welcome honored guest, how many of there are you?
谢谢光临，欢迎再来 xièxie guānglín, huānyíng zài lái Thank you for coming. Welcome again.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Chinese business etiquette dictates that staff of a business establishment are to greet a patron when they enter the place of business. The phrase used to accomplish this is *Huānyíng guānglín!* (There is no English equivalent, but is used to welcome customers to a place of business.). This phrase literally means "happy (*huān*) welcome (*yíng*) light (*guāng*) draw near (*lín*).". Roughly translated this phrase means, "Happily welcoming the approaching light." The following are a few different ways to help you remember the meaning of the phrase.

1. When someone opens the door, more light pours in.

2. They are welcoming the approach of your glowing brilliance.
3. They are happily welcoming the approach of your shining money, that the shopkeeper would like to see you spend.
4. "We welcome the approach of your brilliance."

In English there is no direct equivalent in English, so this custom, of hearing one, many or the entire staff shouting this phrase as you enter the store, may take some getting used to. As for proper protocol upon hearing this phrase, you are not required to respond, but if you like you could acknowledge the speakers presence by saying *Nǐ hǎo*. ("Hello.")

When you are leaving an establishment, the staff of the establishment will say *Huānyíng zàilái*. ("Please come again.") Literally "welcome (*huānyíng*) again come (*zàilái*).". Even if you don't purchase anything, this phrase is said as you leave. When exiting the place of business, one may also hear the expression "*Xiè xie guānglín!*" ("Thank you for coming.")

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

The simplified characters for this phrase are common in mainland China.

欢迎光临。 *Huānyíng guānglín!* (Simplified)

The traditional characters, used in Taiwan, Hong Kong, Macau, and by some overseas Chinese communities, for this phrase are a bit different.

歡迎光臨。 *Huānyíng guānglín!* (Traditional)

Quick Tip #2

It is perfectly fine not to respond to this when entering a business establishment. Just going about your business is how most patrons react to this.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #12

Restaurant 1 - How Many People?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

12

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 几个人?
2. 三个人。
3. 一个人。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 幾個人?
2. 三個人。
3. 一個人。

PINYIN

1. Jǐ ge rén?
2. Sān ge rén.
3. Yī ge rén.

ENGLISH

1. How many people?
2. Three.

CONT'D OVER

3. One person.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
人	人	rén	person
几个人?	幾個人?	Jǐ ge rén?	How many people?

SAMPLE SENTENCES

中国人很多。 Zhōngguó rén hěnduō. There are many Chinese people.	办公室里几个人? bàngōngshì lǐ yǒu jǐ gè rén How many people are there in the office?
--	---

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Yes, this lesson is ostensibly about restaurants, but really it's just a good way to lead into a discussion of measure words. Why was it important to lead into the discussion of measure words, you ask? Why couldn't we just have a lesson about measure words and call it that? The answer is that Michael doesn't like explaining difficult things. In order to get him to the studio, the bosses here needed to concoct a plausible lesson that he would be teaching that would require measure words. They didn't mention measure words, but once he was recording, going through the scenario, and explaining the phrase, he was caught. Sometimes he's like a little bunny rabbit, so eager for the carrot that he doesn't notice the trap around it.

Today's lesson introduced the phrase *Jǐ ge rén?* (How many people?) This is the first question you will be asked upon entering a restaurant. It literally means "How many people?" Thus when the wait staff asks you this, they are asking "How many people in your party?" *Jǐ*

means "how many," and *rén* means "people." In answer to this question you can just say a number followed by *ge rén* or you could just say a number and *ge*. For example, you might say *Sān ge*. ("Three.") or *Qī ge rén*. ("Seven people.") Chinese people like to keep their speech simple, so they often leave off *rén*. The wait staff will understand you are talking about people even if you don't say *rén* because of the context.

So, *ge*... What is *ge*? How is it used? *Ge* is a part of speech called a measure word. Measure words are used in Chinese when counting things; they go between the number and the noun. Thus "three people" is *sān ge rén*. (Number + measure word + noun.) In Chinese, you cannot talk about a number of something without following the number with a measure word. Even if you just want to say "Three." in response to *Jǐ ge rén?* you still have to use a measure word. You say, *Sān ge*. There is no noun, but you still need to say a measure because you are still talking about a noun even though you have omitted it for simplicity. It's just the way Chinese works. This is made more complicated by the fact that there are different measure words for different kinds of nouns. As Michael said, there are measure words for long, thin things (like streets and pants), for wide, flat things (like paper and CDs), for vehicles (like cars and bikes), for little, round things (like pearls and seeds), and many, many other categories. This makes for a whole lot of vocabulary that you have to learn if you want to count nouns. Or you can cheat. You can take the easy way out and just use *ge*. *Ge* is the knight in shining armor of measure words. It is an all-purpose measure word that can be used with any noun. Technically, when talking about a number of a certain noun you should use the appropriate measure word. (Although some nouns don't have any measure word designated to them, and therefore always use *ge*.) But, being a beginner, no one will think twice if you always use *ge*. Doing this won't make you sound exactly like a Chinese person, but it shouldn't be a major block to people understanding you. In the lessons here at ChineseClass101.com we will occasionally introduce measure words when then are necessary, but most of the time we will just use *ge*. After you get a feeling for Chinese you can start using specific measure words, but, for now, this will be fine.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Often when you go into a restaurant the wait staff will ask you *Jǐ wèi?* *Wèi* is a polite measure word for guests or customers. Thus *Jǐ wèi?* means "How many customers?" It is a polite way of asking the question from today's lesson. To this you can respond exactly as you would

have responded to *Jǐ ge rén*? You can say *Sān ge*. or *Qī ge rén*. Or you can use the form that they used, and respond with *Sān wèi*. ("Three customers.") or *Qī wèi*. ("Seven customers.") Note that *wèi* is a measure word for customers and guests, not people. Thus *wèi* would never be followed by *ren2*. However, responding *Qī wèi*. tells them automatically that you are talking about customers even though neither of you have used the word "customer." This is because *wèi* is specific to customers and guests. Using *ge* never gives anyone any extra clue as to what you are talking about because *ge* can be used for anything. Using either response is okay, both responses are equally polite. The difference in politeness only exists in the question: *Jǐ wèi?* is more polite and more formal than *Jǐ ge rén?*

Quick Tip #2

In smaller and less upscale restaurants, if it is crowded, it is not uncommon for customers of different parties to be seated together when there are no other seats. If you and a friend come into a crowded little restaurant during the lunch rush, do not be surprised if the staff asks you to sit at a table across from two Chinese men busily scarfing down noodles. This is not to say that the Chinese like sitting with people they don't know. If you are already eating you will often see Chinese people come in and survey the tables looking for a free table. It is only when there are no other options that they will sit at a table with people they don't know. This is done out of necessity, not preference.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #13

Restaurant 2 - Waiter!

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

13

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 服务员!
2. 这个 (给我) 。
3. 我要这个。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 服務員!
2. 這個 (給我) 。
3. 我要這個。

PINYIN

1. Fúwù yuán!
2. Zhège (gěi wǒ).
3. Wǒ yào zhège.

ENGLISH

1. Waiter! Waitress!
2. This (please).

CONT'D OVER

3. I want this.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
我	我	wǒ	I, me
要	要	yào	to want
我要这个	我要這個	Wǒ yào zhège	I want this.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	他要一张纸。 Tā yào yī zhāng zhǐ. He wants a piece of paper.
--	--

我要这个包。 wǒ yào zhège bāo. I want this bag.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Chinese cuisine is renowned throughout the world, so when you finally make it to China, your stomach will have a lot of work to do. Chinese restaurants vary in their level of service. Sometimes you will have to be a bit assertive to get the waiter or waitress's attention, other times you will have to yell.

To get the attention of an individual working in a restaurant you say Fúwù yuán. This means "waiter" or "waitress." Literally, fúwù means "service" and yuán means "staff." Start out by

raising your hand and saying this phrase at a normal speaking volume in the direction of the nearest available staff member. Raise the volume each time you have to say it. It is not uncommon for the Chinese to yell Fúwù yuán! across a room at the top of their lungs, and it is not necessarily bad manners; it all depends on how you pull it off. If you try lower volumes originally and then gradually move up to a yell, no one will blame you. It's just mean to bark at the staff, especially if the restaurant is quiet; but if you have to cry out over the din of a hundred other diners, the wait staff will almost certainly sympathize. The struggling, but persevering foreigner is a cute character to play. Smiling is also a great touch. Those of us who have worked in the service industry will tell you: there is nothing better than a smiling customer, and nothing worse than a scowling customer.

Before you call the staff over, you should probably decide what you want to eat. Most of the time, actually, a staff member will stand by your table and wait for your order as soon as you sit down. Often Chinese people come to a certain restaurant craving a certain dish, and thus ordering is easy. Even if they don't know what they want, the Chinese often display amazing ordering skills. They can have their the whole party's dinner decided in under two minutes. You should not feel pressured by this. You are in China only for a short time. Savor it.

Chinese menus are one of the many wonders of China. Some of these menus can include up to several hundred items to select from. Chinese people eating in a place they are unfamiliar with are often baffled as to what to eat. There will often be dishes on the menu that your Chinese friends have never seen before. Ordering is thus doubly challenging if you are doing it on your own. Some menus in nicer restaurants, especially near tourist areas or areas with lots of foreign customers, will have English. This is usually of great assistance, though the English names for dishes are sometimes more hilarious than helpful. (One Chinese menu had asterisks next to some of the dishes. At the bottom of the page it stated that an asterisk denotes "handicapped accessible." Then there's the wonderful "dreaded veal cutlet" and the always tasty "cold shredded children and sea blubber." Of course we Westerners aren't always any better. Now serving in a US diner: "French creeps."*) The best is when a restaurant has a menu with pictures. This actually occurs quite often, usually in mid-grade to upscale restaurants. When you see something you like, call a member of the staff with a loud Fúwù yuán! (Unless they are already standing next to your table, waiting.) Once the staff member is ready, you can simply point at the dish you want and say, Zhège. Zhège. means "This." Pointing and saying Zhège. should be enough for the staff to understand you. They will say the name of the dish out loud as they write it down. To this you can respond by nodding your head, smiling, and maybe even saying Zhège. again.

The phrase Wǒ yāo zhège. ("I want this.") is closer to what a Chinese person would say. The word order here is the same as in English: wǒ ("I") yāo ("want") zhège ("this"). You can also modify this phrase to express desire for specific objects. Just replace zhège with any noun to say that you want that noun. Let's say you would like some coke. Just say Wǒ yāo zhège.

(Kěle means "cola.") You can do this for any other noun you can think of, so now all you need is a dictionary.

People in many parts of China grow up eating spicy food. Everything they've eaten since they were little has been spicy. (Other areas, Shanghai and the regions surrounding it, for example, do not specialize in spicy cuisine, and people from those areas are likely not to like spicy food much.) Many of us Westerners are not used to spicy foods. For these people, eating at a restaurant in China is like playing Russian Roulette. Even those of us who love spicy food may not want it every meal. If you are worried about the spiciness of a certain dish, just point to it and ask, Hěn là ma? This means "Is it spicy?" Hěn means "very." Là means "spicy." Ma is a particle that indicates that a sentence is a question. Literally, this phrase is: "Very spicy?" If the waiter/waitress says Bù. Bù là. ("No. It's not spicy.") then you're good to go.

*Taken from Charlie Croker's Lost in Translation.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Another way you can respond to the waiter/waitress when they repeat your order is to nod once and say a sharp *uhn*. Saying a quick, sharp *uhn* in China is the equivalent of saying "yes." This is not really a word, though it can be written as a character, it is more like a sound of agreement, like the English "uh-huh." The Chinese *uhn* is often accompanied by a nod. In English we often feel uncomfortable not using some words or a full sentence to answer a question. Even "uh-huh" is not very polite and often feels incomplete. The Chinese, however, often affirmatively answer questions by just saying *uhn* once and nodding. Remember, this is a sharp, quick syllable and you just say it once. When you get the hang of this sound, it will make it a lot easier to answer Chinese questions.

Quick Tip #2

There is no tipping in Chinese restaurants. Never tip in a Chinese restaurant. A few of the nicest and most established restaurants will add a gratuity onto your check, but you are never, ever expected to leave money for the wait staff. The wait staff will find it confusing and probably very embarrassing if you try to give them money. (This goes for cab drivers, too.)

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #14

Restaurant 3 - Getting the Bill

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

14

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 买单!
2. 下一次我请你。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 買單!
2. 下一次我請你。

PINYIN

1. Mǎidān!
2. Xià yīcì wǒ qǐng nǐ.

ENGLISH

1. Check!
2. Next time I'll pay for you.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
买单	買單	mǎidān	bill, check

请	請	qǐng	please (do something)
下	下	xià	down, next, bottom
次	次	cì	measure word for number of times
发票	發票	fāpiào	receipt
结帐	結帳	jiézhàng	check
下一次我请你。	下一次我請你。	Xià yīcì wǒ qǐng nǐ.	Next time I'll pay for you.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

今天我买单。 jīntiān wǒ mǎidān I got the bill today.	小姐，请给我菜单。 Xiǎojiě, qǐng gěi wǒ càidān. Miss, please give me the menu.
下一站是南京路。 Xià yī zhàn shì Nánjīng lù. Next stop is Nanjing Road.	上课时，她不停地和别人说话，老师警告了很多次，她还是一样放肆。 Shàngkè shí , tā bù tíng de hé biérén shuōhuà , lǎoshī jǐnggào le hěn duō cì , tā hái shì yīyàng fàngsì。 She always talked to other students in class. The teacher warned her plenty of times, but she was still just as cheeky as ever.
我要发票。 Wǒ yào fāpiào. I need a receipt.	不好意思.请结帐。 bùhǎoyìsi, qǐng jiézhàng Excuse me. Check, please.

下一次我请你

xià yí cì wǒ qǐng nǐ

Next time I'll pay for you.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Getting the check in a restaurant and the way people behave around paying always gives you insight into a country's culture. China is no different. Let's start with how you get the check when you're by yourself, then we'll talk about what to do if you're with other people.

First, obviously, you have to get the staff's attention. This is just like ordering, you raise your hand and your voice and say, *Fúwù yuán!* (This is from the last lesson. It means "Waiter!" or "Waitress!") Once you've called the staff, you can either wait for them to come over to the table or you can yell, *Mǎidān!* from where you are. *Mǎidān* literally means "buy form." (*Mǎi* means "to buy" and *dān* means "form.") This is how you say "the check" in Chinese. (*Jiézhàng* is another common way to say "check" in Chinese. We will be using *mǎidān* in the lessons, but you can use either.) It is perfectly alright to yell *Mǎidān!* at the same volume that you yelled *Fúwù yuán!* Yelling it out before they come to your table saves the wait staff a trip. When the restaurant is especially busy, this saved time is very helpful. However, it's not appropriate to just start yelling in a very quiet or fancy restaurant. (Fancy and quiet always go together.) In this case, just wait for the staff to come over and say, *Mǎidān*, in a normal tone.

Paying is just a matter of counting money if you're by yourself. But if you're out with Chinese people it can become a little more complicated. As Michael said, Chinese people never split the check. There is almost always someone who pays the whole bill. (This is actually changing. Amongst young people it is becoming more and more common to split things, especially with close friends. Many young people, however, still take turns treating each other and amongst older people it is almost unheard of to split the check.) In Chinese, "to pay for someone" is *qǐng*. This is the same word as "please." If someone wants to pay for you, they will say *Wǒ qǐng nǐ*. (Literally "I pay for you.") Note that because there are three third tones in a row the second one becomes a second tone to break things up and make the phrase easier to say. The phrase is thus pronounced: *Wǒ qǐng nǐ*. (For simplicity's sake we use this rule for breaking third tones up with second tones. With two third tones, the first character becomes a

second tone. With three third tones, the second character becomes a second tone. With four third tones, the first and third characters become second tones, and so on. In reality, there is no such rule. How you break up third tones has to do with a feeling for which characters should be separated, but we feel it would be helpful for our listeners, as beginners, to have a rule of thumb.)

Who pays for the meal depends a lot on the situation. If you are invited out by someone it is very common for them to pay for the meal. We are not talking about your friend calling you up, asking what you're doing, and then asking if you want to get dinner together. We are talking about much more formal dinner plans made in advance where someone is certainly hosting an event. In this case you should expect that they will pay and not make a fuss as they discreetly deal with the check. You might even use the second phrase from today's lesson if you're in a good mood. (We haven't introduced that phrase yet, but we will be doing so presently.) Business dinners also run like this. There is always someone hosting and they will be picking up the bill. Everyone knows that from the beginning. Being in a group of people where there is no clear host makes things a little more complicated. If you go out with friends (possibly new friends you have just met) or even just one friend, they will often want to pay for your meal. They will claim that it is Chinese custom. They will say that you are a guest in their country. The truth is, they would probably do this with other Chinese people. It is not so much a matter of you being a guest (though that feeling may contribute) as it is them buying face. It is considered honorable for someone to pay for someone else's meal. It makes them feel like they are your benefactor. Thus Chinese people often battle over who gets to pay for the meal. Many Chinese men refuse to let women pay for their meal (even if the man happens to be unemployed at the moment and the woman has a very good job). People who make a fraction of what you earn will insist on paying for you. Though you may feel somewhat embarrassed (Westerners also have certain feelings about the respectableness of paying for a meal), we suggest you let Chinese people who want to pay for you do so. Especially with the "You are a guest in my country." card at their disposal, this is a war you are unlikely to win. And even if you do force them to let you pay, you often do so at the cost of embarrassing them at least a little. A common Chinese way to respond to someone insisting on paying for you is to say *Xià yīcì wǒ qǐng nǐ*. ("Next time I'll pay for you.") It is hard to say how often the person saying this does actually buy the other person a meal, but it sounds good, and it is a nice compromise that spares everyone's feelings. (Friends actually do often take turns paying for each other, though this doesn't always prevent squabbles. People's memories get foggy and they insist that it is their turn to pay, or they try to bring in mitigating circumstances that will allow them to pay again.) We can break this phrase into halves. The second half is *wǒ qǐng nǐ* which we just went over and we know means "I pay for you." (Remember to change the tone on *qǐng*.) The first half, *xià yīcì*, means "next one time." *Xià* can mean "down" or "next," *yī* means "one," and

cì is a measure word for a number of times. Saying *yīcì* means "one time." Thus *xià yīcì* means "next one time" or just "next time." Putting the two halves together, the phrase is *Xià yīcì wǒ qǐng nǐ*. ("Next time I'll pay for you.") Note that you do not need to conjugate the verb *qǐng* even though the action is now in the future. The verb stays the same and people figure out from the context that you are talking about the future. The Chinese language is often like this, relying on context instead of grammar to communicate meaning.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

When offering an object such as a gift or drink to someone, as well as when receiving something from someone, it is polite to use both hands.

At hosted meals, it is the responsibility of the host, not the wait staff, to see that the guests' drinking glasses are refilled. It is also mandatory in Chinese etiquette for the host to accompany each guest to the door when a meal or party ends. Ranking guests are normally accompanied all the way to their cars or to a taxi. The host waits until they drive away before going back inside.

It is Chinese etiquette to say no when offered a drink, a meal, a gift, or a favor. It is up to you, the host, to politely persist. Your guests expect you to insist, and only then will they take the offered item. When you are the guest you will find it almost impossible to turn down anything that is offered. Because they are used to Chinese custom, where people turn things down out of politeness, the Chinese are trained to keep offering and insisting until the recipient submits. This can be frustrating when you really don't want the thing being offered. If there is a specific reason why you don't want it (you don't smoke cigarettes, maybe, or you don't eat meat) we suggest that you tell them the reason straight away. Though many Chinese may be perplexed by the reason you give (almost all Chinese men smoke cigarettes at least sometimes, and most of the vegetarians in China are vegetarians because they are practicing Buddhists, almost no one is a vegetarian just because they don't like meat) if you repeat yourself forcefully a few times they will get the idea. If there is no specific reason that you don't want to accept what is offered (maybe the food just looks kind of weird) then the best route is probably to accept the offering out of politeness and then direct their attention elsewhere.

Quick Tip #2

When you pay for a meal, be sure to ask for the scratch off receipts. A lot of the bigger restaurants in China have receipts with little silver boxes that you can scratch off. If you get lucky, scratching away the box will reveal a denomination of money that you have just won. Most of the time, however, they will just say *Xièxiè*. ("Thank you.") That means you don't get anything. For the Chinese this is an added pleasure at the end of the meal and a great way to finish the party. So make sure to say to your waiter/waitress, *Fāpiào*. ("Receipt.")

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #15

Restaurant 4 - Paying in Plastic

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

15

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 可以用信用卡吗?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 可以用信用卡嗎?

PINYIN

1. Kěyǐ yòng xìnyòngkǎ ma?

ENGLISH

1. Can I use a credit card?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
可以	可以	kěyǐ	can
来	來	lái	to come
可以用信用卡 吗?	可以用信用卡 嗎?	Kěyǐ yòng xìnyòngkǎ ma?	Can I use a credit card?

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你可以叫我丽丽。

Nǐ kěyǐ jiào wǒ Lìlì.

You can call me Lili.

他来了吗?

Tā lái le ma?

Did he come?

可以用信用卡吗?

Kěyǐ yòng xìnyòngkǎ ma?

Can I use a credit card?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Westerners love plastic. The Chinese love cold, hard cash. There is no substitute for it. Almost all transactions in China are done in cash. People buy dinner with cash. They buy clothes with cash. They pay their rent in cash. It is only recently that loans are starting to become available to most people. Many Chinese are still wary of taking out a loan, and it's not exactly easy to get one. (It wasn't until the last twenty years that cars and houses became available on the market. Before there was nothing big to purchase. There was no reason to get a loan.) Many Chinese people still do not really trust money that they can't hold in their hands. It is only the most fashionable (read: the rich and the young) who have begun to use credit cards. Mom-and-pop places certainly won't take your credit card. But, in big cities, the number of bigger restaurants and shopping centers that will take credit cards is growing rapidly.

So, if you like using your card, why not give it a try? Just make sure you bring enough cash, too. To ask about credit cards, just say, *Kěyǐ yòng xìnyòngkǎ ma?* ("Can I use a credit card?") *Kěyǐ* means "can," or "may," or "to have permission to." (More about this in a minute.) *Yòng* means "to use." *Xìnyòng* means "trustworthiness" or "credit." *Kǎ* means "card." *Ma* is a particle that makes the phrase into a question. Without *ma* the phrase is a statement. When you put these words together, you get a phrase that literally is "Can use credit card?" This means "Can I use a credit card?" or "Can credit cards be used?" You could add *wǒ* ("I") to the Chinese, but it's unnecessary as it would not change the meaning of the sentence. Also, remember that because *kěyǐ* has two third tones in a row you always change the tone on *kě* to second tone.

Kěyǐ is placed before a verb to indicate having permission or being allowed to do that verb. Other Chinese words cover having the skills or physical ability to do something. *Kěyǐ* is closest in meaning to the English "may." (As in "May I have some more ice cream?") That being said, *kěyǐ* is used sometimes in situations where it would seem to be the wrong choice. In English many people use "can" incorrectly. Taking the aforementioned ice cream example, many English speakers, especially children, might say "Can I have some more ice cream?" A child's parents might respond by saying, "You can have more ice cream, but you may not." They are pointing out that there is difference between one's physical ability to swallow ice cream and whether one has permission. (Lording grammar knowledge over children is one of the many joys of parenthood.) Chinese people go the other way. They sometimes use *kěyǐ* when talking about physical ability or having a certain set of skills. Sometimes *kěyǐ* gets used in sentences like "Do you think I can read this?" or "You can drink it. It's drinkable." Are these Chinese people using the word incorrectly? Or is this just part of the twisted way *kěyǐ* is meant to be used? This is up for debate and we here at ChineseClass101.com don't feel qualified to answer.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

A couple of words about rice:

Rice usually comes at the end of a Chinese meal. While eating habits differ from person to person, it is customary to eat other food first and then use rice as a "filler." Chinese people may scold you for filling up on rice and failing to eat what they see as the good food. "Eat food, don't eat rice." They will say. (*Chī cài, bù yào chī fàn.*) Many foreigners love to take Chinese food and put it on top of their rice. They like to eat the rice and other food together. This helps mellow out the spiciness or the greasiness of Chinese food. The Chinese find this habit puzzling. They like to eat the food straight then eat their rice after.

Chinese dishes tend to have a very short preparation time. The wait staff will start bringing out your order almost as soon as you order it. But, because of Chinese eating habits, they will wait until the end to bring out any rice you have ordered. If you want your rice, just say to the waiter/waitress, *Lài yīwǎn mǐfàn.* ("Bring out one bowl of rice.") *Lài* means "to come." *Yī* is "one." *Wǎn* is a measure word for bowls of food. *Mǐfàn* means "cooked rice." (There is a separate word for "uncooked rice.") If you are with other people that want rice, you can just

change the number in front of the measure word. You can say, *Lài liǎngwǎn mǐfàn*. ("Bring out two bowls of rice.") or *Lài sìwǎn mǐfàn*. ("Bring out four bowls of rice.") You use *liǎng* instead of *èr* because we are counting things. (This will be covered in the next lesson. Don't worry.)

Also, never leave your chopsticks sticking up out of your rice. It might seem like a convenient place to put your chopsticks: just stick them into the rice and leave them sticking straight up. This is very bad manners. In Chinese tradition, offerings of food to the dead are left with the chopsticks sticking straight up. To do so with your rice and then continue eating is disrespectful to the dead. (They don't like being taunted.) Luckily most Chinese won't actually be offended by this. Most likely they will laugh at you and warn you that your actions carry a certain meaning. Instead of putting them in your rice, you can lay your chopsticks across the rim of your rice bowl. Nicer restaurants will often have a little piece of porcelain or china to rest the tips of your chopsticks on.

Quick Tip #2

In larger cities such as Beijing or Shanghai, there are many special ATMs that accept foreign bank cards in major shopping centers and international hotels. These ATMs will have signage that states that foreign cards can be used. Other than that, ATMs are usually only to be found connected to banks and post offices. Some Chinese bank ATMs will accept foreign cards, but it can be hit or miss. The ATM will have signs illustrating what cards are accepted, but there are still some times when, for unknown reasons, the ATM will refuse your card. Generally if you find a bank that accepts your card once, every branch of that bank will also accept your card. The Bank of China and The Industrial and Commercial Bank of China are two very large and very common banks that accept many cards. Chinese ATMs have a tendency to run out of cash. If your card doesn't work in one ATM you might want to try the one next to it, just to make sure the first one wasn't just out of cash.

All ATMs will remit RMB (Chinese currency) notes. If you want to exchange your RMB back to your home currency on the way out (e.g. at the airport), you'll need to keep the ATM or bank receipt or the exchange won't be accepted.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #16

Counting (1-10)

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

16

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

- 一, 二, 三, 四, 五, 六, 七, 八, 九, 十

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

- 一, 二, 三, 四, 五, 六, 七, 八, 九, 十

PINYIN

- Yī, èr, sān, sì, wǔ, liù, qī, bā, jiǔ, shí

ENGLISH

- One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
零	零	líng	zero
两	兩	liǎng	2
二十	二十	èrshí	twenty
十	十	shí	ten
九	九	jiǔ	nine
八	八	bā	eight
七	七	qī	seven

六	六	liù	six
五	五	wǔ	five
四	四	sì	four
三	三	sān	three
二	二	èr	two
人	人	rén	people

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你有零钱吗？ nǐ yǒu língqián ma? Do you have any change?	上个星期，我去做了两次按摩。 Shàng gè xīngqī, wǒ qù zuò le liǎng cì ànmó. Last week, I went to get a massage twice.
我们班只有二十个学生。 Wǒmen bān zhǐyǒu èrshí ge xuésheng. Our class has only twenty students.	现在十点钟。 Xiànzài shí diǎn zhōng. It's ten o'clock now.
他爸爸一九八九年来美国。 Tā bàba yī jiǔ bā jiǔ nián lái Měiguó. His dad came to America in 1989.	他住在八楼。 Tā zhùzài bā lóu. He lives on the eighth floor.
我们的公司有七个人。 Wǒmen de gōngsī yǒu qī gè rén. There are seven people in our company.	我女儿六岁。 Wǒ nǚ'ér liù suì. My daughter is six years old.
给我五块钱就好。 Gěi wǒ wǔ kuài jiù hǎo. Give me five RMB, that's fine.	我有四个孩子。 Wǒ yǒu sì gè hái zi. I have four children.

他有三个孩子。

Tā yǒu sān ge hái zi.

He has three children.

我家在二楼。

Wǒ jiā zài èr lóu.

My home is on the second floor.

我是北京人。

wǒ shì běijīng rén

I am from Beijing.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

What is there to say about the numbers? Practice them, memorize them, use them. The Chinese number system is generally very straightforward. You may find that the biggest problem you have with it is memorizing the new symbols for the numbers. The Chinese do have their own characters for the numbers, and they do use them. Numbers in Chinese characters pop up everywhere, but it will probably be most useful to know them when looking at price tags. Prices written by a machine will probably be in Arabic numerals, the prices in the grocery store will certainly be in Arabic numerals, but hand-written price tags are often written using the Chinese characters. If you go to buy antiques or you go to a little restaurant, you will often find the prices in Chinese characters. This alone makes it worth while to learn the characters. You will also see Chinese numbers on posters, advertisements, and signs all over the place. It's not too hard to learn these characters, and, because of the way the Chinese number system works, once you learn one through ten you will be able to read just about any number.

The Chinese numbers from 10 to 99 follow a very simple and predictable pattern: to say a multiple of ten you just say a number followed by ten. Thus 20 is *èrshí*, 30 is *sānshí*, 40 is *sìshí*, and so on. To add numbers to the ones column just put a number after the multiple of ten you have just created. To say 41 you say *sìshíyī*. 52 is *wǔshíèr*. 63 is *liùshísān*. You get the idea.

There is one other tricky part of the basic Chinese number system: two. There are two words for the number two in Chinese. We can call the first version the counting two or the numerical

two. This version, pronounced èr, is used when you are counting (if you were counting the number of kids in a class you would say, yī, èr, sān, sì...) or when you are saying numbers like 20 or 42 (20 is èrshí and 42 is sìshíèr). If you are using the number two to say that you have two of something you must use the word liǎng. If you want to say there are two people, you say liǎng ge rén. (Ge is a measure word, and talk of measure words must still be saved till later. Rén means "person.") Two steamed pork buns is liǎng ge ròubàozi. (Ròubàozi is steamed pork bun.) Whenever you are talking about two of something you use the word liǎng. Thus liǎng is actually used much more often than èr. Be very careful about this, it will sound incredibly silly if you ask for èr ge ròubàozi.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Líng (0) is almost always written using Arabic numerals. Even on hand-written price tags where everything else is written using Chinese characters, *líng* will probably still be written as "0." This is done for ease of writing and recognition because the character for *líng* has so many strokes in comparison to the other numbers.

Quick Tip #2

Everyone knows how to use hand signals for the numbers one through five, but the Chinese, being the geniuses that they are (and we are not being sarcastic about this, the Chinese have come up with some really ingenious and simple things over the years) have hand signals that can be done on one hand for all the numbers one through ten. The hand signals imitate the shapes of the Chinese characters. It is a very good idea to learn these, not only because they're cool and convenient, but because many Chinese people will assume that everyone understands them. Often at a market a vendor will tell you a price and then signal it to you using hand signals. They might even repeat these signals if you look confused, because they assume these are universal ways of communicating numbers. Really, many Chinese are astonished to find that Westerners need to use two hands to communicate the number seven. (And they think we look quite silly holding up both our hands.)

The signals are as follows:

One through five: The same as in the West, just raise the corresponding number of fingers. Many Chinese people signal "three" with their pinky, ring, and middle fingers up and their index finger held down.

Six: Stick out your pinky and thumb. Your middle three fingers stay curled down. "Hang ten, dude."

Seven: Press your the tip of your thumb against the tips of your index and middle fingers, pinching them all together. Your other fingers stay curled.

Eight: Stick out your index finger and thumb. Curl up all the other fingers.

Nine: Clench all your fingers except the index finger. Curl your index into a fish hook position.

Ten: There are three ways of doing ten. The first is to cross your index and middle fingers. The second is a closed fist. The third requires two hands and is one index finger across the other to form a cross. (Michael apologizes, but he took the pictures of his hand by himself. He could not take a picture of the third method because it requires two hands.)

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #17

How Much?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

17

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 多少钱?
2. 这个多少钱?
3. 那个多少钱?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 多少錢?
2. 這個多少錢?
3. 那個多少錢?

PINYIN

1. Duōshǎo qián?
2. Zhège duōshǎo qián?
3. Nàge duōshǎo qián?

ENGLISH

1. How much?
2. How much does this cost?

CONT'D OVER

3. How much does that cost?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
多少钱	多少錢	duōshao qián	how much money
多	多	duō	many, much
那个	那個	nàge	that
两	兩	liǎng	2
那	那	nà	that
二	二	èr	two

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这个多少钱? Zhège duōshao qián? How much is this one?	今天我们有很多工作要做。 Jīntiān wǒmen yǒu hěn duō gōngzuò yào zuò. We have a lot of work to do today.
我想问一下, 那个人是谁? Wǒ xiǎng wèn yíxià, nàge rén shì shéi? I want to ask, who is that?	上个星期, 我去做了两次按摩。 Shàng gè xīngqī, wǒ qù zuò le liǎng cì ànmó. Last week, I went to get a massage twice.
那是什么? Nà shì shénme? What is that?	我家在二楼。 Wǒ jiā zài èrlóu. My home is on the second floor.

GRAMMAR

China has been experiencing tremendous growth in recent years, and the country is abound with all types of goods and products. It is not a question of whether you will find something you like, but rather a question of how long will it take. When you finally find something that you like, the next step will be to find out how much it costs. In China, there are many shops, stores, street vendors and merchants, and while the number of department stores is increasing, a tremendous amount of business is done by these small dealers, who rarely tag the items they are selling with the price. Therefore, asking the price is a crucial step in shopping in China.

In Chinese the phrase used for asking the price is *Duōshǎo qián?* (How much (money)?). The phrase literally means "A lot, a little money?" Looking at the components of the sentence, *duō* means many. *Shǎo* means few, and *qián* is a noun meaning money. Therefore we have "Many, few money?" or "A lot, or a little money?" Almost as if the question is "Will it cost a lot or will it cost a little (money)? Perhaps thinking of the phrase *Duōshǎo qián?* (How much?) in this manner will help you to remember it.

For something located close by, you can refer to the thing with the word *zhège* (this). Therefore, to inquire about the price of something nearby *Zhège duōshǎo qián?* (How much does this cost?). Notice here that the word *zhège* (this) precedes the question *Duōshǎo qián?* (How much?). The placement of this at the beginning of the sentence differs from the English construction, in which this comes last.

The phrase *duō* (much) + *shǎo* (few) is used to refer to quantity and can mean how much or how many, as its English translation depends directly on the something being inquired about. In today's phrase, *Duōshǎo qián?* (How much (money)?) the something is money, so the phrase is translated as "How much (money)?" *Duōshǎo* is used when talking about abstract figures, an irregular amount of something, or amounts exceeding approximately ten pcs (for example, people, cars, money, stars).

Qián (money) is the word for money; however, *yuan* is the currency used in China. Furthermore, when referred to in spoken Chinese, *yuan* is referred to *kuài*.

If you are buying something that costs, let's say three *yuan*, that'll be *sān kuài* in Chinese. Answering the inquiry would go like this: *Sān kuài qián.* = "It costs three yuan". Like in many other languages, you do not need to utter the whole sentence with the verb and everything in it—giving the figures will suffice: *sān kuài* = "three."

Please pay attention to the word you use when talking about the number 2: when talking about prices, use the word *liǎng* not *èr*. *Èr* refers to numerals, not to a quantity of something.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

When shopping at department stores or outlets with many stores, the register may be in a different location! Therefore, you may have to leave the store you buying something at to pay the bill in a different location! You will then return with the paid receipt to claim your property.

Quick Tip #2

While the number of shops and stores that accept credit cards continues to increase, there are still many stores that do not accept credit cards as a form of payment. Therefore, be sure to carry cash when you go shopping, and be sure to haggle! For more about haggling, see the next lesson.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #18

Lower the Price Please!

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

18

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 太贵啊。
2. 便宜一点。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 太貴啊。
2. 便宜一點。

PINYIN

1. Tài guì a.
2. Píanyi yī diǎn.

ENGLISH

1. Too expensive.
2. A little cheaper (please).

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
太	太	tài	too (much)

一点	一點	yīdiǎn	a little
贵	貴	guì	expensive
便宜	便宜	píanyi	cheap
太贵啊。	太貴啊。	Tài guì a.	Too expensive.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

二十五太贵了。 èrshí wǔ tài guì le. 25 kuai is too expensive.	你小心一点儿，别摔倒了。 Nǐ xiǎoxīn yīdiǎnr, bié shuāidǎo le. Be a bit careful; don't fall down.
东京的甜瓜很贵。 Dōngjīng de tiánguā hěn guì. Melons in Tokyo are very expensive.	买东西的时候不要只图便宜，忽视了质量。 mǎi dōngxi de shíhòu bù yào zhǐ tú piányi, hūshì le zhìliang. When you're buying things, don't just look for cheap things at the expense of quality.
这本书太贵啊。 zhè běn shū tài guì ā This book is too expensive.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

As previously mentioned, when in China, it is not a question of whether you will find something you like, but rather a question of how long will it take. When you finally find something that you like, the next step will be to find out how much it costs. In Chinese the phrase used for asking the price is *Duōshǎo qián?* ("How much (money)?").

As haggling is common practice in China, today's phrase is indispensable when shopping at the many markets, shops, stores and other places of business in China. When shopping at a location where there are no price tags, it is expected that haggling will take place. So when you're at the market and talking prices, the phrase *Tài gùì ā*. ("It's too expensive.") should be an involuntary verbal reflex to a clerk's quote. In fact, regardless of whether or not you understand the price, you should respond to any price offered by a clerk with *Tài gùì ā*. ("It's too expensive.")

The literal meaning of the phrase *Tài gùì ā*. ("It's too expensive.") is "too expensive", which conveys the obvious notion that you feel that "the price is too high." The tones for these characters are 4th tone, 4th tone and 1st tone respectively.

The second phrase ideal for haggling over the price is *Píanyì yī diǎn*. ("A little cheaper (please).") Literally this phrase is "cheap a little." *Píanyì* means "cheap," while *yī diǎn* means "a little." However, the nuance here is "a little cheaper (please)." This phrase is used frequently when haggling over the price.

Therefore, when shopping at a location without price tags, you start with *Duōshao qián?* ("How much is it?"). The person selling the goods will respond with a price, and regardless of whether or not you understand the price, you should respond to any price offered with *Tài gùì ā*. ("It's too expensive.") Continue with a combination of *Tài gùì ā*. ("It's too expensive") and *Píanyì yī diǎn*. ("A little cheaper please.").

加油 *Jiā yóu!* ("Good luck!")

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Try to get the person selling the good to say a price. The right price for something is usually several times lower than your first quote. Try to avoid the "foreign" premium at all costs!

Quick Tip #2

Attaching *r* to the end of the phrase is common in Beijing.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #19

Please Pass The Chopsticks!

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

19

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 请给我那个。
2. 请给我筷子。
3. 请给我酱油。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 請給我那個。
2. 請給我筷子。
3. 請給我醬油。

PINYIN

1. Qǐng gěi wǒ nàge.
2. Qǐng gěi wǒ kuàizi.
3. Qǐng gěi wǒ jiàng yóu.

ENGLISH

1. Please give me that.
2. Please give me chopsticks.

CONT'D OVER

3. Please give me soy sauce.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
请	請	qǐng	please (do something)
我	我	wǒ	I, me
那个	那個	nàge	that
请给我那个。	請給我那個。	Qǐng gěi wǒ nàge.	Please pass me that.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

小姐，请给我菜单。 Xiǎojiě, qǐng gěi wǒ càidān. Miss, please give me the menu.	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
我想问一下，那个人是谁？ Wǒ xiǎng wèn yíxià, nàge rén shì shéi? I want to ask, who is that?	请给我那个东西。 qǐng gěi wǒ nà ge dōngxi Please pass me that thing.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Today's lesson goes through navigating a crowded noodle shop, but really today's phrase can be used whenever you need someone to hand you something. The phrase is *Qǐng gěi wǒ nàge*. It literally means "Please give me that." *Qǐng* means "please." *Gěi* is "to give." *Wǒ* means "I" or "me." *Nàge* means "that." Really simple, really straightforward, right guys? The

biggest problem with the phrase is the ubiquitous third tones. The first three characters are all third tones. We here at ChineseClass101.com should own up to being bad about sticking to our own rule of thumb on changing third tones. Or rather, we should admit that we have used two competing rules. There was a turf war during the recording over which rule should be used. One rule of thumb says that third tones must always be broken up by a second tone. That would change the second third tone here (*gěi*) into a second tone. The other rule says that when addressing a string of third tones, all but the last third tone become second tones. In actuality, neither of these are iron-clad rules. Changing third tones into second tones depends on which third tones one views as really being connected and where you think you can place a pause in between third tones. This requires a feel for the language that no one expects beginners to have. Thus the rules of thumb. Regrettably, some of the residue from our battle over which rule to use has leaked into the lessons. For most of the lessons we use the first rule. But in this lesson we used the second rule. Both these rules are used by Chinese instructors when teaching beginners, which one they choose just depends on the instructor's preference. Neither one is right, they are both just ways to push the problem aside until later. You, the beginner, should feel free to use either rule until you get a better feeling for the language. We apologize for any confusion this causes. Unfortunately, all wars leave their scars.

In this lesson Michael changed the first two tones to second tones. This means the sentence is pronounced:

Qǐng gěi wǒ nàge.

You could also use the rule we've been going with before and just change the second character to a second tone. In this case the sentence is pronounced:

Qǐng gěi wǒ nàge.

Again, these are just rules of thumb, it doesn't matter which you use.

The sentence *Qǐng gěi wǒ nàge.* means "Please give me that." You can point at things and say this and people will generally know what you mean. But what if it's not totally clear what "that" is? In the noodle shop the chopsticks are generally in a container on a tray at one end of the table. This tray also has soy sauce, vinegar, and hot pepper on it. How is your fellow diner to know which one you want? You have to be more specific. To be specific about what you want, just replace *nàge* with a noun. The Chinese word for "chopsticks" is *kuàizi*. To say you want chopsticks all you have to say is *Qǐng gěi wǒ kuàizi*. You could say this if you want someone sitting next to you to pass the chopsticks, or you could say it to the shop's staff if

there are no chopsticks in sight.

Now what about the other things on the tray? Depending on their tastes, Chinese people have been known to add any of these things (soy sauce, vinegar, or hot pepper) to their noodles. These are also necessary dipping sauces for dumplings. "Soy sauce" is *jiàngyóu*. "Vinegar" is *cù*. "Hot pepper" is *làjiāo*. Just insert any of these into the phrase to ask for them. *Qǐng gěi wǒ jiàngyóu*. is "Please give me the soy sauce." *Qǐng gěi wǒ cù*. is "Please pass the vinegar." *Qǐng gěi wǒ làjiāo*. is "Please give me the hot pepper."

One other thing you will almost certainly have to ask for in a restaurant are napkins. Many smaller restaurants are very bad about keeping napkins at the table. In this case you will have to ask for them specifically. The word for "napkin" is *cāntīngzhǐ*. "*Cāntīng*" means "restaurant" and *zhǐ* means "paper." Our whole phrase together would be *Qǐng gěi wǒ cāntīngzhǐ*.

One last wrinkle for this phrase. What if you want to ask for a specific something from a group of that thing? What if there are a bunch of cups on the table and you want that one, over there, the one that hasn't been used? You can't just say, "Please give me a cup." You would point and say, "Please give me that cup." It is really easy to add this into the sentence. "Cup" in Chinese is *bēizi*. "Please give me that cup." would be *Qǐng gěi wǒ nàge bēizi*. We just added "cup" right after "that" from the original phrase. You can do this with any noun.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

In these lessons we have been translating *zhège* and *nàge* as "this" and "that." Technically, though, *zhè* and *nà* by themselves mean "this" and "that." *Ge*, as we've said before, is a multi-purpose measure word, it is a measure word for anything. *Zhè* and *nà* mean "this" and "that," but in Chinese "this" and "that" must always be followed by a measure word. Thus they are often followed by *ge*. There is no way to translate the *ge* in *nàge*, so we just translate the whole thing as "that." In the last part of this PDF we made the sentence *Qǐng gěi wǒ nàge bēizi*. ("Please give me that cup.") *Bēizi* uses the measure word *ge*, so we don't need to change *nàge* at all. If we were making this sentence with a different noun, we might have to change the measure word that we use. We're not going to introduce any new measure words here, we just want you to know what function *ge* serves in this sentence and how *nà* works.

Quick Tip #2

"Fork" in Chinese is *chāzi*. "Spoon" is *shǎozi*.

But you still need to learn to use chopsticks. Almost no Chinese restaurants have forks. (They do all have spoons.) Chopsticks are not hard to use and there are many ways to use them. (Though there is a standard way. Many Chinese people lament that their chopstick style is not standard.) Unfortunately, using chopsticks is more of a hands-on thing, so you will actually need someone to teach you in person. It's outside the scope of these lessons. Most people can get good at chopsticks after one or two lessons. And learning to use chopsticks is a great way to make friends with Chinese people you meet.

Chinese people don't necessarily use chopsticks for everything, though. Often when eating rice mixed with other things (as in fried rice, for example) the Chinese use spoons. Rice, when it is mixed with other things, becomes very slippery and hard to grab with the chopsticks. The Chinese will think you're weird if you try to eat fried rice with chopsticks.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #20

Internet Café

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

#20

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 网吧。
2. 请帮我。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 網吧。
2. 請幫我。

PINYIN

1. Wǎngbā.
2. Qǐng bāng wǒ.

ENGLISH

1. Internet cafe.
2. Please help me.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
网吧	網吧	wǎngbā	internet café	noun

在	在	zài	to exist	verb
哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where	pronoun
请	請	qǐng	please (do something)	expression
我	我	wǒ	I, me	pronoun
帮	幫	bāng	help	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

他常常去网吧。 Tā chángcháng qù wǎngbā. He often goes to the Internet café.	一个人在外面漂泊了很多年，真想再回家看看。 Yī ge rén zài wàimiàn piāobó le hěn duō nián, zhēn xiǎng zài huí jiā kànkàn. I've been drifting far from home for many years -- I'd really love to go home for a visit.
ATM机在哪儿? ATMjī zài nǎr? Where is the ATM?	您住在哪儿? Nín zhù zài nǎr? Where are you staying?
小姐，请给我菜单。 Xiǎojiě, qǐng gěi wǒ càidān. Miss, please give me the menu.	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
儿子们帮了母亲。 érzimen bāngle mǔqīn. The sons helped their mother.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Until global mobile phone service becomes a realistic communication option (it exists, but jeez is it expensive), the Internet is how travelers communicate. In this sense China is a very travel friendly country. There are Internet cafés set up all over the place. Many, probably most, Chinese people don't have their own computer. Even if they do have a computer, and that computer is hooked up to the Internet, personal Internet connections are not fast enough to support avid computer users. Michael complains often that he cannot watch YouTube in China. It's not that it's censored or anything like that, it's just that his Internet connection is too slow to support streaming video. Internet cafés feature high-speed connections and thus are swarmed by young people wanting to download TV shows and movies, shoot terrorists, slay ogres, and have video chats. Generally people who need the Internet for more serious pursuits have a connection in their home or office, and business communications do not require high speed Internet. The *wǎngbā* ("Internet café") is a rowdy meeting ground filled with teenagers and young men with headsets yelling out commands in the shooting game Counterstrike ("He's on your left! On your left!" "Follow me!"), people smoking cigarettes while they catch up on their favorite Korean soap operas, and boys and girls meeting people of the opposite sex through video chat. Mixed in with this there is sometimes a traveler emailing their friends back home. That's who you want to be.

First let's get you to an Internet café. "Internet café" in Chinese is *wǎngbā*. *Wǎng* means "net" or "web." Just as Westerners refer to the Internet as "the net" or "the web," the Chinese call the Internet *wǎng*. *Bā* mimics the English word "bar." Thus Internet cafés in China are literally called "Internet bars." The word for a bar where you drink alcohol is *jiǔbā*. *Jiǔ* means "alcohol." But, as Michael said, that is something for another lesson.

If you are in a city, odds are there is an Internet café within walking distance. You can ask the desk clerks at your hotel, or, if you are wandering the streets, just ask a passer by. As the Internet café caters to young people, your best bet is to ask someone under 40. If we think back to an earlier lesson (Lesson 6, "Where Is the Bathroom?"), we will remember that "where" is *zài nǎr*. To ask where the Internet café is all you have to do is combine the word for "Internet café" with the phrase for "where": *Wǎngbā zài nǎr?* ("Internet café where?") Chinese is often a very simple language. Making new sentences is usually just a matter of pressing words and phrases together. (As opposed to conjugating words or taking into account whether something is an adjective or an adverb.) You probably won't understand the directions the person you ask gives, but hopefully they will point. Just keep following fingers. Go 100 meters in the direction they point, then ask again. Asking multiple people is always a good strategy, it's surprising how often people are confused about their own neighborhood.

(And we're not saying this is just a Chinese problem.)

There is usually no sign that says "Internet café" in English. Internet cafés are hard to find even if you're fluent in Chinese. They are often in basements or on the second or third floors of office buildings. Learn the characters for *wǎngbā* (they are at the end of the PDF), maybe write them down, and keep your eyes open. Keep looking up, checking all signs for these two characters. It is in the Internet café's best interests to have them displayed prominently, but the characters still have a tendency to get lost in the collage of signs that often cover building faces.

You've found the Internet café. You walk up the stairs and come out into a spacious dark room with rows and rows of computers. Right by the entrance there is a desk, like a hotel's check-in desk. This is where you get the password which allows you to use the computers. You don't need to say anything to the desk clerks, most people don't. Almost all Internet cafés work on a deposit system. When you come in, you give the desk clerks 10 yuan and they keep this as your balance at the café. When you leave they will deduct the fee for the amount of time you spent and give you the remainder of your balance. The base price is usually three yuan per hour. Most Internet cafés also want ID when you enter. All Chinese people are required to have their ID card number recorded before they are given access to the computers. The desk clerks will sometimes want your passport. If they need your passport they will know how to say it in English. Many places won't require you to show ID because you're a foreigner. They may not have a system for keeping track of foreigners, or maybe they think trying to communicate is too much trouble. Either way, they will probably just take your deposit and give you a card with a computer password. (This is a recurring theme in China. Often Chinese people don't say anything to foreigners because they figure they would not be able to communicate with you.)

You may or may not be assigned a computer. More and more Internet cafés are letting people pick their own spots. Many places now have different sections that cost different prices. Better chairs and private rooms add to the hourly price. If your card has a two or three digit number that looks like it corresponds to numbers pasted on the computers, then you should try to find the computer that corresponds to your number. If not, just pick any seat you like. On the card will be a number that is usually between four and eight digits. This is your password. In some Internet cafés you have to turn on the computer when you sit down, in some places the computers are already on. After the computer is booted up there will be a screen with some blank fields for you to plug in your password. Figuring out where to enter your password can be very confusing. Many times Chinese people in the Internet café have to call over an attendant to help them figure out what to do. There will be attendants walking through the rows, sometimes stopping at a friend's computer to watch him play a game, looking for people

that need help. These attendants are almost always thin, young men. (In contrast, the desk clerks are usually young women.) You will be able to recognize the attendants by their company clothing. You can just raise your hand and look around and one of them may see you, or you can approach one of them walking around. If you say to them *Qǐng bāng wǒ*, they will go with you to your computer and try their best to solve whatever problem you have. (*Qǐng* means "please." *Bāng* is "to help." *Wǒ* means "I" or "me." The phrase is literally "Please help me.") If you just don't know where to enter the password, they will enter it for you. If your problem is with accessing a page or downloading something, they will try their best, but if the page is in English they may be just as lost as you. If your computer is having problems (perhaps you accidentally got it into Chinese mode and now it will only write Chinese characters) they will either fix the problem or ask you to switch computers. Once they've got you set up, the computer runs like any other Windows machine. Everything will be in Chinese, but, if you're at all familiar with the system, this shouldn't be too much of a problem.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Get there early in the day. Gamers tend to be nocturnal. If you get to the Internet cafe before the afternoon you can beat the rush. The Internet cafe is infinitely more pleasant when it's not filled with lots of loud, sweaty guys smoking cigarettes and cursing at each other. Maybe if the windows were open that would be okay, but they're not.

Quick Tip #2

The Chinese government does not like the Internet. Alright, maybe that's not exactly right, but they certainly eye the Internet suspiciously. The government does its best to control which pages are available in China. You may not run into any of these restrictions, major companies make an effort to conform to Chinese government rules, but pages that are anti-Chinese government will certainly be inaccessible in China. Certain news websites become unavailable from time to time. You couldn't get Wikipedia for a long time, but recently it's been accessible. The restrictions are much stricter for Chinese language websites than they are for English ones. For example, you can usually get on the BBC's main website. But if you click on the link that gets you BBC news in Chinese your server mysteriously stops responding. This is true for many websites, but, if you stick to English, you can generally surf the web unfettered.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #21

Riding the Bus 1 - Does This Bus go to Beijing?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

21

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 到北京站吗?
2. 这个车到北京站吗?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 到北京站嗎?
2. 這個車到北京站嗎?

PINYIN

1. Dào Běijīng zhàn ma?
2. Zhè ge chē dào Běijīng zhàn ma?

ENGLISH

1. Does (this bus) go to Beijing? (To the driver.)
2. Does this bus go to Beijing station? (To anyone.)

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
到	到	dào	to arrive

SAMPLE SENTENCES

从这边到那边要多久? Cóng zhèbian dào nàbian yào duōjiǔ? How long does it take to go from here to there?	我去北京大楼。 Wǒ qù Běijīng dàlóu. I'm going to the Beijing building.
--	---

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Today's lesson is not for the faint of heart. It is not for those who mind being hot, who terribly dislike crowded, smelly places, who don't like being pushed. If you fit into any of these categories, you might want to skip the next three lessons.

That being said, we here at ChineseClass101.com highly recommend riding the bus at least once. The bus is a supremely Chinese experience. Sure, it doesn't have the history or grandeur of the Great Wall, but the bus is something that hundreds of millions of Chinese people experience every day of their lives. It is a window into the life of an average Chinese person. (As opposed to the Great Wall, which most Chinese people get to see once in their life, if they are lucky.) Most foreigners in China spend all their time in taxis getting carted door to door. In addition to separating you from the average Chinese person, this also disconnects you from the place you are in. In a taxi you get much less of a feeling of your surroundings, you don't notice where you are going; you get in, zone out, arrive, and get out. The bus forces you to locate yourself in the city you are in. It forces you to see this city as an actual place you can navigate around as opposed to a bunch of isolated spots connected by time spent in the back seat of a cab. Plus, the bus is way cheaper than a taxi. Most bus rides cost one yuan. (If the bus is air-conditioned or your destination is especially far away it will cost two yuan. That's right, most buses are not air-conditioned. Buses in Shanghai all cost two yuan no matter where you go.) Taxi rides start at about 10 yuan (it depends on what city you are in) and go

up from there. In a big city like Beijing a cab ride can cost 80 yuan. Of course, that's still only 10 USD, but it's the principle of the matter. Taking the bus, while more challenging than a taxi, is completely doable and very interesting. Though no one will begrudge you a taxi ride at the end of a long day spent on your feet.

Your bus adventure starts, of course, at the bus stop. The bus stop will have a bunch of signs with the numbers of different bus routes. There should also be a sign above these with the name of the bus stop you are at in Chinese and then romanized into *pinyin*. We say "should" because unfortunately these signs have a nasty habit of falling. At the stop, each bus route has a sign that is about a foot and a half wide and about eight inches high. (That's about 45cm by 20cm for all you metric users.) On the sign is the route number (in Arabic numerals, luckily). Next to the route number the first and last stops are written in large characters and their romanization is underneath them. Below this is a list of the stops the bus goes to listed from left to right. On most signs the stop you are at is marked, either with an arrow or by having the characters in a different color. Unfortunately, the only places at the bus stop where there is romanization is on the sign for your current stop (if it's still standing) and the first and last stops on each route sign. Everything else will only be in Chinese characters. That means you have three options:

1. Memorize the characters for the stop you want to go to.
2. Get somebody to write down the characters, then match them with the bus sign. (In lesson 33 we will go over the phrase "Please write it down." and there is a reminder in that lesson that this is helpful for riding the bus.)
3. Ask the bus driver or people at the stop if the bus goes where you want to go. We recommend all three. Try to memorize the characters, have the characters written down to back up your memory, then ask people just to make sure (and to be sure you're not going in the wrong direction.)

Don't be afraid to ask the bus driver about the stop you're going to. Chinese people do it all the time. When the bus pulls up and the doors open, lean in and shout *Dào* (the stop you need to go to) *ma?* In the lesson, the stop Michael used was *Běijīng zhàn*. ("Beijing station." *Zhàn* means station. The main train station in Beijing is called *Běijīng zhàn*.) The question, using *Běijīng zhàn*, would be: *Dào Běijīng zhàn ma?* Literally this is: "Arrive at Beijing station?" It can be translated, however, as "Does this bus go to Beijing station?" *Dào* means "to arrive." In English we would ask, "Does this bus go to Beijing station?" but in Chinese, when you are talking about the destination of a form of transportation, you often do not use *qù*

("to go"), but rather *dào*. Thus we use *dào* in this lesson's phrase. The *ma* at the end of the phrase makes the phrase a question. It is kind of like the "does" that we add onto the beginning of the English phrase "Does this bus go to Beijing station?" Without *ma* the phrase would be *Dào Běijīng zhàn*. This would be translated into English as "This bus goes to Beijing station." That would be an awfully confusing thing to yell at a bus driver. (*Ma* has no tone, but, because you are asking a question, it is natural to have your tone rise up a little at the end of the phrase.) In between *dào* and *ma* you place the name of the station you are asking about. Michael used *Běijīng zhàn*, but you can switch that for any other station name. If you wanted to go to Tian'anmen (*Tiān'ānmén*) you could just say *Dào Tiān'ānmén ma?* (Notice that the word *zhàn* is not part of this phrase. *Běijīng zhàn* being a train station has *zhàn* in its name. *Zhàn* is just part of that particular stop's name. You don't add *zhàn* onto the end of every bus stop name.) This phrase translates as "Does this bus go to Tian'anmen?" Notice, also, that we don't have to say "this bus" when we are talking to the bus driver. That we are talking about this bus is obvious from the context and, in Chinese, objects and subjects that are obvious based on context do not have to be said.

The bus driver will shout at you. Don't be shaken. They are just in a rush and they are afraid you won't hear. They don't have a lot of time to waste repeating themselves and you are in the way of the other people who want to get on. They will shout one of two things: *Dào*. or *Bùdào*. *Dào* (the same "to arrive" as before) means "Yes, this bus does go there." *Bùdào*. means "No, it does not." (Remember that the fourth tone on *bù* will change to a second tone because the word following it is fourth tone.) Chinese people do not answer questions with "yes" or "no." In Chinese there is no exact equivalent of "yes." Instead people confirm the answer to a question by repeating the verb (or in some cases the adjective) you are asking with. Here you are asking whether the bus will arrive at a particular place and the bus driver confirms this by saying the verb *dào* ("to arrive").

If you don't want to get tangled in the rush of people getting on the bus, if you don't like the pressure of yelling back and forth with the bus driver, then you might try asking one of the other people at the stop. You can get their attention by using the *Bùhǎoyìsi*. we learned way back in lesson number 10. Then point to a bus sign and say *Zhè ge chē dào* (where you want to go) *ma?* This is the same as the previous phrase, but we have added *zhè ge chē*. This means "this bus." When talking to the bus driver it was unnecessary to include this, but when talking to other people at the stop it is unclear which bus you are talking about. Thus you must point to a bus sign and say *zhè ge chē*. *Zhè* means "this." *Ge* is a measure word connecting *zhè* and *chē*. (Notice that it has no tone.) *Chē* literally means "car" but we can use it here to mean "bus." (See Quick Tip #1.) If we are asking about Tian'anmen, our whole phrase is *Zhè ge chē dào Tiān'ānmén ma?* ("Does this bus go to Tian'anmen?") Having these two phrases

does not necessarily mean for a fool-proof bus ride, but don't be afraid to make mistakes, we all do; remember, you can do this, and, if all else fails, you can always take a taxi.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

While *chē* literally means "car," it can be used to mean any kind of rideable thing. People always refer to buses as *chē*. The act of riding the bus is called *zuòchē*. (Literally "sit car.") People use *chē* to refer to bikes. They will point at your bike and ask, *Nà shì nǐ de chē ma?* (Literally it translates as "That is your car?" but it means "Is that your bike?") The word *chē* predates the car and in olden times referred to carts. It now means anything with wheels that you can ride on/in.

Quick Tip #2

Saying a group of numbers then adding the word *lù* designates a bus route. In the lesson Michael talked about taking route 328. In Chinese this would be *sānèrbā lù*. Chinese people very rarely talk about a bus as being "route three hundred twenty eight," they just say the numbers directly. (*Lù* literally means "road" or "path." Here we can think of it as meaning "route.") There is only one caveat to this very simple system: when talking about bus numbers, instead of saying *yī* for "one," you say *yāo*. Thus bus 711, which Michael mentioned in the lesson, would be called *qīyāoyāo lù*. Michael is occasionally, very occasionally, lazy and skips something in the lessons. Here he obviously enjoyed hinting at this problem, but not talking about it. The pronunciation of "one" is changed while talking about numbers so that "one" will not be mistaken for "seven." *Qī* and *yī* sound very similar. Imagine if bus 711 was called *qīyīyī lù*. That would be something of a tongue-twister. This rule applies not just to bus routes, but to any time you are saying a group of numbers. The other place you will probably hear "one" pronounced as *yāo* is in phone numbers. It's just like how we sometimes say "niner" instead of "nine" so we don't get "nine" and "five" mixed up.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #22

Riding the Bus 2 - Where is the Bus Going?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

22

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 到哪儿?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 到哪兒?

PINYIN

1. Dào nǎr?

ENGLISH

1. Where are you going?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
到	到	dào	to arrive
哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where
下	下	xià	down, next, bottom

SAMPLE SENTENCES

从这边到那边要多久?

Cóng zhèbian dào nàbian yào duōjiǔ?

How long does it take to go from here to there?

您住在哪儿?

Nín zhù zài nǎr?

Where are you staying?

下一站是南京路。

Xià yī zhàn shì Nánjīng lù.

Next stop is Nanjing Road.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

First, a disclaimer: Michael lives in Beijing. Bus systems in different parts of China can be somewhat different. In Shanghai, for example, there is only a bus driver on the bus. There is no one selling tickets. As was mentioned in the PDF accompanying the last lesson, bus tickets in Shanghai are all a fixed price, two yuan, unlike Beijing where they vary based on the kind of bus and the distance you are going. Thus, in Shanghai, there is no need for another person on the bus selling tickets. First, a disclaimer: Michael lives in Beijing. Bus systems in different parts of China can be somewhat different. In Shanghai, for example, there is only a bus driver on the bus. There is no one selling tickets. As was mentioned in the PDF accompanying the last lesson, bus tickets in Shanghai are all a fixed price, two yuan, unlike Beijing where they vary based on the kind of bus and the distance you are going. Thus, in Shanghai, there is no need for another person on the bus selling tickets. Everyone just slips two yuan into a slot (or swipes their card) as they get on the bus. The bus driver is responsible for making sure everyone pays. In other places, there are other variations to this process. Michael, and the rest of us at ChineseClass101.com, would like to be able to lead you through every situation, but there is just not enough time for that, and we have not been in every possible situation ourselves. We hope that we at least give you what you need to be ready to face these challenges yourself.

The bus is interesting because it is an adventure. It is not the most comfortable or the most convenient way to travel. (Depending on the distance and area, the most convenient way might be taxi, subway, or bike.) Figuring out which bus to take is a puzzle. Getting on the bus can be a physical trial. The official rule is that people should wait for other passengers to get

off before they try to get on. The workers on the bus will be shouting this to the people waiting at the bus stop as they pull up. (In Chinese they yell, *Xiān xià, hòu shàng*. which literally means "First get off, later get on." but unfortunately we don't have time to go over that right now.) Many people ignore the exhortations of the bus staff. They dig their arms and elbows behind the backs of those getting off and pry an opening to squeeze themselves into. This gets worse the more people there are on the bus and reaches its peak during the rush hours. Things are improving however, and it should be noted that there has been great change in the last few years, with many more people waiting calmly for other passengers to get off first. It may even be that now most people are pretty polite and reasonable about letting others off. Still, the rush hour crush washes away the better manners of all but the most dignified, and with good reason: being unwilling to push, especially when you are one of the last to get on, means you might lose a spot that could very well have been yours. So, while we here at ChineseClass.com implore you to be calm and well-mannered, there is nothing wrong with a little calm and well-mannered squeezing, a vigorous throwing of oneself into the mash of bodies. This is a new culture and you should experience it first-hand. Just don't forget your smile, your *Bùhǎoyisi!* and your *Duìbùqǐ!*

Once on the bus your next step is to buy a ticket. In Beijing there will almost always be a person on the bus whose job it is to sell tickets. There are a handful of routes (in a system of hundreds of routes) where you put money into a slot as you get on (like in Shanghai), but these are very rare. This person selling tickets will often be in a little railed off part of the bus towards the middle, though sometimes they walk around the bus. You will be able to recognize them because they are wearing the company clothing for their particular bus company and they are carrying a clip-book of tickets. (Michael apologizes for arbitrarily assuming that the person selling tickets is a woman. Often times this person is a woman, but not always. He recognizes it was wrong of him to generalize. If you find this apology unnecessary, just realize that Michael's mother came of age in the sixties and maybe you'll understand better.) If you don't find the ticket seller, they will find you, but in a very crowded bus it is necessary that you stay alert, and helpful for you to be active in buying your ticket. The person selling tickets will want to know where you are going so they can give you the right price ticket. Sometimes, however, they will not speak to you. If you are not Asian, they will often assume that you cannot speak Chinese and thus will not try to communicate with you. They will just hold up a number of fingers that corresponds with the price of the ticket. If they do speak to you, they will ask *Dào nǎr?* *Dào* should be recognizable from the last lesson, it means "to arrive." *Nǎr* is a combination of *nǎ* ("which") and *er*, together they mean "where." The phrase is literally "Arrive where?" but, as we have said before, *dào* can be interpreted as "going to" and thus our phrase becomes "Where are you going?" Two things to remember:

1. No word for "you" needs to be included because it is obvious from the circumstances that they are asking about you.
2. We do not need *ma* in this question. When there is a question word in the phrase (like "who," "what," or "where") we no longer put *ma* at the end.

In response to this question you can reply "*Dào* (wherever you are going)" or just say the name of your destination. Both are equally good. Using our old example of *Dào Běijīng* ("Beijing station"), you would reply: *Dào Běijīng zhàn.* or just simply *Běijīng zhàn.*

The ticket seller will then tell you how much your ticket costs. Most of the time (in Beijing) the price will be one yuan. The ticket vendor will say to you *Yī kuài.* Then they will hold up one finger. (Here your Chinese does not have to be great.) The main denomination in the Chinese currency, the *Rénmínbì* (or RMB), is the *yuán.* This is kind of like the US "dollar." When people are speaking, however, they don't usually use the word *yuán,* they usually say *kuài.* *Yuán* is used in writing and in a little more formal situations. This is kind of like the relationship between the American English words "dollar" and "buck." Thus the ticket seller will say to you *Yī kuài.* ("One yuan.") Bus tickets in Beijing are almost always one *yuan.* They will be more expensive only if you are going a long distance, you are on an express bus, or you are riding an air conditioned bus. Again, most buses are not air conditioned. Many Chinese people like to claim that the Chinese have no body odor, that body odor is something that only Westerners give off. Being in a packed, non-air conditioned bus disproves this. When given this example most Chinese will say, "Well, yeah, we do have a little body odor, but nothing like Westerners." Yeah... If you happen to be riding an air conditioned bus your ticket will probably cost *liǎng kuài.* ("Two yuan.") Notice that we use *liǎng* and not *èr.* We are talking about a quantity of something and thus use *liǎng.* The only way you can end up with a ticket of more than two *yuan* is by combining two factors that cause more expensive tickets; riding an air conditioned bus for a very long distance, for example. Michael reports that only one time has he had a ticket that cost as much as four *yuan.*

After the seller tells you how much your ticket is, pass them the money and take your ticket. Don't throw away your ticket until you get off the bus. It is your proof that you have paid. Almost all the time the ticket seller will remember you (especially if you are not Asian), but it is still better to have it just in case.

Congratulations, you have gotten past this part of your adventure, now you've got just one more hurdle: getting off at the right stop.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

In Beijing and in many other cities, certain doors on the bus are designated for getting on and others for getting off. These doors are marked with Chinese characters, so it might be a good idea to memorize these two characters. *Xià* means "down" or "to get off." *Shàng* means "up" or "to get on." The characters will be posted next to the doors. In a bus with only two doors, the front door is for getting on and the back door for getting off. There are some extended buses that are two cars connected together and have three or four doors. On these buses the middle door(s) are for boarding and the front and back doors for getting off. Separating these doors is actually very good for the whole bus experience because it cuts down on pushing to get on and it allows the staff to more clearly monitor who's paid.

Quick Tip #2

Anybody who's taken a lot of buses in their lifetime knows this rule: Move to the back of the bus. Unfortunately, people everywhere in the world are horrible about following this rule. They will stop as soon as they get on the bus, everyone clumps together up there, and the front of the bus becomes a mass of sharp elbows and heavy feet. The back of the bus always, always has more space. There are also more seats back there. Moving to the back of the bus gives you first shot at a seat when somebody gets up. Move back there and you will stand cool and calm, staring at the cramped masses, wondering where they lost their common sense.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #23

Riding the Bus 3 - Please Tell Me When We Arrive.

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

23

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 到的时候，请叫我。
2. 下一个站是什么？

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 到的時候，請叫我。
2. 下一個站是什麼？

PINYIN

1. Dào de shíhou, qǐng jiào wǒ.
2. Xià yī ge zhàn shì shénme?

ENGLISH

1. When we arrive, please call me. / Please tell me when we get there.
2. What is the next station?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
到	到	dào	to arrive

请	請	qǐng	please (do something)
叫	叫	jiào	to call
我	我	wǒ	I, me
是	是	shì	to be
什么	甚麼	shénme	what

SAMPLE SENTENCES

从这边到那边要多久？ Cóng zhèbian dào nàbian yào duōjiǔ? How long does it take to go from here to there?	小姐，请给我菜单。 Xiǎojiě, qǐng gěi wǒ càidān. Miss, please give me the menu.
今年，我妹妹又出了一张专辑，叫《月光》。 Jīnnián, wǒ mèimèi yòu chū le yìzhāng zhuānjí, jiào Yuèguāng. My sister put out another album this year called "Moonlight."	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēgē. He is my older brother.	你说什么？ Nǐ shuō shénme? What did you say?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Possibly the most worrisome part of the bus ride, especially when it's your first time going

somewhere in a foreign country, is waiting on the bus, trying to pick out the right stop. The bus is not like the subway, where the stops have very large, clearly written signs. On the bus you often have to pick out your stop based on recognizing landmarks. If it's your first time going to a certain area, picking out landmarks is out of the question. In Beijing, the bus stops are either announced over a loud speaker or yelled out by the person selling tickets as you go along. Sometimes there is even a digital sign at the front of the bus, but it is only in Chinese and it only flashes the name of the next stop one or two times. Most of the time it's displaying messages reminding riders to be courteous.

The loud speakers are almost always garbled. Sometimes they have English, but all the English says is "The next stop is..." and then the name of the stop very quickly in Chinese. It's really rather funny, as if the information that was most important on the loud speakers were those four words "The next stop is" and not the actual name of the stop. If the ticket seller is yelling out the names of stops themselves, you don't even have to bother listening, most Chinese people don't even understand what the ticket sellers say. Yelling all day for a living causes you to distort your words. But what the ticket sellers lack in clarity of speech, they make up for in attentiveness. If you're at all worried about where you are or where to get off, the ticket sellers will always help you to the best of their ability. People sometimes complain about the service in China, but this is one place it won't let you down. Your best bet is to ask the ticket seller to keep an eye out for you. When you buy your ticket, say to the ticket seller, *Dào de shíhou, qǐng jiào wǒ*. This means "Please tell me when we get there." If you say this, when the bus arrives at your stop, the ticket seller will tap you on the shoulder (or call out to you if they can't reach you), give you a meaningful look, and say *Dào le*. (Literally "Arrived." but here it means "We've arrived." or "We're at your stop.") Let's break down the phrase. The first half is *dào de shíhou*. *Dào* means "to arrive." *De* is a possessive particle. *Shíhou* means time. Together these mean "the time of arrival" or "when we arrive." The next half of the phrase is *qǐng jiào wǒ*. *Qǐng* means "please." *Jiào* means "to call (somebody)." *Wǒ* means "I" or "me." Altogether this half of the phrase is "please call me." When we put our two halves together the phrase becomes "When we arrive, please call me." If you say this to the ticket seller, they will, no fail, get you when it's your stop. Sometimes it requires the cooperation of other people on the bus to reach you across a crowd, but it's kind of wonderful to watch people who normally look so disorganized working together to make sure the foreigner gets off at the right stop. Knowing that you are in good hands, you can settle down for your ride and start memorizing landmarks for next time. Remember this help that you have received and make sure you let China know that you appreciate it.

But what if you didn't say anything to the ticket seller? What if the bus has been too crowded and you haven't even gotten to the ticket seller yet, but you're worried your stop is coming up?

In these cases you might want to ask the person next to you what the next stop is. First you might want to use the *Bu4hao3yi4si1*. we learned back in lesson 10. Then, after you've got their attention, use this phrase from today's lesson: *Xià yīge zhān shì shénme?* *Xià* means "down," but it can also mean "next." *Yī* is "one." *Ge* is a measure word. *Zhān* means "station." Together this first half of the phrase is "next one station" or just "next station." "*Shì*" means "to be." "*Shénme*" means "what." So the whole phrase together is "Next station is what?" In English, we would put the words in a different order and say "What is the next station?" In Chinese, question words (like "what") don't come in any particular spot in the sentence, you just replace a word in the sentence with a question word to turn it into a question. If we wanted to say, "The next stop is Beijing station." we would say, *Xià yīge zhān shì Běijīng zhàn*. To turn this statement into a question we just replace *Běijīng zhàn* with the question word *shénme*. In English, we would have to put the "what" at the beginning of the sentence. In Chinese, no reordering is required. (And remember, *ma* is not used when you have a question word.) Thus you can ask the person next to you *Xià yīge zhān shì shénme?* and they will tell you what the next stop is, and you can know whether or not to get off.

From everyone here at ChineseClass101.com to all you adventurers, good luck and *jiāyóu!*

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Another way to know when to get off is to count stops while you are on the bus. Before you get on the bus, go to the sign for the bus route and count the number of stops between where you get on and where you have to get off. The problem with this is you have to know the Chinese characters for the stop you want to get off at. It also requires a fair amount of concentration when you are on the bus. We most highly recommend the first phrase from today's lesson; as Michael said, it's never failed him, but we also understand that it requires a certain level of Chinese skill and trust in other people.

Also, when you do know the next stop is your stop, whether you were notified by the ticket seller, or you counted stops, or you're just familiar with the area, start moving towards the door to get off. This will make things a lot easier for both you and your fellow riders. There is nothing worse than people waiting till the last minute to decide they want to get off, then violently pushing their way through the crowd. It's much more humane to quietly switch with other people in advance. Just ask people ahead of you, *Nǐ xià ma?* (Literally "You get off?") If they say *Xià*. ("Yes.") then wait behind them and follow them out when the bus stops. If they say *Bùxià*. ("No.") then indicate with your hands that you'd like to switch places. They'll

understand and be happy to accommodate, even if means tripping a little over other people's limbs. Tripping a little is better than catching a stray elbow in the ribs as people push by.

Quick Tip #2

China is a very safe country. The risk of you getting intentionally physically harmed while you are in China is tiny. (Though crime rates are rising as the gap between rich and poor gets larger.) Your belongings, however, should not be considered safe. While you may never encounter any problems, and you shouldn't let it get in the way of you having a good time, it is a good idea to keep an eye on your wallet and other valuables. This is especially true in crowded areas like the bus. If you keep your wallet some place other than your back pocket, you should be okay. Don't put valuables in the outside pockets of bags. Try to keep your bag in front of you so you can see what's going on. But again, don't let paranoia get the best of you, you're here to enjoy yourself, not play secret agent.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #24

Riding the Rails 1- Subway

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

24

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 一张三块的票。
2. 两张三块的票。
3. 一张四块的票。
4. 一张五块的票。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 一張三塊的票。
2. 兩張三塊的票。
3. 一張四塊的票。
4. 一張五塊的票。

PINYIN

1. yī zhāng sān kuài de piào 。
2. liǎng zhāng sān kuài de piào 。
3. yī zhāng sì kuài de piào 。
4. yī zhāng wǔ kuài de piào 。

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. One three Kuai ticket.
2. Two three Kuai tickets.
3. One four Kuai tickets.
4. One five Kuai ticket.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
票	票	piào	ticket

SAMPLE SENTENCES

一张票多少钱?

Yī zhāng piào duō shǎo qián ?

How much is one ticket?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Traffic is killing China. For any kind of appointment you have it's okay to be late if you use the traffic excuse. "I'm sorry. We ran into traffic." Traffic is almost unavoidable. Unless you go underground. To combat its traffic problems, China is building more and more subways. Beijing has five new lines under construction that are supposed to be done before the 2008 Summer Olympics. The subway is often the quickest way to get anywhere in a crowded city. You just have to know how to use it.

We'll be going over the Beijing subway in this PDF because that's what Michael was most familiar with. (You can also find some information about the Shanghai subway in Quick Tip 2.) Subway systems differ from city to city so you may need a day or so to adjust to a new system. We hope that the phrases and information that we give you here will help ready you for anything you might face.

This first step in any subway journey is buying a ticket. Ticket booths are located in all subway stations in Beijing. Most ticket booths are underground right before the subway platforms, but a few stations have ticket booths at street level. In all subway stations, tickets are checked at an entrance very near the ticket booth. In Beijing, the tickets are divided by which line you are going to ride. There are three subway lines and one commuter train that goes out into the suburbs east of Beijing (the BaTong Line). The different subway lines all have different colors and numbers. The blue line, Line Two, makes a rectangle around the central part of the city following the second ring road. (This line is also called the Loop Line.) The red line, Line One, goes east to west, cutting through the blue line's rectangle near the bottom (in the south). At its easternmost end, the red line connects with the BaTong Line going out to the suburbs. The BaTong Line is also red, but don't be confused: Line One and the BaTong line are different lines. The BaTong Line requires a different ticket. Construction started on the two lines in the central part of the city back in the 1960s. Originally they were much less extensive and only for official use. The two lines were fully completed and opened to the public in 1984. The BaTong Line was opened in 2003. Line 13, the yellow line, which operates in the northern part of the city, was opened in sections in 2002 and 2003. The yellow line goes above ground making a wide loop from the blue line's northwest corner to its northeast corner. (A map is included in this PDF.) All lines except the yellow line still use simple paper tickets. An attendant takes your ticket and rips it when you enter. Unless you have a transfer ticket, there is no reason for you to keep your ticket after it has been checked. The attendant will just throw it into a big bag of ripped tickets that they keep in front of them. A ticket on any one line costs three *yuan*. Tickets go up in price if you want to buy a transfer ticket to get you between two lines. Transferring between the red line and the blue line (the two subways in the center of the city) is free. Otherwise you need a transfer ticket. (There will be many times in this PDF that "the subway" just refers to the red and blue lines. We are sorry if this causes any confusion. We do it for convenience. Technically the red and blue lines are subways whereas the other lines are not because they operate above ground. The Chinese word for "subway" is *dìtiě*. *Dì* means "ground" and *tiě* means "iron." The Chinese are very strict about only using this word for subways, trains that are underground. There are other words for rail systems that go above ground like the yellow line and the BaTong Line. If you, however, use *dìtiě* for all these lines, no one will bat an eye.) A transfer ticket has two different colored ends. A transfer ticket for the subway and the yellow line has one yellow end and one blue end. A transfer ticket for the

BaTong line and the subway has one red end and one blue end. When you go down to the subway platform the attendant will rip off the blue end and hand you back the rest of the ticket. Make sure not to forget your ticket. When you get to the another line an attendant will rip off the other end of your ticket at the entrance to the platform. If you lose your ticket you will have to buy a new one when you transfer. The yellow line no longer uses paper tickets. It has been upgraded to take tickets with magnetic coding on the back. These can be read by machines and so there does not need to be as many attendants checking tickets. Unfortunately, the transfer ticket for the subway and the yellow line is still paper. When you get to the entrance to the yellow line there is an attendant who will give you a magnetic ticket in exchange for the yellow end of your transfer ticket. You slip the magnetic ticket into a slot in the turnstile and little gates are automatically pulled back. Your ticket comes out at the other end of the machine. Make sure to take the magnetic ticket with you. The yellow line requires you to use it again when you want to come out at your destination.

As we said, one ticket on any line is three yuan. Transfer tickets are more expensive, but people buy them because they are cheaper than buying two individual tickets. A transfer ticket for the BaTong line and the subway costs four yuan. One for the yellow line and the subway costs five yuan. Because each of these tickets has a unique price, when Beijingers go to the ticket booth they almost never say which line they want a ticket for, they just say the price of the ticket. *Yīzhāng sānkuài de piào.* means "One three yuan ticket." Saying you want a three yuan ticket tells the seller that you don't want a transfer ticket, you just want a ticket for whatever line you are currently on. Let's break down this phrase, then we'll talk about how to modify it for the other kinds of tickets. *Yī* means "one" and *zhāng* is a measure word for wide, thin, flat things. Most things that appear on a piece of paper, like tickets and magazine pages, use *zhāng* as their measure word. *Zhāng* can also be used for things like CDs or credit cards. (Though, again, you can always use "ge" if you forget the right measure word.) *Yīzhāng* together means "one (of something wide and flat)." The noun in this sentence is the last word, *piào*. *Piào* means "ticket." *Yīzhāng piào* means "one ticket." *sānkuài de* modifies *piào*. *Sān* means "three." *Kuài* is a word that has the same meaning as *yuan*, but is used more commonly in speech (the same way that "dollar" is the formal word for the US currency, but "buck" might be used in speech). *De* is the possessive particle which connects these two words to the noun they are modifying, *piào*. *Sānkuài de piào* means "three yuan ticket." The whole sentence together is *Yīzhāng sānkuài de piào.* which means "One three yuan ticket." The word order is just like the English with the modifier coming in between the quantity and the noun. The only difference is the addition of a measure word and *de*. Note that the measure word always stays with the number for the quantity.

If you want to change around parts of this sentence to talk about different tickets or a different

quantity of tickets, you just change the numbers in the sentence. Nothing else in the sentence changes. To say "One four yuan ticket." you just say, *Yīzhāng sānkuài de piào*. (A four yuan ticket is a transfer ticket for the BaTong Line.) For "One five yuan ticket." you say, *Yīzhāng wǔkuài de piào*. (Five yuan gets you a transfer ticket for the yellow line.) To get two five yuan tickets you just change the first number, you say, *Liǎngzhāng wǔkuài de piào*. Isn't this simple?

One last little trick. You don't even need to say *piào*. Beijingers usually don't say it. The ticket seller knows that you're buying a ticket, they don't need you to say the word. Plus the measure word that you use tips them off as to what you are talking about. (Remember, *zhāng* can only be used for wide, flat, thin things.) Beijingers often say, *Yīzhāng sānkuài de*, which, in this situation, means "One three yuan ticket." In another situation it might not be clear what wide, flat thing that costs three yuan you are talking about. Note that everything about the sentence stays the same, only the word *piào* is left out. *De* has to stay to signal that *sānkuài* is modifying something, even though the thing that *sānkuài* is modifying is not said, only implied. One last example: "Two four yuan tickets." *Liǎngzhāng sìkuài de*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

In the past year (starting in 2006) Beijing has been introducing something called *Yīkǎtōng*. This literally means "one card pass." It is a card that people can put money on and use on the subway or the bus. Riders just wave their card (or their wallet or bag with the card in it) in front of a special scanner and the machine automatically deducts money. This makes a lot of sense on the bus because it gets you a more than 50% discount on almost all bus rides. For the subway, having *Yīkǎtōng* saves you the time of buying a ticket, but it doesn't give you the transfer discounts that buying transfer tickets would. You get charged three yuan every time you enter a new line. Except for the yellow line, the subway system also still relies on attendants to check that people are using their cards and, of course, to rip paper tickets. (Apparently, the subways cannot be upgraded to automatic ticket checkers like the yellow line because their entrances are too small. They were built in the 60s, 70s, and 80s with deliberately small entrances to control crowds so that a few attendants could check everyone's tickets. Widening the entrances of all the subway stations would be a massive project and will certainly have to wait until after the Olympic Games.)

The *Yīkǎtōng* can be bought and charged up in any subway station and at major bus stations.

Quick Tip #2

The subway system in Shanghai is different from Beijing's system. The Shanghai subway uses cards and ticket prices vary depending on how far you are going. Cards (including single-use cards) can be bought from machines or ticket booths in the subway. The machines have English menus, though some people find them confusing and sometimes they malfunction or are unresponsive. If you buy a card from the booth, you just need to tell them where you are going. Just use the phrase we learned for buying bus tickets: "*Dào* (the name of the station you want to go to)." They will respond by telling you how much you owe. You take the card the vendor gives you and you swipe it over the scanner at the turnstile. When you are leaving, if you have just bought a single-use card, you will need to insert your card into a slot in the turnstile before the machine will let you go.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #25

Riding the Rails 2 - Long Distance Travel

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

25

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 几张?
2. 硬座。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 幾張?
2. 硬座。

PINYIN

1. Jǐ zhāng?
2. Yìngzuò。

ENGLISH

1. How many (wide, flat, thin things; in this case, tickets)?
2. Hard seat.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
火车	火車	huǒchē	train

硬	硬	yìng	hard
软	軟	ruǎn	soft
卧	臥	wò	to lie
上	上	shàng	to get on; on; top
中	中	zhōng	middle,inside
下	下	xià	down, next, bottom

SAMPLE SENTENCES

人们坐火车上下班。 rénmen zuò huǒchē shàngxià bān. The people are commuting to work by train.	我的背太硬了。 Wǒ de bēi tài yìng le. My back is too hard.
你的身体真软。 Nǐ de shēntǐ zhēn ruǎn. Your body is really soft.	请卧倒 qǐng wò dǎo Lie down,please.
两只螃蟹在岩石上走。 liǎng zhī pángxiè zài yánshí shàng zǒu. The two crabs are walking on a rock.	他在比赛中被淘汰掉了。 Tā zài bǐsài zhōng bèi táotài diào le. He was eliminated from the competition.
下一站是南京路。 Xià yī zhàn shì Nánjīng lù. Next stop is Nanjing Road.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

China is a big country. It is not like Japan, it is not like Europe. You can't just hop in a car or hop on a train and be anywhere in a few hours. Cities are hundreds and thousands of kilometers apart. Going around China is a journey, it is not just a little trip. The train is the way to get around China. It is the way Chinese people get around China and it is how you should go, too. Buses are cramped, they take at least as long as the train, and the price difference is not huge. Avoid buses unless you are going somewhere only a couple hours away, or you are in the mountains. (This is a big "or." Trains cannot scale steep inclines. In many mountainous parts of China, buses are the only way to go.) Avoid sleeper buses at all costs. Unless you are 160 cm tall (about 5'2") and enjoy the smooth sounds of wailing babies lulling you to sleep, sleeper buses are a no-no. Driving a car probably won't be an option for you, and this is true for most Chinese people, too. Planes aren't too bad. They're much more expensive than the train, but they're also quicker. Thought domestic flights in China have an average delay of two to five hours, they should still get you to your destination somewhat quicker than the train. Still, trains are China. The train is pretty comfortable, it's cheap, and you get a feel for China. Not only can you see China rolling away outside your window, but the train is also a lively social space. It's filled with people sitting on each other's bunks, families eating fruit, older men talking politics, students playing Chinese card games, and lots of people eating dried melon seeds and drinking beer. You can lie in your bunk, read a book, and stare out the window for a while. Then, when you feel ready, go to the bunks next to yours and watch the people play Chinese poker. They'll probably invite you and try to teach you the game. They'll at least want you to have a few beers.

But first you have to get on the train. And that means buying a ticket. (Unless you're really adventurous and sneaky.) With every train station there is a booth for selling tickets. In smaller train stations this booth is often inside the station, in the waiting area. Larger stations have the booth outside or in a separate section of the station so that people buying tickets don't crowd the waiting areas.

When you get to the front of the line the ticket vendor will ask you, *Dào nǎr?* Buying tickets for the train is like buying tickets for the bus crossed with buying subway tickets, so this should feel like somewhat of a review of previous lessons. *Dào nǎr?* means "Where to?" (Remember? It's the same question the vendor in the bus asks.) *Dào* means "to arrive." *Nǎr* means "where." The question thus means "Where to?" You answer this by saying "*Dào* (the place you want to go to)." Michael used Beijing as his example. He's kind of in love with Beijing. Using Beijing, your answer would be *Dào Běijīng*. ("To Beijing.") The next question the vendor asks is *Jǐzhāng?* This means "How many tickets?" *Jǐ* means "how many" and *zhāng* is a measure word for wide, flat, thin things; in this case, tickets. (Remember that from last lesson?) The vendor doesn't need to actually say the word "tickets" (*piào*) because from

the context and the measure word we know what they are talking about when they ask "How many?" To this question you should answer "(The number of tickets you want) *zhāng*." Probably you will say, *Yīzhāng*. ("One.") Though, if you are with friends you might say, *Liǎngzhāng*. ("Two.") or *Sānzhāng*. ("Three.")

You could condense these two steps into one and bypass having to answer questions by just starting with, "(The number of tickets you want) *zhāng* dào (your destination) *de piào*." If you want one ticket to Beijing you say, *Yīzhāng dào Běijīng de piào*. ("One ticket to Beijing.") This sentence takes the information in our previous answers and puts it into one sentence. As we mentioned before, *piào* means ticket. Everything else in the sentence modifies *piào*. *Yīzhāng* ("one wide, flat, thin thing") tells them the quantity of tickets of tickets you want. *Dào Běijīng de* tells the vendor what kind of ticket you want. You want a ticket "to Beijing." *De* is the possessive particle. It attaches a modifier onto a noun. Here it attaches *dào Běijīng* ("to Beijing") to *piào* ("ticket"). The sentence is easy to manipulate no matter how many tickets you want and where ever you want to go. Just fill in the relevant information. Let's say you and your significant other want to go to Shanghai, you want to do some shopping, just say, *Liǎngzhāng dào Shànghǎi de piào*. ("Two tickets to Shanghai.") Or maybe you've been staying up in Beijing, you've met some friends, and all of you want to get on south because you're freezing up in Beijing. Then you might say, *Wǔzhāng dào Guǎngzhōu de piào*. ("Five tickets to Guangzhou.")

The last thing you need to tell the vendor is what kind of ticket you want. In China, except on very short trips where there are no beds, all trains have three kinds of tickets. There is *yìngzuò*, *yìngwò*, and *ruǎnwò*.

Yìngzuò means "hard seat." *Yìng* means "hard" and *zuò* means "seat." This kind of ticket quite literally gets you a hard seat. You get a seat in a car split off into tables. Each table has four to six plastic seats around it. These seats are generally a little small for the average Westerner. Sometimes the seats are padded, sometimes not. If there aren't too many people and you aren't riding for more than a few hours, these seats aren't so bad. If it's around a holiday, you're on a high volume line, or you just have bad luck, the aisles will be packed with bags and people who bought standing room only tickets.

Yìngwò means "hard sleeper." *Yìng* means "hard" and *wò* means "to lie." A hard sleeper ticket gets you one of three bunks in a bunk bed. An aisle runs down the side of the hard sleeper cars. On one side of the aisle are windows, on the other are openings to compartments with bunk beds in them. There are two sets of bunk beds to a compartment. The beds have thin mattress. (Thus the "hard" in "hard sleeper.") The compartments have no doors and the hard sleeper cars tend to be very lively. People sit on each other's bunks, move from compartment

to compartment, play cards, talk, eat, and drink. Hard sleeper tickets are divided into *shàng*, *zhōng*, and *xià*. These refer to which level on the bunk bed you get. *Shàng* means "top," *zhōng* means "middle," and *xià* means "bottom." The character for which bunk you have will be written on your ticket. People have long discussions about which bunk is best. The bunks all have different prices, but the price difference isn't very large. The top bunk is the smallest, you can't even sit up half way. There is only room to lie down. Everyone agrees that the top bunk is the worst. The only advantage is that the luggage compartment is up at the top. Thus being in the top bunk allows you to be near your luggage. The middle bunk is bigger than the top bunk, but there's still not enough room to sit up straight. The bottom bunk is the biggest, you can sit and really move around. The advantage of the middle bunk is privacy. People don't have many places they can sit when they're not lying in their bunk. The bottom bunks are places of congregation. If you have the bottom bunk people will be coming and sitting on your bed. Your friends will come and sit on your bed. Complete strangers may sit on your bed without asking so that they can talk with their friend who has the bunk across from you. Or maybe they just want to start conversation. People will want to use your bed when they are eating or when they want to play cards. It is very hard to tell people they have to leave because you want to stretch out and read your book. And whenever anyone wants to go up to their bunk they have to step on yours first. In the middle bunk people will leave you alone. If you crawl up to your bunk to relax for a while, people probably won't say a word to you. But, again, the bottom bunk is way more comfortable and you don't have to feel bad about sitting on someone else's bed whenever you want to sit straight up.

Ruǎnwò means "soft sleeper." *Ruǎn* means "soft." Soft sleeper tickets are much more expensive than hard sleeper tickets. The soft sleeper car is laid out in much the same way as the hard sleeper car, except the compartments have doors. Maybe it's the doors, maybe it's the extra money required to get into the soft sleeper car, but the soft sleeper cars are generally much more quiet than the hard sleeper cars. People don't move around, they don't congregate on each other's beds as much, they don't tend to make new friends. In addition to having doors on the compartments, the soft sleeper beds have much better mattresses and much more head room. Soft sleeper bunks only have two levels, *shàng* ("top") and *xià* ("bottom"). Both levels have plenty of room. The soft sleeper cars are much more comfortable than hard sleeper, but something of the chaotic beauty of China is missing.

That's it for the train. The rest you have to figure out and experience on your own. Oh, and by the way, before we end, "train" in Chinese is *huǒchē*. Thought you might like to know. (*Huǒ* means "fire" and *chē* is that word that we said means anything with wheels that you can ride on.)

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Most nice hotels have ticket offices in them, so you can probably buy your ticket at your hotel. This is really convenient and there is usually only a small service charge, but the people working at the ticket office are not guaranteed to speak English. The ticket offices are often run by companies separate from the hotel, so sometimes even when the desk clerks speak wonderful English, the people in the ticket office only really know "Hello."

Quick Tip #2

Watch your bags, especially in train stations. Many people get worried about their bags when they are riding the train, particularly if its going to be an overnight trip. They don't like falling asleep with their bags vulnerable to all these strangers. This may be a reasonable fear, but, really, the most dangerous place for your belongings is in the train station. All Chinese people put their wallet in their front pocket when they go to the train station. They know thieves tend to gather in train stations to pick on unwary traveler. So keep an eye on your stuff when you're rushing to get that train. Then, relax. Once you're on the train, things are much safer. Everyone else is traveling just like you and your neighbors will look out for you.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #26

Taking a Taxi

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

26

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 到北京站。
2. 我想去北京站。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 到北京站。
2. 我想去北京站。

PINYIN

1. Dào Běijīng zhàn.
2. Wǒ xiǎng qù Běijīng zhàn.

ENGLISH

1. To Beijing station.
2. I want to go to Beijing Station.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
到	到	dào	to arrive

北京	北京	Běijīng	Beijing
站	站	zhàn	station
我	我	wǒ	I, me
想	想	xiǎng	would like, to want
去	去	qù	to go

SAMPLE SENTENCES

从这边到那边要多久? Cóng zhèbian dào nàbian yào duōjiǔ? How long does it take to go from here to there?	我去北京大楼。 Wǒ qù Běijīng dàlóu. I'm going to the Beijing building.
这一站是什么? Zhè yī zhàn shì shénme? What stop is this?	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
我想去看看。 Wǒ xiǎng qù kàn kàn I want to have a look.	我去公园。 Wǒ qù gōngyuán. I'm going to the park.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Taxis are generally the main form of transportation for anyone traveling to China. Taxis all over China have recently raised their prices, but they're still reasonably cheap. In a recently published price comparison between Beijing taxis and taxis in the last 8 hosts of the Summer Olympic Games, Beijing taxis still came out cheaper than other Olympic cities by a large margin. Plus taxis are much less of a hassle than other forms of public transportation. You just

have to know how to say where you want to go and you're all set.

The easiest, bare-bones way to give your directions is a phrase we've studied before. *Dào* plus your destination tells the cabbie where you want to go. *Dào* means "to arrive," but we can often translate it as simply "to." If you want to go to Beijing Station, you just say, *Dào Běijīng zhàn*. This means "To Beijing Station." *Zhàn* means "station." All cities have a main train station that is called "(the name of the city) *zhàn*."

A slightly more elaborate way to tell the cabbie where to go is to say, "*Wǒ xiǎng qù* (your destination)." *Wǒ xiǎng qù* means "I want to go." *Wǒ* means "I" or "me," *xiǎng* means "to want to do something," and *qù* means "to go." Two pronunciation notes: First, because *Wǒ xiǎng* is two third tones in a row, remember to change the *wǒ* to a second tone. Second, *qù* is pronounced differently than *chù*. English does not have a sound exactly like *qù*. The difference between the two sounds does not sound very large to the Western ear, but it is discernible, and it is important. The easiest way to explain this sound is the way Michael pointed out in the lesson: you say the sound *chu* (like the beginning of "choose"), but with an exaggerated puckering of the lips, like you are going to kiss someone on the cheek. Say these sounds to yourself a couple times and try to feel out the difference. To complete this sentence all you have to do is add in your destination after *Wǒ xiǎng qù*. We could use *Běijīng zhàn* again, but that would be boring. Let's try *Xiān zhàn*. Xi'an is the ancient capital of China (the capital has moved a number of times). It is where the first emperor of China resided and was the capital for a good, long time. Xi'an is probably most famous for the Terra-cotta Warriors which were created to guard the first emperor's tomb. Xi'an is a huge tourist destination, and a great site for lovers of ancient culture, so you may find yourself there. *Xiān zhàn* would be the name of the main train station in Xi'an. *Wǒ xiǎng qù Xiān zhàn*. means "I want to go to Xi'an Station." This phrase is probably most useful outside of a cab. When you are taking a taxi, you can just use "*Dào* (your destination)." or you could just say where you want to go and leave off the *dào*. But that is a very business-like phrase for a very special situation. Saying *Dào Běijīng zhàn*. out of the blue to a friend doesn't have much meaning. (It tells them that something is going to Beijing Station.) You can use *wǒ xiǎng qù* in any kind of situation. If a friend asks you where in China you'd like to visit, you can say, *Wǒ xiǎng qù Xiān*. ("I want to go to Xi'an.")

"Taxi" in Chinese is *chūzūchē* ("rent out car"). The act of taking a cab is generally called *dǎ chē* ("to hit car"). Hailing a cab in China is just like it is in any other part of the world. Just stand by the side of the road and raise your hand. Cabs have little red lights on the dashboard or next to the rear view mirror to tell you if they're looking for customers. You may also see "cab stops" that look like bus stops and have a big sign that says "taxi" on them. Those don't mean anything. Cabbies rarely wait at these cab stops. Often they just drive

around, or they wait outside big hotels or night life spots. When a cabbie stops, you get in first and then tell them where you're going. *Dǎ Xīān zhàn*. you might say. If the cabbie understands, he or she will nod or make some other nominal response, flip down the red light, and start off. Flipping down the red light tells other people that they have a customer and it starts the meter. As Michael said, never allow the cabbie to not use the meter or take a cab without a meter. There are many unregistered taxis all over China. These cabs are called *hēi chē* ("black car"). While the people driving these unregistered cabs are not necessarily bad people, they are not responsible to anyone and are therefore a lot more dangerous. First, there is the greater chance of them trying to cheat you, either by giving you fake money or negotiating an unfair price (*hēi chē* have no meters, so prices are negotiated in advance). Second, they have no insurance. If you were to get into an accident, they have no obligation to help you, and, because they have no insurance, it is in their best interest to get away as soon as possible. Always take marked taxis and always rely on the meter. Never allow a cabbie to try to negotiate a price with you before hand. Why would they negotiate in advance unless it worked out in their favor?

That all being said, the great majority of cabbies are honest, nice people. Cabbies in Beijing and Shanghai got some basic English tutelage in preparation for the Olympic Games and the World Expo (held in Shanghai in 2010). Many cabbies will be excited to try out their new English on you. Their English is extremely basic, not more than a few phrases, but, with a few phrases from them and a few from you, you can pass the time together pleasantly.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Get a card for your hotel. For most foreigners, the hardest part of learning Chinese is the pronunciation. (Well, aside from the characters, that is.) There is no guarantee that cabbies will understand your pronunciation of the place you want to go to, especially if it's the name of a hotel and not a major tourist destination. Always be sure to bring a card from your hotel with you when you go out. That way, when you want to go back home, if all else fails, you can just give the cabbie the card and he or she will know where to go.

Many nicer hotels have cards with the Chinese and the English for at least a few tourist destinations. These cards are very useful for the same reason we just talked about: if you can't communicate, you can always just use the card. In addition, you can get the concierge or

desk clerks at your hotel to right down the name of any place you want to go to so that you can show the cabbie. It might be a good idea to have them write down all the places you might want to go, before you head out for the day.

Quick Tip #2

Get a receipt and don't tip. Just as in a restaurant, tipping is unnecessary and frowned upon. Cabbies will think you made a mistake in counting your money if you try to give them more than what the meter says. Getting a receipt, on the other hand, is especially useful if you think you have been overcharged (perhaps the cabbie drove in circles for a while). You can take the receipt to the desk clerks in your hotel and they will be able to tell you if you've paid too much. If you have been overcharged, the desk clerk can call the taxi company and report the cabbie. Getting a refund is possible, but not always easy, and probably not worth it considering the amount of money at stake and the brevity of your time in China. But, again, while it's important to have your guard up in China (just as you should in most of the world), don't let that get in the way of you seeing and enjoying China. It is a pity that many tourists only get to see the money-hungry side of China. That is as much their own fault as it is China's. If you get outside the normal tourist spots and try to meet people who aren't trying to sell you things, you can see a very friendly and warm part of China. Chinese people are known for being *rèqíng* ("warm feeling") which means "welcoming." Often they are overly welcoming.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #27

Do You Have Power Converters?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

#27

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你有变压器吗?
2. 有。
3. 没有。
4. 不知道。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你有變壓器嗎?
2. 有。
3. 沒有。
4. 不知道。

PINYIN

1. Nǐ yǒu biànyāqì ma?
2. Yǒu.
3. Méiyǒu.
4. Bù zhīdao.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Do you have power converters?
2. Yes, we have them.
3. No, we don't have them.
4. I don't know.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
没	沒	méi	(negative prefix)
不	不	bù	(negative prefix)
知道	知道	zhīdào	to know

SAMPLE SENTENCES

世界上没有完美的人。 shìjiè shàng méiyǒu wánměi de rén. In the entire world, nobody is perfect.	这里的风景很普通。 Zhèlǐ de fēngjǐng hěn pǔtōng. The scenery here is pretty common.
我不认识他。 Wǒ bù rènshi tā. I don't know him.	你知道他是谁吗？ Nǐ zhīdào tā shì shéi ma? Do you know who he is?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Chinese wall sockets are deadly assassins of American and Japanese appliances. Electrical wiring in the US and Japan gives out 120 and 100 volts, respectively. China uses 240 volts. (Most European countries use 230 volts, which is close enough to 240 that there usually isn't a problem. Though this doesn't mean you'll necessarily be able to plug your appliance into the wall. Different countries use different kinds of plugs. Check out http://www.kropla.com/china_power.htm for more information on Chinese sockets and sockets around the world.) And even if you don't have to worry about having your appliances fried, it's still probably beneficial to read through this section just to get the phrases.

Plugging an American or Japanese appliance straight into a Chinese wall socket exposes the appliance to a current twice what it's been built to handle. We here at ChineseClass101.com are not electricians (as partially evidenced by the fact that we had to actually go through these experiences before understanding them at all). We can't tell you exactly what happens inside the appliance. All we know is that the outside gets a little warm, like the appliance has a fever, and it won't turn on. Ever again. Your appliance is dead. Michael says he took his Palm Pilot to a Radio Shack near his house after coming back from China the first time. He told them he thought he needed a new battery. They asked him what happened, and he explained about plugging the Palm Pilot into the wall in Beijing. They just laughed. "It's gone," they said.

The ChineseClass101.com team is a group of hardy explorers, tramping around treacherous regions to blaze trails for those that follow. We brave the pitfalls so that you may cross them with ease. (Let us live in our fantasy world. We know we're just dumb foreigners, but it feels nice to pretend.) So what have we learned from our excursions in Chinese electricity? That you need power converters if you are going to use foreign appliances in China. And it seems that these little things, the ones we don't normally use in everyday life, are the things we always forget. There you are in China, surrounded by hostile wall sockets waiting with bated breath for tasty appliance snacks, with not a single power converter to protect them. You need to get out and buy one posthaste!

Unfortunately, power converters are hard to find in China. Some people just buy Chinese appliances or get along without the ones they've brought. (It will be a lot easier to buy normal razors than to find an adaptor for your electric one.) If you really need to use a certain appliance, then you'll have to find a store that sells power converters. Perhaps the concierge in your hotel knows where to buy them, but odds are they just have some ideas about where you could look.

Once you find a store that looks like a likely candidate, you'll have to bring out today's phrase. *Nǐ yǒu...ma?* means, "Do you have...?" *Nǐ* means "you." *Yǒu* means, "to have." *Ma* is a particle that changes statements into questions. It works like a question mark. Actually, it is not necessary to use *nǐ* in this sentence, because it is generally understood that you are talking about the store you are in (or the person you are talking to) and not some other place. If you do use *nǐ*, remember to change it to a second tone because it precedes third tone. "Do you have power converters?" would be *Nǐ yǒu biànyāqì ma?* *Biànyāqì* means "power converter." *Biàn* means "change," *yā* means, "stress," and *qì* means "device." The word for "power converter" literally means "change stress device," which makes sense when you think about what a power converter does. Altogether, the phrase *Nǐ yǒu biànyāqì ma?* literally means, "You have power converters?"

If you want to ask about anything else in a store, just replace the noun in the phrase. "Do you have dictionaries?" would be *Nǐ yǒu cídiǎn ma?* *Cídiǎn* means "dictionary." *Yǒu píjiǔ ma?* means, "Do you have beer?" *Píjiǔ* is "beer." (Note that getting rid of the *nǐ* doesn't affect the meaning of the sentence.) *Yǒu yān ma?* means, "Do you have cigarettes?" *Yān* means "cigarettes." These are the essentials for China: dictionaries, beer, and cigarettes. Yes, smoking is an awful habit, but let's just see how long you last in China without having a cigarette. (See Quick Tip #1.)

The answer to any of these questions will either be *Yǒu* or *Méiyǒu*. *Yǒu* means, "We have it," and *Méiyǒu* means, "We don't have it." *Méi* means "no" or "not." The answer to the three questions mentioned in the last paragraph will almost certainly be *Yǒu*. The Chinese also view these things as essential. But the Chinese don't need power converters. Perhaps this is why the answer to the power converter question is almost always *Méiyǒu*.

When you get the answer *Méiyǒu* (the head honcho here at ChineseClass101.com had to go to at least five different stores before he could find power converters), the next question you're going to ask is, "Where can I buy power converters?" The answer to this question will probably be *Bù zhīdao*, or "Don't know." *Bù* means "no" and *zhīdao* means, "to know." Again, Chinese people don't use power converters ever, so they have no reason to know where one could find them. Still, you'll need to learn that question, "Where can I buy...?" if you're to have any hope of finding what you're looking for in China. That'll be the next lesson. See you next time.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Chōuyān means, "to smoke cigarettes." *Wǒ bù chōuyān* means, "I don't smoke cigarettes." But if it's a man who says this, other men usually interpret it to mean, "I don't feel like smoking right now." Almost every Chinese man smokes sometimes. (Many, many women also smoke, but it is still less common for women.) Perhaps some men only smoke when they are drinking or when they are with other men, but they do smoke sometimes. The idea that one is constitutionally opposed to cigarettes is very uncommon, especially in the less Westernized areas away from the cities. It seems that the belief that one should not smoke at all follows the penetration of Western culture (though some members of the Muslim minority in the Northwest view smoking as against their religion). Many Chinese men view cigarettes in the same light that they view alcohol: every man likes cigarettes, they think; yes, there are some times when one doesn't smoke, but to never smoke is unmanly. Many men will try to force cigarettes on other men as a sign of friendship (especially if they are a little drunk). They won't accept "I don't smoke" for an answer. "Come on, we're friends. Take the cigarette." Again, they believe you are saying that you don't feel like smoking right now. They just want you to share some cigarettes together, to bond, the same way that co-workers might want you to come with them after work for a couple of beers. Come on, everyone likes cigarettes. Repeated refusal of their offer will get them to stop, but they may still think it's kind of strange that you don't want to have cigarettes with them. They might think it means that you don't want to be friends. (There are many people, especially the more Westernized; i.e., the young or the rich, that understand that some people just do not smoke.)

Quick Tip #2

We said in this lesson that *méi* means "no" or "not." *Méi* is only used in certain situations and is connected with *yǒu*. When you are negating *yǒu*, you always use *méi*. You cannot say *bù yǒu*. When you are negating verbs in the past tense, you put *méiyǒu* in front of the verb. *Wǒ méiyǒu chī* means, "I have not eaten" or "I did not eat." Most of the time, however, people cut out the *yǒu*, and they just say *Wǒ méichī*. In this sense, we can say that *méi* is still always connected to *yǒu*, but we have just left the *yǒu* out. Because you can leave the *yǒu* out when negating verbs in the past tense, many people say that *méi* is the past tense "no." Thus, if you want to negate a verb in the past tense, all you have to do is put *méi* in front of the verb. (If the sentence were affirmative, *Wǒ chī le* ("I have eaten" or "I did eat"), we would add a *le* to indicate the past tense. Since *méi* itself indicates the past tense, we do not use *le* with *méi*. That would be redundant.)

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #28

Where Are the Power Converters?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

28

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我在哪儿可以买变压器?
2. 我在哪儿可以买电话卡?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我在哪兒可以買變壓器?
2. 我在哪兒可以買電話卡?

PINYIN

1. Wǒ zài nǎr kěyǐ mǎi biànyāqì?
2. Wǒ zài nǎr kěyǐ mǎi diànhuàkǎ?

ENGLISH

1. Where can I buy power converters?
2. Where can I buy phone cards?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
在	在	zài	at

哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where
可以	可以	kěyǐ	can
买	買	mǎi	to buy
变压器	變壓器	biànyāqì	power converter
电话卡	電話卡	diànhuàkǎ	telephone card

SAMPLE SENTENCES

他在后面。 Tā zài hòumiàn. He is in the back.	您住在哪儿？ Nín zhù zài nǎr? Where are you staying?
你可以叫我丽丽。 Nǐ kěyǐ jiào wǒ Lili. You can call me Lili.	我要买那本书。 Wǒ yào mǎi nà běn shū. I want to buy that book.
你要用变压器。 Nǐ yào yòng biànyāqì. You have to use a power converter.	你有电话卡吗？ Nǐ yǒu diànhuà kǎ ma? Do you have a telephone card?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

You can use this lesson's phrase 在哪儿可以买变压器？ *Zài nǎr kěyǐ mǎi biànyāqì?* to ask where you can buy all manner of things. It just so happened that this phrase fit well with the lesson about power converters, so the bosses decided we should run with it. Before we explore how to change this phrase up, let's look at the components that make up the phrase.

The most basic part of the phrase comes at the end: 买 *mǎi* plus a noun. In this case, the noun

is 变压器 *biànyāqì*. (We noted in the last lesson that 变压器 *biànyāqì* means "power converter.") 买 *Mǎi* is the verb "to buy," and we use it in almost the same way as the English verb. You are probably noticing by now that Chinese word order often mirrors English. To talk about buying something, you just place what you are going to buy after 买 *mǎi*. Here the phrase is 买变压器 *mǎi biànyāqì*. Together this means "to buy power converter(s)."

Before 买变压器 *mǎi biànyāqì* we have the verb 可以 *kěyǐ*. 可以 *Kěyǐ* means "to be able to." Specifically, 可以 *kěyǐ* means "to have permission to" or "to be allowed to." It is very similar to the English "may" (as in "May I have some cookies?"), but Chinese people often use it in circumstances where English speakers would use the word "can," indicating the ability to do something. You can combine 可以 *kěyǐ* with any other verb there is, limited only by common sense. Just place 可以 *kěyǐ* in front of the verb it modifies. All altogether, our phrase 可以买变压器 *kěyǐ mǎi biànyāqì* means "to be able to buy power converter(s)."

The last component of this phrase is 在哪儿 *zài nǎr*. We use these words together to ask "where." Literally, 在 *zài* means "at." 哪儿 *Nǎr* is a combination of two characters: 哪 *nǎ* and 儿 *er*. (*Er* has no tone.) 哪 *Nǎ* by itself means "which." When you add 儿 *er* it becomes "where." Together, *zài nǎr* means "at where." It is usually translated into English as just plain "where." In Chinese, we put the location of an action in front of the verb. Thus, we add 在哪儿 *zài nǎr* onto the beginning of the phrase we already had to get our full phrase: 在哪儿可以买变压器 *Zài nǎr kěyǐ mǎi biànyāqì?* Literally, this means "At where can buy power converter(s)?" but we translate it as simply "Where can I buy power converters?" Please note, some speakers of Mandarin Chinese will use the word 哪里 *nǎlǐ* in place of 哪儿 *nǎr*; they are interchangeable.

Two things to note:

1. There is no subject in this phrase. In Chinese it is not necessary to say the subject of a sentence when the subject is clear from the situation or when the subject doesn't affect the meaning of the sentence. When you ask the question 在哪儿可以买变压器? *Zài nǎr kěyǐ mǎi biànyāqì?* the subject is irrelevant to the meaning of the question. In English, you could say, "Where can I buy power converters?" or "Where can one buy power converters?" Changing the subject doesn't change the meaning at all. In Chinese you just eliminate the subject.

2. In this sentence, you have four third tones in a row. Third tones are tricky to string together and thus we use a rule stipulating that with any two third tones in a row we change the first third tone to a second tone. In this case, having four third tones in a row, we change the first and third tones into second tones. We do this just to make the phrase easier to say.

Thus, we pronounce the final phrase as *Zài nǎr kěyǐ mǎi biànyāqì?* (Although we pronounce the phrase this way, we still write it with the third tones unchanged.)

If you are looking for something else, you can freely change the object in the phrase 在哪儿可以买变压器? *Zài nǎr kěyǐ mǎi biànyāqì?* Just replace the noun 变压器 *biànyāqì* with the word for anything else you'd like to buy. In the lesson, we used the noun 电话卡 *diànhuà kǎ*. This means "telephone card." 电话 *Diànhuà* can be broken up into two separate characters: 电 *diàn* means "electricity" and 话 *huà* means "speech." Together, these characters mean "telephone." 卡 *kǎ* is one of a collection of Chinese words that are taken from English and thus sound somewhat like English. 卡 *kǎ* means "card." Together we get "phone card." Just insert 电话卡 *diànhuà kǎ* in place of *biànyāqì*. The whole phrase is now 在哪儿可以买电话卡? *Zài nǎr kěyǐ mǎi diànhuà kǎ?* ("Where can I buy phone cards?") There is no need to change anything else about the phrase.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

There are many different types of phone cards in China, but the word 变压器 *diànhuà kǎ* only refers to two types. There are local calling cards, international calling cards, and pay phone calling cards. In addition, all Chinese cell phone plans are paid for by buying cards worth a certain amount of money. You put money on your phone by calling an automated service and entering in the PIN number on the card. This last type of card, the one for charging up a cell phone, is not considered a phone card; it is called 充值卡 *chōngzhí kǎ*. (Literally, "charge value card.")

The word *diànhuà kǎ* 电话卡 refers to the first two types of cards, cards that can be used in any normal phone to get cheap rates on long distance calls. (The local cards are used for long distance calls within China.) These telephone cards are also called *IP 卡 kǎ*. You cannot use them on pay phones. (More about pay phones in the next tip.) In Beijing and most other places, you can usually buy these at magazine stands that you can often see along the street. (These stands also usually sell 充值卡 *chōngzhí kǎ* and drinks.) To buy a card, go to the stand and use the phrase we learned in the last lesson, replacing *biànyāqì* with *diànhuà kǎ*: *Yǒu diànhuà kǎ ma?* ("Do you have telephone cards?") If they don't have them, they will say, *Méi yǒu*. ("We don't have them.") (This is all a review of the last lesson. You can go back and check it out for a better overview of this phrase.) If they do have them, they will say, *Yǒu*.

("We have them.")

Next, they will probably ask, 什么样的电话卡? *Shénmeyàng de diànhuà kǎ?* ("What kind of telephone card?") To this, you respond using the vocabulary from today's lesson: either 国内 *guónèi* ("local") or 国际 *guójì*. ("International.") (You could skip this step by saying 你有国际/国内电话卡吗? *Nǐ yǒu guójì/guónèi diànhuà kǎ ma?* as your first question.) Their next question will be: 你要多少钱的? *Nǐ yào duōshǎo qián de?* ("What price card do you want?") Tell the vendor how much money you want on your card. As in most Western countries, calling cards come with a certain amount of money on them that is used up as you talk. Give the vendor the right amount of money, take the card home, dial the phone number on the back, and then enter the PIN when asked for it. You can talk as long as the card still has money on it.

Quick Tip #2

There are two types of pay phones in China: phones on the street that use IC cards and phones in stores.

You will recognize the phone booths on the streets. They are generally orange pod-like structures raised on steel poles around a phone on the inside. Sometimes there are enclosed glass phone booths. These pay phones take cards called *IC kǎ*, which come with a certain amount of money on them when you buy them. (The term "IC card" means the card has a little magnetic chip in it.) You insert your card into a slot on the phone and dial the number you want. Unfortunately, buying IC cards is a lot more complicated than using them. Possibly because of the prevalence of cell phones and stores with phones in them, fewer and fewer people use the public phones on the streets. In most cities then, you'll only find IC cards at special stores that often also sell cell phones and their accessories. If you want an IC card, you're really going to have to work this lesson's phrase (with *IC kǎ* inserted, of course): 在哪儿可以买IC卡? *Zài nǎr kěyǐ mǎi IC kǎ?*

The second type of public telephone, a phone located in a store, is much more convenient, although the last time Michael was in Shanghai he says he didn't see very many of these. Many convenience stores, cigarette shops, and even magazine stands have red or yellow phones sitting out for public use. Some places even have signs advertising public telephones. Go into the shop, point to the phone, and say 可以用吗? *Kěyǐ yòng ma?* ("Can I use it?") Then just use the phone like a regular phone. At the end of the call the phone will announce from a small speaker how much the call cost. Most of these phones are 3 RMB

per minute. Don't, however, use these phones to call home. International calls will be at least one USD per minute. This is why we recommend buying an international phone card.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #29

Where Is the Convenience Store?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

29

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 便利店在哪儿?
2. 二十四小时店在哪儿?
3. 水在哪儿?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 便利店在哪兒?
2. 二十四小時店在哪兒?
3. 水在哪兒?

PINYIN

1. Biànlìdiàn zài nǎr?
2. Èrshísì xiǎoshí diàn zài nǎr?
3. Shuǐ zài nǎr?

ENGLISH

1. Where is a convenience store?
2. Where is a 24 hour store?

CONT'D OVER

3. Where is the water?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
在	在	zài	at	
哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where	question pronoun
这儿	這兒	zhèr	here	pronoun
那儿	那兒	nàr	there	pronoun
这里	這裡	zhèlǐ	here	pronoun
便利店	便利店	biànlìdiàn	convenience store	noun
小时	小時	xiǎoshí	hour	noun
水	水	shuǐ	water	noun
那里	那裡	nàlǐ	there	* demonstrative pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

他在后面。 Tā zài hòumiàn. He is in the back.	您住在哪儿？ Nín zhù zài nǎr? Where are you staying?
我住在这儿。 Wǒ zhù zài zhèr. I live here.	他在那儿。 Tā zài nàr. He is over there.

我在这里。 Wǒ zài zhèlǐ. I'm over here.	去便利店买就好。 Qù biànlì diàn mǎi jiù hǎo. Just go to a convenience store to buy it.
昨晚我睡了十个小时。 zuówǎn wǒ shuì le shí ge xiǎoshí . I slept for ten hours last night.	他在跑道上跑了一个小时了。 Tā zài pǎodào shàng pǎo le yí gè xiǎoshí le. He's been running on the track for an hour.
有水吗？凉的。 Yǒu shuǐ ma? Liáng de. Do you have water? Cold water?	去那里找他。 Qù nàlǐ zhǎo tā. Go there and look for him.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Aaahhh...the ever-present penetration of Western culture. China, like everywhere else in the world, is rife with convenience stores, but the presence of these stores follows the very sharp divide between rural and urban life. In big cities, the nearest convenience store is often no more than a block away, and many of these stores are open all night. Life in the countryside is much different. In truly rural communities, there is no such thing as a convenience store. There are shops in town, and some of them carry the same wares as a convenience store, but no one would call riding over dirt roads to town convenient; and because all the customers have to travel from their farms, the stores usually close early. There might be a hospital or pharmacy in town that stays open late; perhaps some customers are drinking at the restaurant, but good luck finding toothpaste. That's just something you'll have to wait until morning for. However, we doubt you'll find yourself milling around rural China all alone.

These rural communities are still very common in China. In the past couple of decades there has been a great migration to the cities, but census takers still estimate that more than half the population lives in the countryside. Many other people are migrant workers. They are from the countryside, their children live there, their parents live there, but they go off to the cities to work, usually in factories or doing construction. Some of these migrant workers are only gone

for part of the year. During harvest and planting seasons, they go home and help on the land. Others get to come home for a couple of weeks during Chinese New Year, but the rest of the year they work six or seven days a week. Some leave for years at a time.

The experiences of migrant workers vary greatly. Many, probably most, are happy with their working conditions. It is very hard work, but they are glad to have the chance to support their families, especially considering farming seems to get less and less economically viable. But some migrants come back with blank eyes and creased, still faces. Many migrant workers are cheated out of their money and forced to work under impossible conditions: in the snow, in extreme heat, under the ground. Generally, it is those in construction or mining who fare the worst. They are often cheated because they have no contract, and often the work is technically illegal.

Perhaps you should think about seeing rural China. Parts of it are beautiful. Parts of it are cheerful and laid back. Parts of it are just dreary. It's worth seeing, if only to be able to rebut people when they say, "You don't know what rural China is like." (Which some Chinese people might say to you.)

And when you're in the city looking for toothpaste, be thankful for the convenience stores.

Today's phrase works on the structure 在哪儿 *zài nǎr*? We went over this in the last lesson when we said, 在那儿可以买... *zài nǎr kěyǐ mǎi...*? *Zài* means "at" and *nǎr* means "where." In Chinese, 在 *zài* designates what follows it as a location. "在 *Zài* must be always be placed in front of any location.

If you place a noun before 在哪儿 *zài nǎr*? you get a question asking where that noun is located. 便利店 *Biànlìdiàn* means "convenience store." 便利 *Biànlì* means "convenient," and 店 *diàn* means "store." *Biànlìdiàn zài nǎr?* means, "Where is a convenience store?" It is unnecessary to specify a convenience store. It will be assumed that you only want one convenience store. If you were looking for two convenience stores, then you would have to specify that (because that's just weird).

We can switch out the noun if we're looking for something else or if we want to be more specific. 二十四小时店在哪儿? *Èrshísì ge xiǎoshí diàn* is "twenty-four-hour store." 二十四 *Èrshísì* is "twenty-four." 小时 *Xiǎoshí* can be broken up into two words: 小 *xiǎo* meaning "small," and 时 *shí* meaning "time." Together, 小时 *xiǎoshí* means "hour." 店 *Diàn* is "store." Altogether, we get "twenty-four-hour store." If you place this at the beginning of the sentence, you have 二十四小时店在哪儿? *Èrshísì ge xiǎoshí diàn zài nǎr?*, which means "Where is a twenty-four-hour store?" You want this phrase when you are wandering around at two in the

morning, jet-lagged, and looking for toothpaste (or perhaps a nightcap).

You can plug any other noun into this phrase and it still works in exactly the same way. In the lesson, we used 北京站在哪儿? *Běijīng zhàn zài nǎr?* (You remember by now: 北京站 *Běijīng zhàn* means "Beijing station.") This sentence means, "Where is Beijing station?"

Once you are in the store you can use today's phrase to ask where certain products are. Michael said, 水在哪儿? *Shuǐ zài nǎr?* ("Where is the water?") And how about the example we've been mentioning all throughout this write-up: 牙膏在哪儿? *Yágāo zài nǎr?* ("Where is the toothpaste?" 牙 *Yá* means, "tooth" and 膏 *gāo* means "paste" or "cream.") At this point, you don't need us teaching you so much as you need a good dictionary to take with you on trips to the store.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Some people consider 哪儿 *nǎr* to be Beijing dialect. It's hard sometimes to differentiate between Beijing dialect and standard Mandarin. Mandarin was originally based on the Beijing dialect, and the Chinese still say that the Beijing dialect is the most "standard." (It is a high compliment to be told your Chinese is very "standard." "Standard" is meant more in the sense of "exemplary" than "common.") But there is still a Beijing dialect with a lot of slang that is distinct from standard Mandarin. Thus it is sometimes important to clarify what is and isn't standard Mandarin.

哪儿 *Nǎr* is right on the edge of this line. Adding an "er" to the end of words is a common feature in the Beijing dialect. *Nǎr* is said more often in Beijing than in other places. But it is used other places as well. *Nǎr* is also taught in textbooks in the West, and everyone in China understands it even if they don't say it themselves.

So if you don't say *nǎr*, what do you say? Many people use *nǎlǐ* instead. It still means "where," it is just a different way of saying it. *Lǐ* means "in." This change is also done for 这儿 *zhèr* ("here") and 那儿 *nàr* ("there"). They become 这里 *zhèlǐ* and 那里 *nàlǐ*. This is probably one of the largest differences in word use between the northeast and the rest of the country.

Quick Tip #2

In this lesson, we said 店 *diàn* means "store." Generally, if you're just saying "store" (and not "convenience store" or some other kind of store), you put 商 *shāng* in front of 店 *diàn* and say 商店 *shāngdiàn*. 商 *Shāng* means "trade" or "business." 商店 *Shāngdiàn* just means "store."

If you want to talk about a certain kind of store, however, there is an easy way to do that. Just put a product in front of 店 *diàn* and that means a store that sells that product. "Bookstore" is 书店 *shūdiàn*. (*Shū* means "book.") "Pharmacy" is 药店 *yàodiàn*. (药 *Yào* means "medicine.") Sometimes doing this doesn't give you the name that everyone uses for that kind of store, but it gets your point across just fine. It's like saying "hat shop" when you should say "haberdashery." (You say "haberdashery," don't you?)

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #30

Directions

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

30

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 往前走。
2. 往左转。
3. 往右转。
4. 在十字路口往右转。
5. 在十字路口往左转。
6. 这儿就行。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 往前走。
2. 往左轉。
3. 往右轉。
4. 在十字路口往右轉。
5. 在十字路口往左轉。
6. 這兒就行。

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. Wǎng qián zǒu.
2. Wǎng zuó zhuǎn.
3. Wǎng yòu zhuǎn.
4. Zài shízì lùkǒu wǎng yòu zhuǎn.
5. Zài shízì lùkǒu wǎng zuó zhuǎn.
6. Zhèr jiù xíng.

ENGLISH

1. Go straight.
2. Turn left.
3. Turn right.
4. Turn right at the intersection.
5. Turn left at the intersection.
6. Here is fine.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
走	走	zǒu	walk

就	就	jiù	just, exactly, indicates close connection between two clauses
转	轉	zhuǎn	to turn
右	右	yòu	right
左	左	zuǒ	left
前	前	qián	front, forward
往	往	wǎng	towards
在	在	zài	at
十字路口	十字路口	shízì lùkǒu	intersection
行	行	xíng	okay, fine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我们走吧。 Wǒmen zǒu ba. Let's go.	我吃一半就好。 Wǒ chī yī bàn jiù hǎo. I'll eat half; it's enough.
这里要右转。 Zhèlǐ yào yòu zhuǎn. Turn right here.	靠右边停。 Kào yòubiān tíng. Stop on the right.
我家在左边。 Wǒ jiā zài zuǒbian. My house is on the left.	往前走。 Wǎng qián zǒu. Go straight.
往这里走。 Wǎng zhèlǐ zǒu. Walk towards here.	他在后面。 Tā zài hòumiàn. He is in the back.

在十字路口要右转。
Zài shízìlùkǒu yào yòu zhuǎn.

Turn right at the intersection.

这样不行。
Zhèyàng bù xíng.

This way is no good.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

We taught you how to ask "Where is...?" but how do you understand the answer to this question? How often have you been in a country where you have only the most tenuous grip on the language, enough to ask a few basic questions, but not enough to understand the answers? One well-worn and well-respected approach to getting directions is just to follow hand signals. When navigating around a city, it's often enough to keep asking someone again every hundred feet, and following another pointing finger. But wouldn't it be nice to know exactly where it is that you have to turn left? To not have to ask two or three times on the way to a particularly distant bathroom? Today we're working on that skill. Hopefully, we can help make you a little more directed in your wanderings, and a little more certain that you're going to find what you're looking for.

First, let's go over "Go straight." In Chinese, this is 往前走。 *Wǎng qián zǒu*. 往 *wǎng* means "towards." 前 *qián* means "front" or "forward." 走 *zǒu* means "to walk" or "to go." Literally, we have "Towards forward go." In Chinese, you have to put the direction before the verb, and that direction must be designated as such by placing a word that means "towards" before it. We will see this pattern repeat itself a couple of times in today's lesson. The order is "towards direction verb." Thus, our sentence is 往前走。 *Wǎng qián zǒu*, which means "Go straight."

For "Turn left," we take the same pattern as before and just change the direction and verb. 往左转。 *Wǎng zuó zhuǎn* means "Turn left." We just went over 往 *wǎng*. 左 *zuó* means "left" and 转 *zhuǎn* means "to turn." The phrase is literally "Towards left turn." Note that the pattern never changes.

"Turn right" is the same as "Turn left." You just replace "left" with "right." "Right" in Chinese is 右 *yòu*. The phrase is 往右转。 *Wǎng yòu zhuǎn*.

If you're navigating a city, intersections become the main landmarks by which one moves around. "Intersection" in Chinese is 十字路口 *shízì lùkǒu*. This literally means "ten character road opening" or "road opening that looks like the character for ten." 十 *shí* means "ten." 字 *zì* means "character." 路 *lù* means "road." 口 *kǒu* means "mouth" or "opening." We write the character 十 *shí* as a cross; thus, it has the same shape as a four-way intersection. This is why we call a four-way intersection "road opening that looks like the character for ten."

The point of knowing how to say "intersection" is so that you can know where to turn (or, in the case of riding a cab, where to tell somebody else to turn). The way you say this is 在十字路口往左 / 右转。 *Zài shízì lùkǒu wǎng zuǒ/yòu zhuǎn*. This means, "Turn left/right at the intersection." We've gone over 在 *zài* before. 在 *zài* means "at." It says where something is or where an action is taking place. Our sentence is literally, "At intersection towards left/right turn." Locations in Chinese always precede the verb (with a few exceptions), and they also precede the direction.

In the word for "intersection," we noted that 路口 *lùkǒu* means "road opening." We can use this word by itself to refer to the place where a road comes off another road. If you are going down a main street and there is a smaller street that opens up on the left, where that small street hits the big road is called the 路口 *lùkǒu*. If you are coming out of a small residential area onto a big street, someone giving you directions could say, 在路口往右转。 *Zài lùkǒu wǎng yòu zhuǎn*. ("Turn right at the road opening.") Or if you are riding a taxi and you see the little street that your friend's house is on, you can say to the driver, 那个路口！那个路口！ *Nà ge lùkǒu! Nà ge lùkǒu!* ("That road opening! That road opening!") By the way, if anyone can think of a good way to translate 路口 *lùkǒu*, please post it on our site. We're very interested.

One last phrase for use in the taxi is 这儿就行。 *Zhèr jiù xíng*. This means "Here is fine." It's a phrase to tell the cabbie that they can let you off here. 这儿 *zhèr* means "here" and 行 *xíng* means "fine" or "okay." 就 *jiù* is very hard to translate into English. Sometimes it's translated as "exactly" or "just." It often connects two clauses in a sentence to show a close relation between the first and the second. Here we can think of it as "exactly" or as relating two things: it connects the 这儿 *zhèr* and the 行 *xíng*, showing that "here" is "just fine." You can also choose not to think about 就 *jiù* at all. 就 *jiù* is one of those words whose meaning and usage mostly just require acclimation and familiarity with the language. It's not something that we can really explain; it's more something that you have to learn to feel.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

If you are getting directions and somebody tells you to turn at an intersection, often it's not the next intersection, but rather the second or third intersection down the road. Wouldn't it be nice, then, to know how to say ordinal numbers in Chinese? (Ordinal numbers are numbers like "first" and "second," as opposed to "one" and "two.") In Chinese, it is very simple to make a normal number into an ordinal number. Just place 第 *dì* in front of the number. That's it. "First" is 第一 *dì yī*. "Second" is 第二 *dì èr*. "Twenty-second" is 第二十二 *dì èrshíèr*. And so on.

When you use ordinal numbers in front of nouns, you need to use a measure word (usually 个 *ge*). Thus, "the second intersection" would be 第二个十字路口 *dì èr ge shízìlùkǒu*. When using these in a sentence, the ordinal number is treated as if it were part of the noun. The sentence "Turn left at the third intersection" would thus be 在第三个十字路口往左传 . *Zài dì sān ge shízì lùkǒu wǎng zuó zhuǎn*. Now you can give and receive much more detailed directions.

Quick Tip #2

Remember the name of the bridge or a landmark near where you are staying and learn how to get home from there. Much of the navigation in Chinese cities is done by reference to landmarks. Street names in many cities will change every few blocks, so the names will refer to a nearby landmark. Taking an example from Beijing, there is a big street which is called *Dōngzhímén nài dàjiē* ("Inner East Gate Avenue"), where it intersects with a place called *Dōngzhímén* ("East Gate"); but after a couple of blocks, once it is a little far away from "East Gate," it becomes *Jiāodàokǒu dàjiē* ("Thru-street Opening Avenue." Sorry, that's an awful translation); and then in another block or two it becomes *Gǔlóu dàjiē* ("Drum Tower Avenue"). During this change, the street has been going perfectly straight. The only thing that has changed is its proximity to certain well-known landmarks. In China, it is not the streets that are important (their names change at the drop of a hat), but rather the landmarks around them. Most cab drivers would know the big street we just mentioned (it is a huge street and right in the middle of the city), but that will not be true for smaller streets or those in the outer parts of the city. Thus, knowing landmarks is vital. In the old parts of a city, the landmarks are historic sites: gates, towers, squares, even places like the aforementioned "Thru-street Opening" (a very old intersection and marketplace). In newer parts of the city, bridges serve as landmarks. Often what is called a bridge in Chinese is really just an overpass, a place where large roads

intersect. In the city, large roads have a bridge every kilometer or so. Thus, if you memorize the name of the bridge near where you are staying, you can always get within one kilometer of home. Then you can use the directions we learned today to guide the cabbie.

Note: Streets in Shanghai often keep the same name over a longer distance than in other cities because much of the city was built recently and by foreigners. Still, many parts of Shanghai are filled with tiny streets, and many cab drivers still navigate by landmark.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #31

Can You Take My Picture?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

31

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 请帮我照照片。
2. 请帮我照照片吧。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 請幫我照照片。
2. 請幫我照照片吧。

PINYIN

1. Qǐng bāng wǒ zhào zhàopiàn.
2. Qǐng bāng wǒ zhào zhàopiàn ba.

ENGLISH

1. Please take my picture.
2. Please take my picture. (More friendly.)

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
请	請	qǐng	please

帮	幫	bāng	to help
我	我	wǒ	I, me
吧	吧	ba	(particle; denotes suggestion)
走	走	zǒu	walk
照	照	zhào	to illuminate, to take picture
照片	照片	zhàopiàn	photograph

SAMPLE SENTENCES

请帮我拿一下这个东西。 Qǐng bāng wǒ ná yíxià zhè ge dōngxi. Please hold this for me for a moment.	你可以帮我做吗? Nǐ kěyǐ bāng wǒ zuò ma? Can you help me do it?
我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	好, 我点吧。 Hǎo, wǒ diǎn ba. Okay, I'll order.
我们走吧。 Wǒmen zǒu ba. Let's go.	請幫我照照片。 Qǐng bāng wǒ zhào zhàopiàn. Please take my picture.
照片不好看。 Zhàopiàn bù hǎo kàn. This photograph doesn't look good.	咱们一起拍张照片吧。 Zánmen yìqǐ pāi zhāng zhàopiānr ba. Let's take a photo together.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

We know there's an awful tourist stereotype in everyone's head: a dorky, somewhat overweight person with a safari hat and large khaki shorts constantly saying to their significant other in a loud, nasal voice, "Hey! Take my picture with..." Running into this person when you're on vacation is enough to make you sheepishly put your camera back in your bag. "I'll remember what it was like to be here," you think. "I just need to experience the moment." You'll remember that moment a lot better if you take a couple of pictures.

Nobody comes back from a trip and thinks, "I wish I had taken fewer pictures." Yes, you don't want to let your camera get in the way of experiencing the things around you, but pictures help you remember those experiences. So take your camera out of your bag, snap a few photos, and smile later when you see them.

The Chinese are in love with their cameras. They love to take up silly poses, flash the "peace" sign, and smile. Young Chinese people often go to photo booths and take a series of photos, which they cut out and put in books or stick on their cell phones. People sitting bored at their friend's house will say, "hey, let's take some pictures," and in a few minutes they'll all be giggling as they review the photos. Maybe there's something we can learn here. Maybe we don't need to be so serious about our cameras, so worried about looking cool. Maybe we'd have more fun, and more memories, if we sometimes let our cameras drag us where they want to go.

There are times to be serious, to quietly consider Buddhist murals, to stare into the pale, blue sky; but there is nothing wrong with following this up with a wacky picture of you and three Chinese tourists all in their matching tour group hats, all smiling big and throwing up two fingers. (You'll know what we're talking about with the hats once you get to China.) Maybe you can all go for beer afterwards, though the tourists will probably have to get back on their bus.

The Chinese think nothing of asking bystanders to snap pictures of them and their friends, and Chinese people often enjoy being asked-especially young people. You will be surprised how excited a young Buddhist monk will be when trying to take your photo. He will smile and show you the picture and ask if you want another one. His friends will push him to give them the camera so that he can go join you in the photo. (Young Buddhist monks are not very different from normal young people.)

Today's phrase is 请帮我照照片。 *Qǐng bāng wǒ zhào zhàopiàn*. It literally means, "Please

help me shoot picture." 请 (qǐng) means "please." 帮 (bāng) means "to help." 我 wǒ means "I" or "me." Thus, 请帮我 (qǐng bāng wǒ) means, "Please help me." You can use this phrase anytime you need a hand. Maybe you need someone to help you move a table or to carry a tray. This phrase is not appropriate if you are in mortal danger, however; we'll go over a phrase that means "Save me!" in a later lesson. (Though if you're in mortal danger, perhaps appropriateness is not the most pressing concern.)

照照片 (zhào zhàopiàn) means "to take pictures." 照片 (zhàopiàn) means "photograph." 照 (zhào) is a verb which means "to illuminate" or "to take a picture." If we put these two phrases together (请帮我 qǐng bāng wǒ and 照照片 zhào zhàopiàn), we get our complete phrase 请帮我照照片。 (qǐng bāng wǒ zhào zhàopiàn) "Please take my picture." Isn't it wonderful how, in Chinese, we can just smush different phrases and words together and they work as a complete sentence?

We can make this phrase friendlier by adding 吧 (ba) to the end. 吧 (ba) is a particle that we place at the end of sentences to lighten their tone. It can change an order into a request or a suggestion. 走 (zǒu) means "to walk" or "to go." Someone could order another person to get moving by yelling 走 (Zǒu!). Adding *ba* makes it a suggestion; it changes "Go!" into "Let's go" (走吧 zǒu ba). Generally, people make the suggestion to leave by saying 走吧 (zǒu ba). If we add *ba* to the end of today's phrase (which was already polite and friendly) it makes the phrase even nicer. 请帮我照照片吧。 (qǐng bāng wǒ zhào zhàopiàn ba).

When was the last time you said "Cheese!" when taking a photo? You were probably in grade school. That's kind of the same place 茄子 (Qíézi!) holds in the Chinese lexicon. Yes, it's something one says when one is little; the act of saying it forces your mouth into a smile, but no one says it when they're grown up. That's also why it's fun for foreigners to say it. *Qíézi!* is somewhat absurd (it means "eggplant"). It will make you laugh, and it will make the Chinese people around you laugh, too. (Of course, when you think about it, yelling "Cheese!" at a camera is equally absurd.) Everyone likes to act like a kid, but no one wants to initiate the horseplay. You'll get extra points if you can help everyone lighten up.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Many Chinese tourists come from rural areas, and they see lots of unfamiliar things in the city. You are one of those things. Foreigners do not often venture into China's countryside. You

may be the first foreigner that many of your fellow tourists have seen, especially if you go to more isolated tourist destinations. This may cause them to act in ways that at first seem novel, but can get kind of annoying. People will whisper and glance at you. Some will tap their kids on the head and point, as if you were the tiger at the zoo and you had just come out of your cave. People will turn to each other and say, "Foreigner!" The most proper way to say "foreigner" in Chinese is 外国人(wàiguórén). This literally means "foreign country person." 外(wài) means "outside" and 国(guó) means "country." 外国(wàiguó) thus means "foreign country." 人(rén) means "person." Together, 外国人(wàiguórén) means "foreigner." This is the formal way of saying "foreigner," but most people say 老外(lǎowài) instead. 老(lǎo) means "old," and it is generally a term of respect. 外(wài) is the word we just mentioned which means "outside." Because of the use of 老(lǎo) some people will make the argument that 老外(lǎowài) is more respectful than the straightforward 外国人(wàiguórén). But the extremely laid-back, common, and informal way in which they use 老外(lǎowài) suggests that it does not carry any extra meaning or respect. You are equally likely to hear a Chinese person use it when they are disparaging foreign incursions into China as you are when they are talking about their good friend. The Chinese don't seem to think anything of calling foreigners 老外(lǎowài) and even after you have become friends, they may continue to refer to you as the 老外(lǎowài). (Possibly because it's hard to remember your name.)

Some Westerners take offense at constantly being called 老外(lǎowài) even by people they know. They don't like being pointed at or whispered about. (Now that you know the word 老外(lǎowài), you may often hear it echoing through the conversations around you, even in big cities.) These are not things we would do in our home countries—it would be rude and borderline xenophobic to make issue of someone's nationality—but we have to remember that we are not in our home countries. The reason we wanted to go to China is because it's different. If you don't want to experience anything different, perhaps you should take some time to seriously consider why you are coming to China. This is a stereotype and a generalization, but China has been isolated for a long time. China has a long history of being self-sufficient and has thus developed the feeling that it doesn't need to communicate with the outside world. (Compare this with the reality of England.) For about six hundred years, China did not send feelers into the outside world. They did not accept foreigners. Yes, we can self-righteously say, "And see what good it did them?" We can talk about Chinese people as backward and ignorant, but none of this gets us anywhere. In fact, in judging Chinese people, we are doing exactly the thing we ridicule the Chinese for: we are arbitrarily condemning other cultures. Except we do it in an even more noxious manner: we go to those other cultures, stand on their soil, and tell them how wrong they are. At least the Chinese had the humility to keep to themselves.

Keeping an open mind is necessary if you're going to get the most out of a new country, but that may not stop the gut-twisting feeling you get from being pointed at. One method of dealing with this is to play along. To smile and wave when you see people pointing at you. To wink at someone when you hear them say *lǎowài*. This may embarrass them or it may encourage them. Little children will wave back, often pushed on by their parents. This tactic can be fun at times, but it can also get tiring. Clowns get paid to do their job; you're supposed to be on vacation. Other foreigners will choose to ignore those around them. This can be equally exhausting. In the end, there is no perfect way to deal with this, and no one will blame you if, at the end of the day, you want to spring for a nice restaurant just to get away from the crowds.

Quick Tip #2

Random Chinese people saying "Hello!" to you on the street can be either cute or obnoxious, depending on who's doing it and how you view it. Just as we said before, many Chinese people, especially those from rural areas, have very few opportunities to interact with foreigners. Some of them, spurred on by a mixture of reasons, will call out to you in the middle of the street. Little children will squeak out a bashful "Hello" when egged on by their parents or scream out a bright-faced "Hello!" on their own initiative. That is cute. More annoying are the men who, from a passing van or the other side of the street, yell "Hello!" and then fall back into the giggles of their group. Again, your feeling about this depends on how you view it, and also how many times it's happened today. The Chinese will tell you that these people are just being friendly. They don't know any other English words, so this is the only way they can communicate. This is what the men will say if you confront them, and, actually, if they learn you can speak some Chinese, they will be very friendly. But these reasons still sound hollow to most foreigners. The giggles that come after the "Hello!" and the fact that it's not followed by any attempt at further communication suggest that you're being made fun of. And, unfortunately, that's just something you'll have to deal with. China is a large, wonderful place. You are going to have lots of new experiences. But you don't always get to choose which new experiences you want to have and which you don't. That's part of what makes new things exciting. If you just hand selected your every experience, it wouldn't be very new.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #32

How Do You Say This In Chinese?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

32

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 这个用中文怎么说?
2. Boat 用汉语怎么说?
3. 请再说一遍。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 這個用中文怎麼說?
2. Boat 用漢語怎麼說?
3. 請再說一遍。

PINYIN

1. Zhège yòng Zhōngwén zěnmě shuō?
2. Boat yòng Hànyǔ zěnmě shuō?
3. Qǐng zài shuō yībiàn.

ENGLISH

1. How do you say this in Chinese?
2. How do you say "boat" in Chinese?

CONT'D OVER

3. Please say it again.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
这	這	zhè	this
中文	中文	Zhōngwén	Chinese (language)
再	再	zài	again
遍	遍	biàn	measure word for actions that are the same when repeated, times
汉语	漢語	Hànyǔ	Chinese (language)
说	說	shuō	to say, to speak
用	用	yòng	to use
怎么	怎麼	zěnmē	how
请	請	qǐng	please

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这是你的票。 Zhè shì nǐ de piào. This is your ticket.	我不学中文。 Wǒ bù xué Zhōngwén. I don't study Chinese.
再做一遍吧。 Zài zuò yī biàn ba. Do it again.	我做了好几遍了。 Wǒ zuò le hǎojǐ biàn le. I did it quite a few times.

你会说汉语吗？ Nǐ huì shuō Hànyǔ ma? Can you speak Chinese?	请再说一遍。 Qǐng zài shuō yī biàn. Please, say it again.
你要用这个方法。 Nǐ yào yòng zhè ge fāngfǎ. You need to use this method.	他怎么这么凶？ Tā zěnmě zhème xiōng? How come he's so angry?
请帮我拿一下这个东西。 Qǐng bāng wǒ ná yīxià zhè ge dōngxi. Please hold this for me for a moment.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Do you want to learn to read Chinese newspapers? Do you want to read classic Chinese poetry? Well, you're in the wrong place. We here at ChineseClass101.com aim to teach communication.

Reading Chinese is an admirable skill. Chinese poetry is multi-layered, beautiful, and says things about life that still resonate. But reading Chinese is very different from speaking and understanding Chinese. First of all, the way a character is written often has nothing to do with its sound. It's not like English, where you can sound out the words, and if you know how to speak, you can probably write. Many people can speak Chinese just fine, but can't read a lick. (Just ask some second-generation Chinese Americans how much Chinese they can read.) This is not to say that illiteracy doesn't hamper you in China. It would be nice to be able to read signs and menus at least, but it doesn't necessarily have anything to do with communication.

Secondly, written Chinese is composed in a style very different from spoken Chinese. The Chinese have something they refer as "book language," which uses a whole bunch of characters that we don't use in everyday speech. English, of course, also has this difference

between written and spoken language, but the difference in Chinese is much more exaggerated. Not only are there adjectives and verbs which would normally be considered too stuffy, but even basic grammar words such as "to" and "from" are replaced with a new vocabulary. Reading Chinese poetry is a whole other thing entirely. Classic poetry uses classic Chinese, which bears a relation to modern Chinese, but is certainly not instantly legible. (Many of China's most famous poems come from the seventh and eighth century. You try reading seventh- and eighth-century proto-English. Was there even English in the seventh century?) Poetry is also filled with allusions that come from the complex meanings of the characters and implications of things left out. Neither of these are generally found in speech.

Learning to read in Chinese requires dedicated study, intensive tutoring, and lots of dictionary time. ChineseClass101.com is meant to be the exact opposite. We give you the basics you need to get your ideas across. This lesson's phrase is a key to increasing your ability to communicate and being able to have longer, more detailed, and hopefully more meaningful conversations.

这个用中文怎么说? (*zhège yòng Zhōngwén zěnmē shuō?*) will allow you to pick up new vocabulary wherever you go. The phrase literally means "This use Chinese how say?" Using this phrase, you can turn your every experience in China into a vocabulary lesson, which is really a lot more fun than it sounds.

怎么 (*zěnmē*) means "how" and 说 (*shuō*) means "to say." Together, 怎么说 (*zěnmē shuō?*) means "How do you say?"

用 (*yòng*) means "to use" and 中文 (*Zhōngwén*) is "Chinese." 中文 (*Zhōngwén*) is a combination of a character which means "middle" (as in 中国 (*Zhōngguó*), which means "China" or "the middle kingdom") and a character which means "culture" or "language." Together 用中文 (*yòng Zhōngwén*) means "use Chinese" or "using Chinese."

We've gone over 这个 (*zhège*) many times before; it is "this" plus the universal measure word *ge*.

Combining all the parts of our phrase, we have "This using Chinese how do you say?" (这个用中文怎么说? (*zhège yòng Zhōngwén zěnmē shuō?*)) We can rearrange this to become "How do you say this using Chinese?" Actually, word order in Chinese is not vitally important. We have taught you the way that is correct and most natural, but if you put the Chinese words in English word order, people would still understand. It would just be rather odd: 怎么说这个用中文? (*zěnmē shuō zhège yòng Zhōngwén?*)

There are many ways to say "Chinese" in Chinese. Among Chinese people, the most

commonly used is probably 汉语 (*Hànyǔ*), although any of a number of different words may be used. Beginner Chinese students are usually taught 中文 (*Zhōngwén*) because it is easier to pronounce. If you want to use 汉语 (*Hànyǔ*) instead, it doesn't change anything about the structure of the sentence. 汉语 (*Hànyǔ*) uses different characters than 中文 (*Zhōngwén*) but the end meaning is the same. 汉 (*Hàn*) is the name of the majority race in China. *Han* people make up over ninety percent of the Chinese population. 语 (*yǔ*) means "language." (It doesn't have the added meaning of "culture" that 文 (*wén*) has.) 汉语 (*Hànyǔ*) and 中文 (*Zhōngwén*) are always interchangeable; you can just plug in 汉语 (*Hànyǔ*) anywhere in place of 中文 (*Zhōngwén*). If we use 汉语 (*Hànyǔ*) in today's phrase, it becomes 这个用汉语怎么说? (*zhège yòng Hànyǔ zěnmě shuō?*). Again, both phrases mean "How do you say this in Chinese?" though you should feel free to use 中文 (*Zhōngwén*) if you find it easier to pronounce.

If you want a particular English word translated, you can ask a Chinese friend how to say that word by making a small adjustment in the phrase we just learned. Just replace 这个 (*zhège*) with a word in English. Let's use the example "boat" that Michael used in the lesson: Boat 用中文怎么说? (*boat yòng Zhōngwén zěnmě shuō?*) Before, our phrase meant "How do you say this in Chinese?" Now the phrase means "How do you say 'boat' in Chinese?" (By the way, "boat" is *chuán*.)

This tactic actually works surprisingly well. Although most Chinese people speak very poor English, many people, especially young people, have studied it for a long time in school. These people have built up a reasonably large vocabulary, and they probably can even read pretty well; they've just never had the chance to put their English into use. For this reason, they may understand many individual words, but they just can't make them into sentences. (English grammar is much harder than Chinese grammar.) So if you ask them about a single word, especially if you write it down, there is a good chance they'll know how to translate it.

But, when they do translate it, you might not understand them on the first try. That's where we bring back an old friend, all the way from the ninth lesson, 请再说一遍。 (*qǐng zài shuō yībiàn*). If you don't remember, this means "Please say it again." (Now that we have gone over measure words, perhaps 一遍 (*yībiàn*) makes more sense. 遍 (*biàn*) is a measure word for actions that are the same when repeated.)

Good luck out there, guys and girls. And remember, the dictionary is your friend, but it's important to branch out.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Use new vocabulary as soon as you get it. As Michael said in the lesson, you're likely to forget sixty to seventy percent of the words you learn the first time you learn them. You can lower this percentage by bringing those words into your conversation soon after you've heard them. Repeating the word in your head is not enough, and merely repeating the word out loud doesn't give you any context by which to remember the word. Work out a way to slip your new vocabulary into your speech. The more contrived and outlandish your usage, the more likely the circumstances, and thus the word, are to get embedded in your memory.

Quick Tip #2

Just as you are trying to learn Chinese, there are many, many Chinese people who want to practice their English. People are always placing ads, either online or around college campuses, looking for foreigners so they can have a chance to speak English. Depending on where you go, it is very likely that you will be approached at some point by a Chinese person who wants to make "friends." These encounters are harmless. It is not a scam, and no one is trying to get anything out of you (except free English lessons). People who have been in China for a while have been approached like this many times and thus sometimes view these people as an annoyance. But if you are only going to be in China for a little while, this kind of encounter can be a great opportunity. These lesson seekers can serve as free tour guides. They can be your friend on the inside who can tell you many things about China—things they view as normal—that you wouldn't learn about otherwise. Plus, they can read menus and might know what's good. These people are not only interested in English, but will want to know all about your native country, how it differs from China and other countries, and what you think of China. In return, you shouldn't think twice about peppering them with every conceivable question you have about China. Many of these people are actually very nice and, although you may not become friends forever, you might find yourself with a new Chinese buddy.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #33

Write It Down, Please

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

33

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 请写下来。
2. 请写拼音。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 請寫下來。
2. 請寫拼音。

PINYIN

1. Qǐng xiěxiàlai.
2. Qǐng xiě pīnyīn.

ENGLISH

1. Please write it down.
2. Please write the pinyin.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
请	請	qǐng	please

写	寫	xiě	to write
下	下	xià	down, next, bottom
来	来	lái	to come
拼音	拼音	pīnyīn	pinyin

SAMPLE SENTENCES

请帮我拿一下这个东西。 Qǐng bāng wǒ ná yíxià zhè ge dōngxi. Please hold this for me for a moment.	你写字很漂亮。 Nǐ xiě zì hěn piàoliang. You write so beautifully.
下一站是南京路。 Xià yí zhàn shì Nánjīng lù. Next stop is Nanjing Road.	他今天晚上来。 Tā jīntiān wǎnshang lái. He is coming tonight.
请写拼音。 Qǐng xiě pīnyīn. Please write the pinyin.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Why are you learning Chinese? Why are you taking these lessons? Are you just satisfying some curiosity? Are you going to China? Will this help you "survive," make sure you don't get lost, and generally help you enjoy your time there? Do you want to learn more?

Today's phrases are useful both as a way to get you around China and as a way to take your Chinese to the next level. By learning to say 请写下来。(qǐng xiěxiàláì) "please write it down," you can make our Chinese lessons here just one small part of the learning you do. We

here at SurvivalPhrases.com don't want to monopolize your Chinese knowledge. Part of it is that we're lazy, but most of it is we really do hope that these lessons are a springboard into a greater understanding of both Chinese and China. If you just need these phrases to get around China, that's great and we're glad to help you. You can use 请写下来。(qǐng xiěxiàláí) to help you remember the names of places and tell people where you need to go. If you want to take the next step, even better. This lesson's phrase becomes the gateway to all kinds of vocabulary. We hope this lesson is useful for both kinds of students.

The first part of the phrase is the word 请 (qǐng). Here, 请 (qǐng) means "please." Just put it at the beginning of a sentence and it turns a demand into a polite request. Without 请 (qǐng), the sentence can sound somewhat harsh.

The next part of the sentence is a little harder to understand. 写下来 (xiěxiàláí) is a simple verb (写 xiě) with two modifiers added onto the end. 写 (xiě) means "to write." You could actually say to a Chinese person 请写 (qǐng xiě). and they might understand; it would just sound very choppy. (Kind of like a robot extending its mechanical arm to you and buzzing out "Please write." In the context, you might understand, but it would certainly sound strange.) Adding 下来 (xiàláí) to the end of the verb makes it sound much more natural. 下 (xià) means "down," meaning the person is going to write things "down." 来 (láí) is less intuitive for English speakers. 来 (láí) means "to come." There are many instances where we add the verbs 来 (láí) or 去 (qù), "to go," to the end of another verb. Here we can think of 来 (láí) as indicating the direction which the knowledge or the writing is passing: the person is going to write something "down," and the knowledge (or the writing) is "coming" to you, the speaker; we can also think of the knowledge as coming out of the person and into the open.

We use 去 (qù) "to go" as a modifier in other instances such as 说出去 (shuōchūqù). ("To speak+to exit+to go.") Altogether, this would mean "to say," but it puts emphasis on someone taking meaning that is in their head and putting it out in speech. This is something intuitive for Chinese people, but, as we said, this is not very intuitive for English speakers. It is way outside the scope of these lessons to explain all the instances where we use these modifiers. We just hope to prepare you so that you may recognize the modifier when you hear other people using it.

Altogether, our first phrase is 请写下来 (qǐng xiěxiàláí). As many of you may have noted, 请 (qǐng) and 写 (xiě) are both third tones and thus, when one follows the other, their tones must be modified to make it possible for a normal person to say them. The third tone on qǐng becomes a second tone, and the whole thing ends up being pronounced like this: 请写下来 (qǐng xiěxiàláí).

As was written earlier, we can translate the phrase as "Please write it down." Note that "it" is nowhere to be found in the Chinese language. In Chinese, objects that are considered obvious based on context do not need to be placed in the sentence; you do not need to say "it." You can just say, "Please write down." You might need to make it clear before using this phrase what you are talking about, such as which place name or new vocabulary word you want written down; but after you have done this, the object does not have any place in the phrase. Try first repeating the words that you want them to write (or some approximation of these words; even those of us who speak Chinese very well often mispronounce new words our first couple times), and then say this lesson's phrase. It should work with no problem.

Chinese writing is not phonetic. (Though in some places, parts of Chinese characters do symbolize a certain sound. You may notice this as you go along, but it by no means follows strict rules.) Looking at a new Chinese character, you are not going to know how to say it. Just try, we dare you. So, unless you want to be spending even more time with your dictionary, we suggest that after you get somebody to write something down, you then ask them to write the romanization so that you can remember how it is pronounced. (Or maybe so that you can look it up in the dictionary later and see it written clearly.) The romanization system for Chinese is called *pīnyīn*. *Pīn* means "to put together" and *yīn* means "sound." To ask someone to write the romanization, all you have to say is 请写拼音。(qǐng xiě pīnyīn) "Please write the pinyin." You treat *xiě* just like the English verb "to write" in regard to adding an object. The object 拼音 (*pīnyīn*) is simply tacked on behind 写 (*xiě*), just like in English. There are, of course, ways to make this sound even more natural, but this simple phrase works just fine. Specifically, you should not add 下来 (*xiàlái*) in between 写 (*xiě*) and 拼音 (*pīnyīn*). Putting the modifiers onto the verb and then having an object makes for a very strange Chinese sentence. There is a more graceful way to use both together; it involves using the particle 把 (*bǎ*), which we will explain in a later lesson about the post office.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Text Me! Using Pinyin to Read and Write Chinese

Tip#1

Pinyin is not just for foreigners. The Chinese government adopted *pinyin* in 1979 as a way of teaching Chinese to Chinese children. Think about it. When you were young, how did you learn to read books? You sounded things out. Now, what if you were Chinese and everything you read was in characters that mostly had no phonetic value? It makes it very difficult to

sound things out. Chinese children use *pinyin* in the exact same way foreigners do, to communicate the phonetics of characters. (There are also rumors that the Chinese government has had thoughts at various times of replacing the whole character system with a phonetic system.) *Pinyin* uses twenty-six characters. (This includes all the roman alphabet except "v." Chinese has a "ü" which is sometimes written as a "v.") It is a totally regular system for transcribing Chinese sounds, which makes it very easy to learn. All Chinese people under thirty are totally fluent in *pinyin* because of their education. Also, because *pinyin* is the way people enter characters into their phones for text messages, and most computer typing systems rely on *pinyin*, it's almost certain that someone under fifty will also be well-versed in *pinyin*. Older people, however, do not always know how to use *pinyin*. For some reason, Chinese people are almost always surprised when foreigners are good at *pinyin*. How do they think we learn Chinese words?

Tip#2

Get people to write down place names. This is useful in at least two situations. 1. Cab drivers and other Chinese people aren't guaranteed to understand your burgeoning Chinese. Having the place you want to go written in Chinese makes for a foolproof form of communication, and 2. You can try to use the bus. Armed with the name of a bus station, you can charge to the nearest bus stop and try to find that station on one of the signs. If there are no buses that go there directly, trying to get directions from people at the bus stop is a great way to practice your Chinese.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #34

How Do You Read This?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

34

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 这个怎么读?
2. 什么意思?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 這個怎麼讀?
2. 甚麼意思?

PINYIN

1. Zhège zěnmé dú?
2. Shénme yìsi?

ENGLISH

1. How do you read this?
2. What does it mean? / What do you mean?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
这	這	zhè	this

怎么	怎麼	zěnmě	how
什么	甚麼	shénme	what
意思	意思	yìsi	meaning
读	讀	dú	to read, to read out loud
个	個	ge	universal measure word

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这是你的票。 Zhè shì nǐ de piào. This is your ticket.	他怎么这么凶? Tā zěnmě zhème xiōng? How come he's so angry?
你说什么呢? Nǐ shuō shénme ne? What did you say?	我不明白你的意思。 Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ de yìsi. I don't get your meaning.
我喜欢看小说。 Wǒ xǐhuan kàn xiǎoshuō. I like reading novels.	这个菜太辣了。 This dish is too spicy.
这个多少钱? Zhège duōshǎo qián? How much is this?	尝尝这个。 Chángchang zhège. Have a taste of this.
他是一个间谍。 Tā shì yí ge jiàndié. He is a spy.	

GRAMMAR

Chinese is a memorization language. While some characters have some phonetic value, this is not true for all characters. Many characters' pronunciations must simply be memorized. Today we have pinyin to keep a record of the phonetics for every character, but phoneticizations for Chinese words are a recent advent. In the past, children learning characters often had no recourse but to simply remember what their teacher told them, or, this lesson's specialty, to ask other people.

As stated above, there is some phonetic value indicated in some characters' makeup. Let's start from the bottom. We're going to use the character 湖 (*hú*) for this demonstration because it is very straightforward in its representation of phonetics and it is a useful word to know. 湖 (*hú*) means "lake."

Every character is made up of strokes. 湖 (*hú*) has twelve strokes, making it somewhat complicated, but certainly nowhere near the most complex of characters. These strokes are grouped as radicals. Radicals are the smallest meaningful groupings of strokes. Most radicals have a meaning that they symbolize, and some also represent a certain sound. Some characters are made of only one radical; some have many radicals put together. The character 水 (*shǔǐ*) "water" has only one radical. 湖 (*hú*) is made up of three radicals.

Starting from the left of 湖, the first radical is the three strokes on the left-hand side. These three strokes are the water radical. They are not a character on their own; they only exist as a radical. Notice that they are different from the character for "water." When the water radical appears in a character (always on the left side) it says that the meaning of this character has something to do with water. This is not a hard and fast rule. Some characters with the water radical are only remotely connected with the idea of water; some have no connection at all. In the case of *hú* the connection is very clear. The water radical has no phonetic value; it tells you nothing about the sound of the word.

The next two radicals are characters in their own right: 古 (*gǔ*) and 月 (*yùe*). They mean "ancient" and "moon" (or "month") respectively. In addition to being their own characters, they also combine to form another character: 胡 (*hú*). This character is a word for the ancient non-Chinese races that lived to the northwest of China. It also means "beard." (Usually people say 胡子 *húzi* for "beard.")

This character is important to our character for "lake," not for its meaning, but for its sound.

The character for "lake," 湖 (*hú*), is a water radical plus a character that we pronounce *hú*. The pronunciation for the character for "lake" is given by placing an already existing character with the same pronunciation inside it. The character's pronunciation is presented to you by making reference to another character.

First, we should point out that this only works because we have memorized the other character. If we did not know that first character, we would have no clue as to how to pronounce the character for "lake." (Thus, phonetic clues are useless until you have built up a small base of characters you already know.)

Also, the phonetic indicators in a character are rarely this straightforward (if the character has any at all). With "lake," the character is exactly the same sound and tone as the character it imitates. Sometimes the phonetic part of the character tells you the sound of the character but not the tone. 东 (*dōng*) "east" appears in 冻 (*dòng*) "to freeze," where it tells you the sound, but not the tone. Sometimes you are given an approximate sound, not the exact sound of the character or the tone. 包 (*bāo*) "to hold" or "bag" is used in 泡 (*pào*) "bubble" and 跑 (*pǎo*) "to run."

Thus, phonetic parts of the character (when they appear) are not used in the way Westerners use the alphabet. The alphabet tells you directly the pronunciation of a word (though English can be somewhat confusing on this front). Phonetic radicals just give you hints. They do not really tell you the pronunciation if you have never seen a particular character before; rather, they help jog the memory of someone who has already learned the character. Chinese is still a memorization language.

That's why you need today's phrase. 这个怎么读? (*Zhège zēnme dú?*) means "How do you read this?" 这个 (*zhège*) we've been over many times; it is "this" plus the universal measure word. 怎么 (*zēnme*) means "how." 读 (*dú*) means "to read." Literally, we have "This how read?"

To use this phrase, just point at something—a line in a book or an advertisement on a subway for instance—and say the phrase.

Of course, once you get an answer, you're going to need today's second phrase: 什么意思? (*Shénme yìsi?*) "What does it mean?" or "What do you mean?" depending on the context. 什么 (*shénme*) means "what" and 意思 (*yìsi*) means "meaning." Literally, the phrase is "What meaning?" (It is interesting to note that none of the characters in our phrases contain within them hints as to their pronunciation.)

After you have put these two phrases out, you're probably going to want to bring in phrases

from the last couple of lessons, as well as some older ones. 请写下来。(Qǐng xiěxiàlái)
"Please write it down" will be useful, as well as 再说一遍。(Zài shuō yíbiàn) "Please say it again."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

So how do you use a Chinese dictionary anyway? If you flip through a Chinese-to-English dictionary, it quickly becomes evident that it is organized alphabetically by pinyin. But we just said that looking at most characters, you will have only the vaguest idea as to how to pronounce them, if you have any clue at all. So how do you go from totally mysterious pictograph to easy-to-pronounce pinyin?

The answer lies in the radicals. Remember? Those groups of strokes that are the inner organs of characters? In the beginning of any Chinese-English dictionary there is list of radicals grouped by how many strokes the radical has. Most dictionaries have over 170 radicals. Not every radical that appears in a character is on this list. The list contains the minimum number of radicals needed to cover every character in the dictionary. If a radical always occurs with other radicals, then there is no need to give that radical a special entry. (This will probably make more sense in a minute and will certainly make more sense when you try it yourself.)

If we were looking up 湖 (hú), we would look up the water radical first (you generally start with the radical on the left or the top). The water radical has three strokes, so we would look in the group of radicals with three strokes. When we found that radical we would see it has a number assigned to it-let's say thirty-two (that means it is the thirty-second radical in the list of all radicals). After the section listing the radicals and a number corresponding to them, there is another section. This section is much bigger; it is a list of all the characters in the dictionary broken up by radical. The number thirty-two tells us where to find the characters with the water radical. When we flip to list number thirty-two, we find all the characters using the water radical broken up by number of strokes (not including the water radical). So now we count the number of strokes left in the character. 湖 (hú) has nine strokes in addition to the water radical. We move down the list of water radical characters to the section of characters with nine extra strokes. There are about twenty characters in this list. (The water radical may be the most common radical.) Now all we have to do is go down this list until we find our

character. Once we find 湖 we see next to it the pinyin *hú*. Now we can go look up the translation by using the pinyin.

This seems very complicated, and it is, in comparison to looking up English words, but once you get used to it, it doesn't take that much time at all.

Quick Tip #2

There are two sets of Chinese characters in use in the world today (not counting the Chinese characters the Japanese use). The two sets are called "simplified" and "traditional" characters. Simplified characters are used in mainland China, Singapore, Malaysia, and, to some extent, Hong Kong. Traditional characters are used in Taiwan and in many overseas Chinese communities, though the use of simplified Chinese is becoming more widespread as China becomes more open and more mainland Chinese people move to other parts of the world. Hong Kong used to use traditional characters exclusively, but has been switching to some extent since reunifying with the mainland.

Since the beginning of the twentieth century, there has been a lot of discussion among Chinese intellectuals about ways to reform the language to make it more open to the masses. One idea batted around a lot was the complete abolishment of Chinese characters, or at least a drastic simplification. In the 1950s, the Chinese government went through with this simplification. They took the traditional character system and went through it, replacing radicals and characters that they thought had unnecessary strokes. The result is a set of characters with far fewer strokes than the traditional set.

It is hard to say what effect this has had on making the language accessible (Taiwan still has a slightly higher literacy rate than China, but Taiwan also has a much higher mean income), but it certainly makes handwriting much easier. This, however, may not be a very large concern as computers become more and more ubiquitous.

Mainland Chinese people can generally read traditional characters, though they may make mistakes when writing them. Traditional characters are still used in modern calligraphy. Most people in China and in Taiwan agree that the traditional characters are more beautiful. But you, the student, should be thankful. Most Westerners find traditional characters much harder to learn than simplified. In this sense, simplified is indeed simpler.

To find out more about the two systems, please look them up on Wikipedia; they have excellent articles on their histories and on how the systems differ, as well as arguments for

and against each system.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #35

Numbers 10-100

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

35

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 三十
2. 十一

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 三十
2. 十一

PINYIN

1. sānshí
2. shíyī

ENGLISH

1. 30
2. 11

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
七	七	qī	seven

零	零	líng	zero
九	九	jiǔ	nine
十	十	shí	ten
三	三	sān	three
八	八	bā	eight
六	六	liù	six
一	一	yī	one
二	二	èr	two
四	四	sì	four
五	五	wǔ	five
死	死	sǐ	to die
发财	發財	fācái	to get rich
点	點	diǎn	point, dot
三十	三十	sānshí	30
十一	十一	shíyī	11

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我们的公司有七个人。 Wǒmen de gōngsī yǒu qī gè rén. There are seven people in our company.	你有零钱吗? nǐ yǒu língqián ma? Do you have any change?
他爸爸一九八九年来美国。 Tā bàba yī jiǔ bā jiǔ nián lái Měiguó. His dad came to America in 1989.	现在十点钟。 Xiànzài shí diǎn zhōng. It's ten o'clock now.

他有三个孩子。 Tā yǒu sān ge hái zi. He has three children.	他住在八楼。 Tā zhù zài bā lóu. He lives on the eighth floor.
我女儿六岁。 Wǒ nǚ'ér liù suì. My daughter is six years old.	他给我一本书。 Tā gěi wǒ yī běn shū. He gave me a book.
我家在二楼。 Wǒ jiā zài èr lóu. My home is on the second floor.	我有四个孩子。 Wǒ yǒu sì gè hái zi. I have four children.
给我五块钱就好。 Gěi wǒ wǔ kuài jiù hǎo. Give me five RMB, that's fine.	我已经累死了。 wǒ yǐ jīng lèi sǐ le. I'm already really tired.
他一天到晚做发财梦，但从来不付诸行动。 tā yī tiān dào wǎn zuò fācái mèng, dàn cóng lái bù fù Zhū Xíng dòng. He dreams of getting rich every day, but he never puts it into practice.	恭喜发财! Gōngxǐfācái! Wishing you riches! (New Year's greeting)
下午4点。 Xiàwǔ sì diǎn. Four o'clock in the afternoon.	三十块钱不多。 Sānshí kuài qián bù duō. 30 kuai is not much.
十一块钱怎么样? Shì yī kuài qián zěnmeyàng? How about 11 RMB?	

GRAMMAR

The numbers from ten to one hundred follow a very simple system, which we went over briefly in a previous lesson. This lesson is more of a review than anything else. We thought it might help you to hear a lot of the numbers spoken, just so you can get used to them. Let's start out with a list of the numbers ten through ninety, going by tens:

Number	Chinese
"ten"	十 (shí)
"twenty"	二十 (èrshí)
"thirty"	三十 (sānshí)
"forty"	四十 (sìshí)
"fifty"	五十 (wǔshí)
"sixty"	六十 (liùshí)
"seventy"	七十 (qīshí)
"eighty"	八十 (bāshí)
"ninety"	九十 (jiǔshí)

As you can see, making these numbers is simply a matter of designating a number of tens. To say "twenty," you just say 二十 (èrshí), or "two tens." To say "fifty," you just say 五十 (wǔshí), or "five tens."

To add ones to one of the numbers we listed above, you just have to say the number of ones after the number of tens. "Eleven" is thus 十一 (shíyī), or "ten one." A number like "forty-three" is 四十三 (sìshísān), or "four tens three." There's nothing tricky about this system, no kinks, and no exceptions. (Though it makes us kind of worried to say something absolute like that. If you come across something troubling, please let us know; leave a comment on the site.)

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

What about numbers between zero and one? In Chinese, we vocalize the decimal point by using the word 点 (*diǎn*). This word literally means "dot" or "point." Saying numbers after the decimal point in Chinese is much like it is in English; you just list the numbers. Thus, "10.25" would be 十点二五 (*shí diǎn èr wǔ*) "ten point two five." And "6.27" is 六点二七 (*liù diǎn èr qī*) "six point two seven." And "3.14159" is 三点一四一五九 (*sān diǎn yī sì yī wǔ jiǔ*...).

If there is no number in the ones column, you must say 零 (*líng*) "zero" before you say 点 (*diǎn*). It is not like English, where you can say "point two" for "0.2." In Chinese, "0.2" is 零点二 (*líng diǎn èr*) "zero point two; "0.125" is (*líng diǎn yī èr wǔ*).

Quick Tip #2

Different cultures have different lucky numbers. China, of course, has its own, and the reasons are based on the language. The most basic lucky and unlucky numbers are eight and four.

"Eight," as we've said before, is 八 (*bā*) in Chinese. This is a lucky number because it sounds somewhat similar to 发 (*fā*). 发 (*fā*) means "to send out" or "to come out" (among many other things). This character is part of the word 发财 (*fācái*) "to get rich." We use 发财 (*fācái*) in all sorts of traditional good wishes and congratulations. Thus 发 (*fā*) has taken on this aura of good luck which it then transfers to 八 (*bā*), the number that sounds kind of like it.

The unluckiness of four is a lot more straightforward. "Four" in Chinese is 四 (*sì*). "To die" in Chinese is 死 (*sǐ*). Can you figure out why four might be unlucky?

Superstitions and references to these numbers come up all the time in China, most recently in mobile phone numbers. In China, your phone number is attached to a SIM card, which you buy separately from the phone. When you buy a SIM card you will be able to choose your number from a list of numbers the shop owns. Phone numbers with lucky numbers (with more eights and fewer fours) go for higher prices than those with more fours and fewer eights. Sometimes the price difference can be considerable. This trend probably hit its peak a few years ago. Now people are more laid back about choosing numbers, but there is still a price difference.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #36

Numbers 100-1,000

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 2 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

36

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 三百

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 三百

PINYIN

1. sānbǎi

ENGLISH

1. 300

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
多少	多少	duōshǎo	how much, how many

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这个多少钱?

Zhège duōshǎo qián?

How much is this?

GRAMMAR

Manipulating hundreds in Chinese is very simple; it's just like what we did with tens in past lessons. You just have to place a number from one to nine in front of the word for "hundred." "Hundred" in Chinese is *bǎi*; thus, "one hundred" is *yībǎi*. Let's have a quick list of all the hundreds:

Number	Chinese
"100"	一百 <i>yībǎi</i>
"200"	二百 <i>èrbǎi</i>
"300"	三百 <i>sānbǎi</i>
"400"	四百 <i>sìbǎi</i>
"500"	五百 <i>wǔbǎi</i> *
"600"	六百 <i>liùbǎi</i>
"700"	七百 <i>qībǎi</i>
"800"	八百 <i>bābǎi</i>
"900"	九百 <i>jiǔbǎi</i> **

*Remember to change the tone on *wǔ* to second tone.

**Again, there are two third tones in a row, so change the tone on *jiǔ* to second tone.

The word for "thousand" in Chinese is 千 (*qiān*), but we'll have more about that in the next lesson.

Now the question is, "What do we do for numbers a little more complex than the ones we've just mentioned?" For example, how do you say "423"? The answer is that you just combine the different words we've learned. Combine the word for "400" with the word for "23." For example, "400" is 四百 (*sìbǎi*). "23" is 二十三 (*èrshísān*). Together, "423" is 四百二十三

(*sìbǎièrshísān*). In Chinese, when saying numbers, you just go through the columns saying how many of that denomination there are; you say how many "hundreds," then how many "tens," then how many "ones." We can translate the 四百二十三 (*sìbǎièrshísān*) we just quoted as "four hundreds two tens three." In English, we make things complicated by saying "twenty," but in Chinese we just say "two tens." Let's try a couple more numbers: "761" is 七百六十一 (*qībǎiliùshíyī*). That was simple; we just went through each denomination again, saying how many of that value there were. This rule even holds up for numbers like "218." In Chinese, "18" is 十八 (*shíbā*) "ten eight." When we add hundreds, we have to be clear about how many tens there are. Here there is one ten, so we say "one ten"; thus, "218" is 二百一十八 (*èrbǎiyīshíbā*) "two hundreds one ten eight." This number follows exactly the same rules as the other numbers.

The only exception occurs when there is a zero in the tens column. When that happens, you don't say 十 (*shí*) "ten," you just say 零 (*líng*) "zero" after the number of hundreds. For example, "904" is 九百零四 (*jiǔbǎilíngsì*), and "608" is 六百零八 (*liùbǎilíngbā*).

Saying this zero is important because it differentiates between the last number being in the tens column and the last number being in the ones column. Technically, "180" should be 一百八十 (*yībǎibāshí*) and "360" should be 三百六十 (*sānbǎiliùshí*). Both of these are correct, but people often cut corners. The Chinese will often just say 一百八 (*yībǎibā*) "one hundred eight" to mean "180," and 三百六 (*sānbǎiliù*) "three hundreds six" to mean "360." They just leave the *shí* off the end. This is a quick way to say numbers, and people use it most of the time. This means it's vitally important that you say the "zero" in "904," lest it be mistaken for "940."

That's all for the hundreds. See you next time when we learn about thousands.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

This seems like as good a place as any to bring up the difference between 几 (*jǐ*) and 多少 (*duōshǎo*). Remember 多少 (*duōshǎo*)? It came up in the phrase 多少钱 (*duōshǎo qián?*) "how much money?" or "what's the price?" We used 几 (*jǐ*) in the restaurant phrase 几个人 (*jǐ ge rén?*) "How many people?" Both of them mean "how much" or "how many." So what's the difference? The difference is one of quantity. We use 几 (*jǐ*) when we think the answer will be

a small number, something under ten. Technically, we can use 多少 (*duōshǎo*) in any situation, but we usually use it in instances where the answer might be a large number.

The other difference is that 几 (*jǐ*) must always be followed by a measure word, whereas this is not true for 多少 (*duōshǎo*). You say 几个人 (*jǐ ge rén?*) or 多少人 (*duōshǎo rén?*), depending on how large you think the answer's going to be.

Quick Tip #2

We just said 几 (*jǐ*) must be followed by a measure word. This is because we treat 几 (*jǐ*) as a number. In addition to meaning "how many," 几 (*jǐ*) can also mean "a few." Saying 几个人 (*jǐ ge rén*) as a statement and not a question means "a few people." 几个车 (*jǐ ge chē*) means "a few cars." In these sentences, 几 (*jǐ*) is used as if it were a number with the value "a few." There is nothing to distinguish the phrases we just brought up from the questions "How many people?" and "How many cars?" except context and the way you say them. In English, we often distinguish between a statement and a question by the tone of someone's voice; for example, "You're going?" and "You're going." This happens much less often in Chinese, but 几 (*jǐ*) is one instance where it does happen.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #37

Numbers 1,000-10,000

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

37

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 三千

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 三千

PINYIN

1. sānqiān

ENGLISH

1. 3,000

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
千	千	qiān	thousand
万	万	wàn	ten thousand
亿	亿	yì	hundred million
左	左	zuó	left
右	右	yòu	right

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的房租一个月一千块钱。 Wǒ de fángzū yī gè yuè yī qiān kuài qián. My rent is 1,000 RMB a month.	那辆车一万块钱。 Nà liàng chē yī wàn kuài qián. That car is 10,000 RMB.
美国人口三亿左右。 Měiguó rénkǒu sān yì zuǒyòu. The population of America is around 300 million.	我家在左边。 Wǒ jiā zài zuǒbian. My house is on the left.
靠右边停。 Kào yòubiān tíng. Stop on the right.	

GRAMMAR

Language Expansion

This should be the last lesson on numbering in Chinese. Hopefully, this lesson will answer any remaining questions you have about how to make Chinese numbers.

In past lessons, we covered all the numbers up to one thousand. We learned that the Chinese word for "thousand" is *qiān*. Manipulating *qiān* is almost exactly like using *bǎi* ("hundred") or *shí* ("ten"); you just place a number from one to nine in front of it to indicate how many thousands the number you are talking about has. The only difference with *qiān* is that you use *liǎng* for "two" instead of *èr*. Let's do a quick list of the thousands:

Number	Chinese
"1,000"	一千 <i>yīqiān</i>
"2,000"	两千 <i>liǎngqiān</i>
"3,000"	三千 <i>sānqiān</i>

"4,000"	四千 <i>sìqiān</i>
"5,000"	五千 <i>wǔqiān</i>
"6,000"	六千 <i>liùqiān</i>
"7,000"	七千 <i>qīqiān</i>
"8,000"	八千 <i>bāqiān</i>
"9,000"	九千 <i>jiǔqiān</i>

We can make a number of mixed thousands, hundreds, tens, and ones in the same way that we added hundreds; just add the number of thousands in front of the number of hundreds. Thus, "4,327" is 四千三百二十七 (*sìqiān sānbǎi èrshí qī*) "four thousands, three hundreds, two tens, seven." And "7,112" would be 七千一百一十二 (*qīqiān yībǎi yīshí èr*).

Having zeros in the middle makes things more complicated. Just like when we were talking about hundreds, if there is a zero in the middle of a number we need to mark it with a 零 (*líng*) "zero." So "2,034" is 两千零三十四 (*liǎngqiān líng sānshí sì*), and "8,304" is *bāqiān sānbǎi líng sì*. If there are multiple zeros in the middle of a number, we can mark them with only one *líng*. For "1,008," you would say 一千零八 (*yīqiān líng bā*). There are two zeros in a row, but you only need to say one 零 (*líng*). Just for reference, "1,080" would be 一千零八十 (*yīqiān líng bāshí*). The number after the 零 (*líng*) lets you know how many zeros the *líng* represents.

In the hundreds lesson we talked about a shortcut that allows you to say "360" as 三百六 (*sānbǎiliù*). We can do this with thousands and hundreds, too. If there is nothing but zeros after the hundreds column—in other words, if there are only two numbers from one to nine in your number—then you can knock the word "hundred" out of the number. Technically, "3,600" should be 三千六百 (*sānqiān liùbǎi*). Using the shortcut, you can just say 三千六 (*sānqiān liù*). Let's try one other number, "4,200." That's 四千二 (*sìqiān èr*). Got the idea?

Now what happens after 9,999? Here a change occurs that is very much like entering the thousands in English. In the West, we put a comma after the thousands. This denotes that the thousands is a whole other denomination, and we can talk about tens of thousands and hundreds of thousands (in a way that we cannot talk about tens of hundreds). China traditionally did not use these commas. If they had, they would certainly have placed the comma after the ten thousands. "Ten thousand" in Chinese is *wàn*. *Wàn* in Chinese forms a

new denomination much like "thousands" in English. The Chinese go from making numbers such as "four thousand" to making numbers such as "four ten thousand." Then they move on up to "forty ten thousand," "four hundred ten thousand," and "four thousand ten thousand." In Chinese "40,000" is 四万 (sìwàn) "four ten thousand" and "400,000" is 四十万 (sìshí wàn) "forty ten thousand," "4,000,000" is 四百万 (sìbǎi wàn) "four hundred ten thousand," And "40,000,000" is 四千万 (sìqiān wàn) "four thousand ten thousand." Kind of confusing, huh? It's a very logical system, but the numbers are split up differently.

Using the 万 (wàn) is exactly like using 千 (qiān), except that you can say "ten" 万 (wàn) [十万 (shí wàn)]. (Remember that "ten thousand" is one 万 (wàn); you cannot say 十千 (shí qiān). So a number such as "53,876" is 五万三千八百七十六 (wǔwàn sānqiān bābǎi qīshí liù). Just as with 千 (qiān), you need to use 零 (líng) to denote zeros in the middle of the number and "two" 万 (wàn) is 两万 (liǎng wàn). So "27,003" is liǎngwàn qīqiān líng sān. Though we doubt you'll ever come across numbers this complicated.

That's about all you need to know. Let's try one last absurdly long number before we go. What's "2,598,761" in Chinese? *Erbǎi wǔshí jiǔwàn bāqiān qībǎi liùshí yī*. That was fun, right?

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Just as you can't say "a thousand thousand" in English, one does not say 一万万 (yīwàn wàn) in Chinese. When you get up to a number that big, you use a new denomination, the 亿 (yì). Each 亿 (yì) is one "hundred million." We use 亿 (yì) in the same way as 万 (wàn) with the ability to talk about hundreds and thousands of 亿 (yì). (Just like we talk about tens and hundreds of millions.) As the Arabic numeral system goes to a new denomination every three places, the Chinese system goes to a new denomination every four. Of course, these huge numbers are rarely used, except in the case of talking about population. The Chinese are often very eager to talk about the population of different places. In Chinese, the population of China is 十三亿 (shísān yì). The population of the world is 六十四亿 (liùshí sìyì). America's population is 三亿 (sānyì). India has 十一亿 (shíyī yì). We'll leave you all to figure out those numbers.

Quick Tip #2

Some of the numbers we've talked about in this lesson have been really tedious. In English, would you ever say a number like 543,859? No. You'd say something like, "about 540,000." You can do this in Chinese, too. (And everyone will be thankful to you for saving their time.) "About" (in this usage) is 左右 (*zuóyòu*). 左 (*zuó*) means "left" and 右 (*yòu*) means "right." "About 540,000" would be 五十四万左右 (*wǔshí sìwàn zuóyòu*). 左右 (*zuóyòu*) always follows the thing it is modifying. Good—now you can forget most of what you've learned!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #38

Post Office

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

38

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我想把这个送到东京。
2. 明白了。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我想把這個送到東京。
2. 明白了。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ xiǎng bǎ zhège sòngdào Dōngjīng.
2. Míngbái le.

ENGLISH

1. I want to send this to Tokyo.
2. I understand./ I see.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
到	到	dào	to arrive

美国	美國	Měiguó	United States of America
这儿	這兒	zhèr	here
用	用	yòng	to use
把	把	bǎ	particle that marks the words following it as the object of a sentence
明白	明白	míngbái	to understand
送	送	sòng	to send, to give
东京	東京	Dōngjīng	Tokyo
想	想	xiǎng	would like, to want

SAMPLE SENTENCES

从这边到那边要多久？ Cóng zhèbian dào nàbian yào duōjiǔ? How long does it take to go from here to there?	我来自美国。 Wǒ láizì Měiguó. I come from America.
我住在这儿。 Wǒ zhù zài zhèr. I live here.	你要用这个方法。 Nǐ yào yòng zhè ge fāngfǎ. You need to use this method.
我想把这个送到东京。 Wǒ xiǎng bǎ zhège sòngdào Dōngjīng. I want to send this to Tokyo.	你明白吗？ Nǐ míngbai ma? Do you understand?
请送到这个地址。 Qǐng sòngdào zhè ge dìzhǐ. Please send to this address.	你去过东京吗？ Nǐ qù guo Dōngjīng ma? Have you been to Tokyo before?

我想去看看。

Wǒ xiǎng qù kàn kàn

I want to have a look.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

We all know you're going to buy a lot of stuff in China. You can't help it. Even people who say they hate souvenirs always end up coming back with some stuff. The post office can be very useful for getting your stuff back home or to the people you want to give it to. All those paintings you bought? Just roll them up, stick them in a tube, and send them back home. They'll meet you there. Your cousin Peter lives in Tokyo and you bought him book of Chairman Mao's Collected Sayings? While it'd be nice to make a stop in Japan, it's probably easier to just send the book on its way. And of course, there are postcards. Who doesn't like to get postcards? People with no hearts, that's who. Everyone else loves postcards.

Before we get into the lesson, the first thing to know is that "post office" in Chinese is 邮局 (*yóu jú*). There is a picture of a post office attached to this PDF. Their striking green logos are easily recognizable. And now, onto the lesson.

Today's phrase is the bare bones "I want to send this to..." Just bring your package, postcard, or whatever to the counter and say, 我想把这个送到____。 (*Wǒ xiǎng bǎ zhège sòngdào*) and add the place you want it to go to. In the lesson, Michael used Tokyo as the place he wanted to send his package to. "Tokyo" in Chinese is 东京 (*Dōngjīng*). All places in the world have a Chinese name. Often times, the Chinese place name mimics the name of the place in the language that the people living there speak. Thus, "America" is 美国 (*Měiguó*). 美 (*měi*) means "beautiful," but we use it because it sounds something like the "mer" in "America." 国 (*guó*) means "country." "Germany" is 德国 (*Déguó*). 德国 (*Déguó*) sounds nothing like "Germany," but in German, "Germany" is *Deutschland*. The 德 (*dé*) in the Chinese name mimics the German. (德 (*dé*) means "virtue.") Place names for Japan, however, often sound nothing like the Japanese words. Japanese uses many Chinese characters, and Japanese place names are always written in Chinese characters. When saying a Japanese place name, the Chinese just take the characters and use the Chinese

pronunciation. The characters for "Tokyo" in Japanese are pronounced 东京 (*Dōngjīng*) in Chinese.

So if we want to send a package to Tokyo, we just say, 我想把这个送到东京。 (*Wǒ xiǎng bǎ zhège sòngdào Dōngjīng*) "I want to send this to Tokyo." We can replace 东京 (*Dōngjīng*) with any other place name. If we want to send our package to New York, we just say, 我想把这个送到纽约。 (*Wǒ xiǎng bǎ zhège sòngdào Niǔyuē*). 纽约 (*Niǔyuē*) is "New York" in Chinese.

This is a complicated phrase, so let's look at how it works, character by character. 我 (*wǒ*) means "I" or "me." 想 (*xiǎng*) means "to want to do something." 想 We can place (*xiǎng*) before another verb to indicate a desire to do that action. Here, 想 (*xiǎng*) modifies 送 (*sòng*), which means "to send." 我想送 (*Wǒ xiǎng sòng*) means "I want to send." In this sentence though, 想 (*xiǎng*) and 送 (*sòng*) are interrupted by 把 (*bǎ*). 把 (*bǎ*) indicates that the words coming after it are the object of the sentence. Here we have 把这个 (*bǎ zhège*). 这个 (*zhège*) means "this." In English, the object always comes at the end of the sentence, after the verb. In Chinese, the object only sometimes comes at the end of the sentence. Here the verb 送 (*sòng*) is modified with 到 (*dào*), and then the destination follows 到 (*dào*). 送 (*sòng*) means "to send." 到 (*dào*) means "to arrive." Together, they mean "to send to." 送到东京 (*sòngdào Dōngjīng*) means "to send to Tokyo." Because there is a modifier (到 (*dào*)) attached to the verb, there is no place at the end of the sentence to put the object. So we use 把 (*bǎ*) to designate the object earlier in the sentence. The sentence, translated directly, is thus, "I want this send to Tokyo." The 把 (*bǎ*) tells us that 这个 (*zhège* - "this") is the object of the sentence. The Chinese often use this sentence form when the verb gets cluttered by modifiers or destinations. 把 (*bǎ*) and the object that follows it are always placed immediately in front of the verb that is acting on them. Thus in our sentence, the phrase 把这个 (*bǎ zhège*) breaks up 想 (*xiǎng*) and 送 (*sòng*). Once again, the full sentence is 我想把这个送到东京。 (*Wǒ xiǎng bǎ zhège sòngdào Dōngjīng*) "I want to send this to Tokyo." Note that in the beginning, there are three third tones in a row. Using our rule of thumb, we break up these third tones by changing 想 (*xiǎng*) to a second tone.

So you bring a package into the post office, you wait in line, and, when it's your turn, you plop your package on the counter and say, 我想把这个送到东京。 (*Wǒ xiǎng bǎ zhège sòngdào Dōngjīng*). The response you hope to get is 明白了。 (*Míngbaí le*). 明白 (*míngbaí*) means "to understand." When the clerk at the post office says, 明白了。 (*Míngbaí le*), it means they understand and they'll begin working on it. It's kind of like saying "okay." If you just get a blank-faced stare, you might want to try repeating yourself slowly.

There are a couple of other words for different services at the post office that you should

probably know. 挂号 (*guàhào*) means "to register," and at the post office it refers to registered mail. Literally, 挂 (*guà*) means "to hang" and 号 (*hào*) means "number." If you want to use registered mail, you can say, 我要挂号 (*Wǒ yào guàhào*) "I want to register" after you have talked about where you want to send your items to.

特快专递 (*tèkuài zhuāndì*) means "express mail" or "special delivery." 特 (*tè*) means "especially," 快 (*kuài*) means "fast," 专 (*zhuān*) means "specialty," and 递 (*dì*) means "to give" or "to hand over." If you want to use express mail, just say, 我想用特快专递。 (*Wǒ xiǎng yòng tèkuài zhuāndì*). 用 (*yòng*) means "to use." The whole phrase is "I want to use express mail." Don't forget to change 我 (*wǒ*) into a second tone. Notice that both of these phrases use 想 (*xiǎng*). These are further examples of how you can put 想 (*xiǎng*) in front of any verb to mean "to want to do" that verb.

Originally, we intended to list the prices for mailing packages, letters, and postcards within China and out of China, but the pricing system for the Chinese postal service is exceedingly complex (it varies based on both weight and distance) and our interns threatened bloody rebellion at this suggestion. Through long hours of mediation between staff and management, we have reached a compromise. We will list some example prices. Hopefully, these will be helpful as a guide. Unfortunately, the only website we have found with a complete listing of pricing is China Post's main website, and this is only in Chinese. (The website is <http://chinapost.gov.cn/>.) Here are some sample pricings:

A postcard within China costs .80 yuan.

A twenty-gram letter within China costs (at most) 1.20 yuan.

Shipping a package by express mail within the country has a base rate of twenty yuan for the first five hundred grams. Each additional five hundred grams costs six, nine, or fifteen yuan, depending on how far you are sending the package.

Registered mail costs three yuan, but is only available for domestic mail.

Sending a postcard overseas costs 4.50 yuan.

Sending a twenty-gram letter to Europe or America costs six yuan.

Sending a five hundred-gram package by express mail to Japan costs one hundred eighty yuan. Each additional five hundred grams costs forty yuan. (International shipping is cheaper if you are just sending books or other media.)

The same package costs two hundred eighty yuan to send to Europe and two hundred forty yuan to send to America.

Sending a one hundred-gram package by standard mail to Europe, Australia, or America costs eighteen yuan. Fifteen yuan is added for each additional one hundred grams.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Learning place names in Chinese is a daunting task; there are whole books published for the translation of English place names. Nobody expects you to know the Chinese for every place in the world. At the post office, if you just say the English word for the place you want to send your package to, you should be all right. It might be a good idea, however, to look up the place name in Chinese before you go. You can log into Google and use their translation software to translate the name of any place. Write down the name of this destination and carry it with you to the post office. Then, when you are talking with the clerk, you can just substitute 这儿 (zhèr) for the place name and point at the place you have written down. 这儿 (zhèr) means "here." The whole phrase would be 我想把这个送到这儿。(Wǒ xiǎng bǎ zhège sòngdào zhèr) "I want to send this to here." Just keep saying 这儿 (zhèr) and pointing at the words you have written down. Hopefully, you have written the Chinese clearly enough for them to understand. Otherwise, you might have to try saying the place name in English.

Quick Tip #2

Addresses in China are written backwards. That is to say, they start with the largest landmark and work down to the most specific details. A sample address written in pinyin would look like this:

Zhōngguó ("China")

Běijīng Shì ("Beijing City"), *Hǎidiàn Qū* ("Haidian Ward")

Sānyimiào Běi ("North Sanyimiao") *15 Hàolóu* ("Building 15") 12-502

100086

Two things of note: First, the postal code comes last. That's what that six-digit number at the end is. Secondly, addresses are often not divided up by street. They sometimes just list the name of the area and then the number of a building. The buildings are not always numbered in a logical fashion either. They may simply be numbered by the order in which they were built. In this example, *Sānyimiào* is the name of an area, and *Sānyimiào Běi* is the name of an apartment complex. (Address systems are different for different cities. Addresses in Shanghai are all done by street.)

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #39

Weather Watch

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

39

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 明天的天气怎么样?
2. 天气很好。
3. 晴天。
4. 下雨。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 明天的天氣怎麼樣?
2. 天氣很好。
3. 晴天。
4. 下雨。

PINYIN

1. Míngtiān de tiānqì zěnmeyàng?
2. Tiānqì hěnhǎo.
3. Qíngtiān .
4. Xià yǔ.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. What will the weather be like tomorrow?
2. The weather is good.
3. Clear skies.
4. It's raining.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
明天	明天	míngtiān	tomorrow
天气	天气	tiānqì	weather
怎么	怎麼	zěnmē	how
很	很	hěn	very
好	好	hǎo	good
要	要	yào	to want

SAMPLE SENTENCES

明天我去公园。 Míngtiān wǒ qù gōngyuán. Tomorrow, I'm going to the park.	天气真好。 Tiānqì zhēn hǎo. The weather is really good.
他怎么这么凶？ Tā zěnmē zhème xiōng? How come he's so angry?	今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.

加州很好。
Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo.

California is very nice.

他要一张纸。
Tā yào yī zhāng zhǐ.

He wants a piece of paper.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Weather is one of those things that can make or break a trip. The weather is vital information when you are traveling. So it might be nice to be able to ask the locals what they think the weather's going to be like. 明天的天气怎么样？*Míngtiān de tiānqì zěnmeyàng?* means "What will the weather be like tomorrow?" 明天 *Míngtiān* means "tomorrow." 天气 *Tiānqì* means "weather." *De*, the character in between 明天 *míngtiān* and 天气 *tiānqì*, is the possessive particle. It acts kind of like an apostrophe "s." It connects the two words around it and indicates that 天气 *tiānqì* "belongs" to 明天 *míngtiān*. Thus, 明天的天气 *míngtiān de tiānqì* means "tomorrow's weather." 怎么 *Zěnmeyàng* means "how." 样 *Yàng* means "kind." Together, 怎么样 *zěnmeyàng* means "what kind." It asks how something was or what something will be like. Putting these two halves of the phrase together, we get 明天的天气怎么样？*Míngtiān de tiānqì zěnmeyàng?* This literally means "Tomorrow's weather what kind?" We translate this as "What will the weather be like tomorrow?"

Of course, there are many answers you can get. We only have time and space to go over a few of them. The best two answers you can get are 天晴。 *Tiān qíng*. and 天气很好。 *Tiānqì hěn hǎo*. 天晴。 *Tiān qíng* means "clear skies." 天 *Tiān* means "sky" or "heaven" and 晴 *qíng* means "clear." 天气很好。 *Tiānqì hěn hǎo* is less specific; it just means "The weather is good." As we said before, 天气 *tiānqì* means "weather." 很 *Hěn* means "very" and 好 *hǎo* means "good." Literally, this is "Weather very good."

A disheartening answer would be 下雨。 *Xià yǔ*. This literally means "falling rain." 下 *Xià* means "down" or "to go down," 雨 *yǔ* means "rain." Thus 下雨。 *Xià yǔ* together means "It's raining" or in the case of tomorrow, "It's going to rain." An answer that you're unlikely to get, but we might as well prepare you for just in case, is 下雪 *Xià xuě*. This is the same 下 *xià* as before, and 雪 *xuě* means "snow," so 下雪 *Xià xuě* means "It's snowing."

Two last weather words that we can use by themselves are 热 *rè* and 冷 *lěng*. 热 *Rè* means "hot" and 冷 *lěng* means "cold."

China is a very large country, and the climate varies dramatically depending on where you are. The northernmost part of China (Heilongjiang Province) is considered sub-arctic, whereas Hainan Island in the south is tropical. China's weather is dominated by dry and wet seasons, but the specific results of these changes vary between regions. We will break China up into a few regions and give the general climate for those regions, but remember, climate can vary a lot depending on altitude and the lay of the land nearby. That's why we gave you this lesson's phrase. Now it's up to you to use it.

Northeast:

China is dry in the winter and wet in the summer. The Northeast, especially, gets very dry in the winter (though not as dry as the Northwest). Winds kick up and cut through any unprotected skin. It is common for Beijing to get down to -20°C at night. (That's about -5°F.) Heilongjiang gets down to -40°C. For anyone who doesn't know, that's where Celsius and Fahrenheit meet. That's cold. The wind comes in even harder in the spring, bringing in dust from the Gobi Desert. Dust storms are becoming less severe and less frequent, but Beijing is still occasionally covered with a nice, thick, brown layer of dust. The summers bring rain (though intermittently) often in the form of all-day thunderstorms. The area to the north of Beijing is cooler, but Beijing and the area to its south often stay around 30°C (86°F) all summer. Unfortunately, for some reason the wind mostly disappears during the summer and the air becomes stifling. Generally, autumn is considered the best time to visit the Northeast. In the fall, daytime temperatures range from 20°C to 30°C (68°F to 86°F), but fall steeply at night. The fall skies are clear and the moon is big.

South:

South China is wet. The summers bring monsoons and typhoons, with rain almost every day. When it is not raining, the air is sticky and the heat presses down on you. The winters in the South are short, only lasting from January to March. It doesn't get anywhere near as cold as the North, but you had still better bring some warm clothes. Many Southerners will tell you that the South is actually colder than the North because there is no heating. All gas heating in China is government controlled. Areas south of the Yangtze do not get gas heating. In the North, Southerners say it is only cold outside. Inside it is warm. But in the South, it is cold both inside and outside. When there is a steady drizzle falling, the areas around Shanghai can feel frigid. That said, if you go far enough south, to Guangzhou or Yunnan, for example, the winters can be quite pleasant as long as you bring your hat, some long-sleeved shirts, and

sweaters for after nightfall. Spring and autumn are generally considered the best times to be in the South. Summer is to be avoided, especially from July to September, the monsoon season.

Northwest:

The Gobi Desert lies in China's Northwest region. The Northwest is extremely dry and gets almost no rain. Summers are terribly hot, and winters are as bitterly cold as the rest of the North. Here, as with most other regions, the spring and fall are the best times to visit, as the temperatures are not at their extremes. Being the desert, the sun in the Northwest gets very strong, but the huge, blue sky of the Northwest is something not to be missed.

Tibet:

Tibet is harsh. The entire area is at high altitude. Many travelers find it necessary to rest their first day after arriving in Tibet to get used to the lack of oxygen. The sun shines fiercely through the thin air, making summers very hot. Winter comes early to Tibet (October) and stays until the following May or June. During this time, the temperatures fall below freezing and the wind whips through the mountains. Tibet is also very dry. The rainy season comes from June to September, and coincidentally, this is the best time to see Tibet. Because of the mountains, Tibet's roads are especially susceptible to flooding and snow. The rainy season can cause some problems for moving around Tibet, but it is also when the scenery will be at its best and greenest. The warm temperatures and summer festivals make summer the time to be in Tibet. And did we say you need sunblock for the Northwest? We meant Tibet. Because of the altitude, the sun in Tibet will probably be worse than any you've ever experienced.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

In the lesson, Michael gave you bare bones phrases for describing the weather. These phrases are the simplest ways to describe the kinds of weather we talked about. Michael also said that they could be used to talk about the weather right now or when describing tomorrow's weather; context will fill you in on what time people were talking about. This is true, but most Chinese people would add one more word when describing tomorrow's weather. This word is 要 *yào* and it means "will." If someone wanted to say "It will rain," they would say 要下雨 *Yào xià yǔ*. Literally, this is "Will fall rain." If they wanted to say

"Tomorrow's weather will be good," they would say, 明天的天气要很好。 *Míngtiān de tiānqì yào hěnhǎo*. 要 *Yào* is always placed before the verb or the adjective phrase. In our first example, it precedes the verb 下 *xià*. In the second example, it precedes the adjectives 很好 *hěnhǎo*. If we want to say "It will be hot," we say, 要热 *Yào rè*. You get the idea. The bare bones phrases in the lesson are enough to get your meaning across if the context has been put out; adding 要 *yào* makes the meaning of your sentence clear even if the context is not there. In the lesson, Michael first established context by asking about tomorrow's weather. After that's been asked, everyone knows that all comments are about tomorrow and not right now, so 要 *yào* is not necessary. But if no context has been established, *yào* becomes very necessary. Without saying anything beforehand, you could look up at the darkening sky and say, 要下雨 *Yào xià yǔ* ("It will rain."). If you just said 下雨 *Xià yǔ*, it would just mean "It's raining." That wouldn't make any sense if the sky's just getting dark.

Quick Tip #2

Literally, 很好 *hěnhǎo* means "very good." 很 *Hěnhǎo* means "very" and 好 *hǎo* means "good." You may start to notice, however, that you never see 好 *hǎo* without 很 *hěnhǎo*. The Chinese never use 好 *hǎo* by itself; they always add 很 *hěnhǎo* or some other word that changes the degree of "good"ness. This is because the Chinese usually favor two-character adjectives and nouns over monosyllabic ones. They add 很 *hěnhǎo* to 好 *hǎo* to make it sound better. 很好 *Hěnhǎo* is the most basic configuration of 好 *hǎo* and can be considered to mean just "good."

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #40

Exchanging Contact Info

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

40

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 请给我你的电话号码。
2. 请给我你的电子邮箱。
3. 请给我你的email地址。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 請給我你的電話號碼。
2. 請給我你的電子郵件。
3. 請給我你的email地址。

PINYIN

1. Qǐng gěi wǒ nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ.
2. Qǐng gěi wǒ nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng.
3. Qǐng gěi wǒ nǐ de email dìzhǐ.

ENGLISH

1. Please give me your phone number.
2. Please give me your email.

CONT'D OVER

3. Please give me your email address.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
请	請	qǐng	please
给	給	gěi	to give
我	我	wǒ	I, me
你	你	nǐ	you
地址	地址	dìzhǐ	address

SAMPLE SENTENCES

请帮我拿一下这个东西。 Qǐng bāng wǒ ná yíxià zhè ge dōngxi. Please hold this for me for a moment.	请给我一杯水。 Qǐng gěi wǒ yī bēi shuǐ. Please give me a glass of water.
我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?
你有地址吗? Nǐ yǒu dìzhǐ ma? Do you have the address?	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

You sly dogs. We know the real reason you're taking these lessons is to meet members of the opposite sex. We know all the lessons up 'til now have just been preludes to this most important of all questions: "How do you get somebody's phone number?"

In all seriousness, it is really too bad that most foreigners don't get to meet many Chinese people when they are in China. Many Chinese people want to make friends with foreigners, and many foreigners would find their time in China more enjoyable with a Chinese friend or two. There are two main obstacles in the path of these friendships.

The first is the sheer number of Chinese people. Yes, there are many outgoing, friendly people looking to learn about new cultures and meet the kinds of people they have never met before, but there are also many people who don't want to deal with the possible communication troubles, who are too busy to make new friends, or who just won't have any particular interest in you. Wading through rivers of people in search of friendly souls can be hopeless and really comes down to luck. The one advantage you have is that people may be keeping an eye out for you as well.

The second barrier is language. Many people would love to be able to hang out with a person from a different culture, but they just don't have the communication skills. In many countries you have visited or will visit, the average person speaks at least a little English. China is not like this. The average person knows nothing but "hello." In order to make Chinese friends, you either have to meet Chinese people who speak English (and there are many of these) or you have to speak some Chinese.

SurvivalPhrases.com is here to help you with this second barrier. Perhaps at some point, we will start a separate website called SurvivalFriends.com, where we network travelers with friendly people, but that hasn't happened yet. Now we are just working on what you can say if you do meet those friendly people.

And if they're really friendly, then you might want to use today's phrases on them.

Today's phrases seem kind of complex. They are a little long, but the structure is very simple.

请给我你的电话号码。 *Qǐng gěi wǒ nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ* means "Please give me your phone number." 请 *Qǐng* means "please." 给 *Gěi* is "to give." 我 *Wǒ* means "I" or "me." Thus, 请给我 *qǐng gěi wǒ* is "please give me." 你 *Nǐ* means "you." 的 *De* is the possessive particle; it makes nouns possessive, so here it turns "you" into "your." 电话号码 *Diànhuà hàomǎ*

means "telephone number." 电话 *Diànhuà* means "telephone" and 号码 *hàomǎ* means "number." 你的电话号码 *Nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ* is "your telephone number." When we combine this with the first half of the phrase, we get our original 请给我你的电话号码。 *Qǐng gěi wǒ nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ*. As usual, Chinese grammar is very simple. There are no twists when putting together this sentence, and there are no rules you have to remember (except, perhaps, the usage of *de*).

The kink comes, as it always does in Chinese, with the pronunciation. In the beginning of the phrase, we have four third tones in a row. Hopefully, you've been reading these lesson write-ups and are aware that our rule for dealing with third tones is not very consistent. In this instance, we chose to go with the "all second tones until the last third tone" school of thought. Following this rule, we changed 请 *qǐng*, 给 *gěi*, and 我 *wǒ* into second tones leading up into the third tone 你 *nǐ*. Again, it doesn't matter which of our two rules you use; both are just rules of thumb.

With just a slight modification, we can use the phrase we just mentioned to ask for someone's email address. Drop 电话号码 *diànhuà hàomǎ* and replace it with 电子邮箱 *diànzǐ yóuxiāng*. This word literally means "electronic mailbox," but it has come to mean "email." Our phrase is now 请给我你的电子邮箱。 *Qǐng gěi wǒ nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng* ("Please give me your email."). All of us travelers know that people on the move live off email. As Michael said, email may be a lot more useful than a phone number, especially if you'll be skipping town soon.

Michael mentioned in the lesson that you can also just say the English "email." Most Chinese people who have email are going to know the English word. Not knowing this word is a good indicator that the person you are talking to doesn't have an email address (which is not an unheard of occurrence). You can say to someone, *Qǐng gěi wǒ nǐ de email*. Or you can add the word *dìzhǐ*. *Dìzhǐ* means "address." Our whole phrase then becomes 请给我你的email地址。 *Qǐng gěi wǒ nǐ de email dìzhǐ* ("Please give me your email address.").

CULTURAL INSIGHT

You Want My "MSN"? Tips on How to Make Friends-Or Not-In China

Tip#1

We said that many Chinese people will be eager to make foreign friends; sometimes it will be

surprising just how eager they are. Many Chinese people want to meet English partners, people they can practice their English with. For this reason, you might find yourself occasionally approached on the street by people who say they want to make friends. (We mentioned this in Lesson 32, the "How Do You Say?" lesson.) These people will sometimes request your phone number or email after only a few introductory sentences. An encounter might go like this:

(On a university campus.)

Young man with glasses: Hello!

You: Um, hi.

YM: What's your name?

You: Um, Michael.

YM: Where are you from?

You: America.

YM: Do you like China?

You: Uh, yeah.

YM: Can I have your phone number?

This is something that really happens, and it is a little hard to know how to respond to it. (This is not to say that there are not many cool, suave people in China. You just probably won't be approached by them.)

If you want to give this person your phone number or email address, by all means, do so. But you shouldn't feel bad about saying, "I'm sorry. I usually only give my phone number to people after I get to know them pretty well. Have a nice day."

The person may continue to pursue you, at which point you have to say, "I'm sorry, but I'm really very busy. I have to go now." You all are native English speakers; we don't have to tell you how to politely refuse someone's company.

You may also find that people you meet normally in the course of your travels will want your contact information very early on. We are not talking about people who approach you on the

street, but rather people you play a game of pickup basketball with, or someone you have a passing conversation with at a food stand; even people who help you figure out where to get off the bus may want your number. It might be a little awkward, but it's perfectly all right to refuse them. Remember you have the excuse that you're a traveler, and you can say that you don't have a phone (though this may only prompt them to ask for your email address).

Tip#2

Speaking of email, electronic communication has become amazingly popular in China. Everyone-children, adults, old people-uses text messaging. People in China also use email a lot, but not nearly as frequently as they chat online. Office workers use online chatting for business as well as pleasure. Young people go to Internet cafes to chat for hours with people they may or may not have met in real life. In China, it is not uncommon for young people to make friends online. They do this either through online clubs and chat rooms, or through dating and friend-finding sites. Many Chinese people will tell you that the Chinese are very shy (though they will also say they are very friendly). We have already said that many Chinese people get all their friends from school and work, that they don't have many other options for meeting people. Online communities are giving the Chinese a chance to branch out and meet new people. Many Americans see meeting people online as strange, nerdy, and maladjusted. The Chinese see it as fun.

The most popular online messengers in China are a Chinese company called QQ and MSN, Microsoft's messaging service. These are so popular that the word "MSN" has almost replaced the word "email" recently. People will say, "Can I have your MSN?" when they may actually mean "Can I have your email?" (Your ID on MSN is an email address.) You're perfectly welcome to steer clear of these forms of communication, but it's interesting to note their prevalence in Chinese society.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #41

Bottled Water Please

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

41

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 请给我一瓶水。
2. 不要冰块。
3. 请给我两瓶水。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 請給我一瓶水。
2. 不要冰塊。
3. 請給我兩瓶水。

PINYIN

1. Qǐng gěi wǒ yī píng shuǐ.
2. Bù yào bīng kuài.
3. Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎng píng shuǐ.

ENGLISH

1. Please give me one bottle of water.
2. I don't want ice.

CONT'D OVER

3. Please give me two bottles of water.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
请	請	qǐng	please
给	給	gěi	to give
我	我	wǒ	I, me
一	一	yī	one
水	水	shuǐ	water
不	不	bù	(negative prefix)
要	要	yào	to want
热	熱	rè	hot

SAMPLE SENTENCES

请帮我拿一下这个东西。 Qǐng bāng wǒ ná yíxià zhè ge dōngxi. Please hold this for me for a moment.	请给我一杯水。 Qǐng gěi wǒ yī bēi shuǐ. Please give me a glass of water.
我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	他给我一本书。 Tā gěi wǒ yī běn shū. He gave me a book.
有水吗？凉的。 yǒu shuǐ ma? liáng de. Do you have water? Cold water?	我不认识他。 Wǒ bù rènshi tā. I don't know him.

他要一张纸。
Tā yào yī zhāng zhǐ.

He wants a piece of paper.

今天很热！
Jīntiān hěn rè.

Today is very hot.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Do not drink the tap water in China. It is not drinkable. The locals do not drink it, adventurous travelers do not drink it, nobody drinks it, and neither should you. That is to say, don't drink it straight. We don't want to scare you too much. It is not as if the tap water is pure cyanide and just a drop will kill you. As long as you don't gulp down water straight, you will be okay. Boiled tap water is fine. We are not sure exactly what is wrong with the tap water-some say it's bacteria, some say it's chemicals-but whatever it is, boiling the tap water makes it drinkable. Chinese people boil tap water all the time and use it to make tea. Much of the tea you get in restaurants is probably made using boiled tap water. We don't say this to make you look askance at the tea you are being served, but rather to demonstrate how harmless the tap water is once it's been boiled. Small amounts of unboiled tap water will also not hurt you. You can use tap water to brush your teeth, and you can wash fruit with it. It is not deadly poison. That being said, let us reiterate: don't drink the tap water in China. Most Chinese people have a water cooler in their house. Many people boil water and then put it in the fridge. In restaurants, they will serve you bottled water, hot boiled water, or tea. No one ever gets a cool glass of tap water.

You're going to be spending a lot of time outside, and China can get very hot. Even Beijing, in the north of China, stays above 30°C almost the entire summer. (30°C is 86°F for all the Fahrenheit users out there.) If you don't buy water at some point, you will be very thirsty. Don't worry; there will be people all over the place selling water. Little convenience stores, supermarkets, and magazine stands all sell bottled water. In addition, in any spot where there are a lot of people, there are usually other people on the street with Styrofoam coolers selling bottled water. You will see these people all over tourist spots. They are also around the train stations and will set up near basketball courts or soccer fields. If you need some water, just go into a store or up to one of the people selling water on the street and say this lesson's phrase: 请给我一瓶水。(Qǐng gěi wǒ yī píng shuǐ). The phrase means "Please give me one bottle

of water." 请 (*Qǐng*) means "please." 给 (*Gěi*) means "to give." 我 (*Wǒ*) means "I" or "me." Together, these three words give us the phrase "please give me." The last half of the sentence is 一瓶水 (*yī píng shuǐ*). 一 (*Yī*) means "one." 瓶 (*Píng*) is a measure word that means "bottle." 水 (*shuǐ*) means "water." Together, 一瓶水 (*yī píng shuǐ*) is "one bottle of water." Thus, our whole phrase is 请给我一瓶水。 (*Qǐng gěi wǒ yī píng shuǐ*), which means "Please give me one bottle of water." Remember that because the beginning of the phrase has three third tones in a row, the preceding two third tones become second tones. Thus, 给 (*gěi*) becomes *géi*. Our whole phrase is then pronounced like this: 请给我一瓶水。 (*Qíng géi wǒ yī píng shuǐ*). If you say this to a vendor, they should know what you want and they'll just tell you how much it costs. (See Quick Tip 1 for a possible problem in the exchange.) Plain water costs about one yuan per bottle in the supermarket. Outside, it shouldn't ever be more than two yuan. Sometimes, if people can tell that you are a tourist, they will try to raise prices on you, but generally, they are very honest.

There is still one thing you should watch out for, although even we here at SurvivalPhrases.com are not sure whether this ever really happens. There are stories about vendors on the street who collect empty water bottles and then refill them with tap water. They then sell these refilled bottles as drinkable water. (This should not lead you to look down on the people collecting bottles on the street. Bottles can be sold back for money, so many homeless people and some people who are just frugal collect plastic bottles.) Michael warned you about this in the lesson, but he says it's never happened to him. Nevertheless, you should pay attention every time you open a bottle of water. Make sure the safety seal clicks, indicating that it was sealed before you opened it. These stories may be just myths, but woe be to you if you get the bottle that proves the stories are true.

In the lesson, we also went over 不要冰块。 (*Bùyào bīng kuài*). This means "I don't want ice." 不 (*bù*) is "no" and 要 (*yào*) means "to want" or "to need." Together, these two characters can mean "don't" (as in "Don't eat that"), but here they mean "not want." Remember that when *bù* comes before another fourth tone, as is the case here, it becomes *bú*. Therefore, we say *búyào*. 冰 (*bīng*) means "ice" and 块 (*kuài*) means "lump," "cube," or "chunk." Thus, 冰块 *bīng kuài* means "ice cube." Together, the phrase is literally "not want ice cube." It means "I don't want ice." We don't have to say "I" because people will assume that you are talking about yourself.

This phrase "I don't want ice" was handed down from the ChineseClass101.com management. Michael realized later that in many ways it's a silly phrase to learn. In China, the only time you will get ice in your drink is at bars. There you don't have to worry about it. That ice is all store-bought. In fact, all ice in China is store-bought. This worry about ice is an American worry (which is the reason management thought of it and part of the reason Michael

didn't realize it was silly). Many Americans take trips to Mexico. The water in Mexico is undrinkable, but only to the Americans who are not used to it. The water is not so bad that locals don't drink it. Mexico is also hot. So the locals make ice, which they then put in their drinks. For an American, it is very important to remember to drink nothing with ice in it in Mexico because that ice was probably made from tap water. This is not the case in China. Chinese people do not make ice because they do not drink the tap water. (That, and traditional Chinese medicine says it's bad for your intestines to drink cold things. Many Chinese people will drink hot drinks all year round, though this is changing in the younger generations.) If you encounter ice in China, and again, this will probably only be in a bar, you can be pretty sure it is okay to drink.

Learning 不要冰块。 (*Bùyào bīng kuài*) is not a total waste, though. The phrase 不要 (*bùyào*) is very important. As we said before, it means "to not want." You can replace the word 冰块 (*bīng kuài*) with any noun that you don't want. Let's say you don't want "hot water" (热水, *rè shuǐ*). You can say 不要热水, *Bùyào rè shuǐ* ("I don't want hot water"). Or, even more useful, if you don't want something that someone is selling you, you can simply say 不要 (*Bùyào*). In tourist spots, you will often be accosted by people selling things: trinkets, postcards, Chairman Mao's Collected Sayings, whatever. You can just give these people a firm 不要 (*bùyào*). In fact, this might become your most used phrase.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

In China, water doesn't always mean water! The first phrase in today's lesson might get you the water you want. But there might also be some confusion. Chinese people use the word 水, *shuǐ* (which literally means "water") to mean any kind of drink. If you say the phrase above (请给我一瓶水。 , *Qǐng gěi wǒ yī píng shuǐ*), the response may be 什么水? (*Shénme shuǐ?*) This literally means "What water?" but the person saying it means "What kind of drink?" (This also makes for some interesting exchanges with Chinese people in English. They will ask, in English, "Do you want to drink water?" If you say yes, they will then ask, "What do you want to drink?" For them, "Do you want to drink water?" means "Do you want a drink?") To specify that you want water, you may need to say the Chinese word for "spring water" or "mineral water." This is 矿泉水 (*kuàngquánshuǐ*). 矿 (*Kuàng*) means "ore" or "mineral" and 泉 (*quán*) means "spring." After they ask you 什么水 (*Shénme shuǐ?*), you can answer 矿泉水 (*Kuàngquánshuǐ*). You could also say from the beginning,

请给我一瓶矿泉水。 , *Qǐng gěi wǒ yīpíng kuàngquánshuǐ* ("Please give me one bottle of spring water"). If you'd rather drink something else, then say one of these: 绿茶, *lǜchá* ("green tea"), 红茶, *hóngchá* (literally, "red tea," but in the West it's often called "black tea;" this is usually sweeter than the *lǜchá*), or 可乐, *kělè* ("cola").

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #42

Saying No

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

42

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 不对。
2. 不行。
3. 不。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 不對。
2. 不行。
3. 不。

PINYIN

1. Bù duì.
2. Bù xíng.
3. Bù.

ENGLISH

1. Not correct. Wrong.
2. Not okay.

CONT'D OVER

3. No.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
不	不	bù	(negative prefix)
对	對	duì	correct
她	她	tā	she, her
说	說	shuō	to say, to speak
你	你	nǐ	you

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我不认识他。 Wǒ bù rènshi tā. I don't know him.	对，我是美国人。 Duì, wǒ shì Měiguórén. Yes, I am American.
她是谁？ Tā shì shéi? Who is she?	请再说一遍。 Qǐng zài shuō yī biàn. Please, say it again.
是你吗？ Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

No means no, except when it doesn't (see Quick Tip #2). Today's lesson is a simple review of how to say something is not right or an action is not okay. Chinese people rarely use the word 不 (*bù*) by itself in response to anything other people say. As we have seen in other lessons, they often combine 不 (*bù*) with the verb or adjective from the question they are answering. Today's phrases both use 不 (*bù*). We use 不对 (*bùduì*) to indicate that something is not correct, there is a problem with logic, or the facts are just not right. 不行 (*Bùxíng*) doesn't make a factual judgment; it expresses subjective disapproval.

Duì means "correct." Thus, 不对 (*bùduì*) means "not correct" or "wrong." When saying this phrase, you need to change 不 (*bù*) into a second tone. 不 (*Bù*) always becomes a second tone when it precedes a fourth tone. We can use 不对 (*bùduì*) by itself to contradict another person's statement, or we can use it to talk about the correctness of something else in a sentence. You could say 他说的不对。 (*Tā shuō de bùduì*), which means "What he says is wrong." (他 (*tā*) means "he" and 说 (*shuō*) means "to speak." 的 (*de*) is the possessive particle. Here it signifies that you are talking about the things she said. 说的 (*Shuōde*) is really short for 说的话 (*shuō de huà*). 话 (*Huà*) means "speech." 他说的话 (*Tā shuō de huà*) means "the speech he said." You can also use *bùduì* in a sentence such as 这个句子不对。 (*Zhège jùzi bùduì*). This means "This sentence is wrong." (*Zhège* means "this." *Jùzi* means "sentence.")

We use 不行 (*Bùxíng*) to say that an action is not allowed, is impossible, or is morally wrong. 行 (*Xíng*) means "okay." Saying 不行 (*bùxíng*) says that something is "not okay." A guard at an embassy, after being asked if people can enter, may hold up his hand and say 不行 (*bùxíng*). This means you are not allowed to go in. A man kissing a girl in a public area might stop her and say 不行 (*Bùxíng*). Perhaps he is already late for something, perhaps he feels uncomfortable around so many people, or maybe there's some other reason; either way, 不行 (*bùxíng*) says that he thinks that what is happening is "not okay."

You can use 不行 (*bùxíng*) as part of a sentence to express disapproval of something. If you say to a friend, 你这样不行。 (*Nǐ zhèyàng bù xíng*), it means "It's not okay for you to be like this," or "What you're doing is wrong." 你 (*nǐ*) means "you." 样 (*yàng*) means "way" or "kind." Or your mom might say (if she were Chinese), 你的衣服不行。 (*Nǐ de yīfu bù xíng*). This means "Your clothes are not okay." 衣服 (*yīfu*) means "clothes."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

You can use 行 (*Xíng*) by itself to indicate agreement with somebody's plan. If someone says they want to go to the zoo or that they're going to leave before you, you can say *Xíng* to indicate that you think that plan is okay. This is probably one of the most common ways of expressing agreement, and it is used all the time.

Another common usage of 行 (*xíng*) is in 还行 (*háixíng*). 还 *Hái* means "still" or "yet." People often use 还行 (*háixíng*) to mean "just okay," "still okay," "fine," or "good enough." Someone who is told that they speak Chinese or paint very well might modestly respond, 还行 (*háixíng*). This means that they are "just okay," but not great. It also contains the implied meaning that they believe they could be better. 还行 (*háixíng*) is also a common response when somebody asks how someone or something is doing. When asked about their business or their little sister, someone might answer, 还行 (*háixíng*). This means "fine," or "things are okay."

Quick Tip #2

We've touched on this before, but it's worth bringing up again: It is Chinese etiquette to refuse gifts when they are offered, especially spontaneous things, like food. Many people will turn down any offerings you make at least once or twice. You should be prepared to offer a few times and perhaps insist. This will also come up if you are offering to pay for other people. People will refuse to let you pay for even the smallest things, like bus rides. They will force their one *yuan* fare on you. This can be equally true of taxi fares. Just as Chinese people don't often split checks, they will also refuse to let you pay for part of the taxi ride. They will probably let you pay only if you are faster than them at pulling out your money. (The taxi driver generally takes the first handful of money that is waved in front of his face.)

When you are giving the cabbie money, a companion might yell from the back seat, 不行 (*Bùxíng!*) 不行 (*Bùxíng!*) He/She doesn't want you to pay for him/her. To this you can respond, 没事 (*Méishì*). ("No problem.") These phrases also work the other way around. When confronted with a gift that is simply too generous, or it's the fifth time in a row a friend has paid the cab fare, you can complain, 不行 (*Bùxíng!*) This means you can't possibly accept this gift or let them continue paying for cab rides.

Because Chinese etiquette often requires that people politely refuse gifts, Chinese people will insist that you take things they offer you. They will not take no for an answer. They believe you are refusing proffered food, money, etc., out of politeness, and the only way for them to overcome this is to keep insisting that you take the item until you relent. Most of the time, you may find it more convenient just to accept small things (such as food) even if you don't particularly want it. (In China, there is generally very little understanding of things like vegetarianism, but you might find that they accept and are not surprised by an intolerance of chili peppers.) Take a nibble, smile, and then discretely dispose of it later. You should beware, though, that because they expect you to refuse, people may sometimes offer you something they don't really want to give you. People who don't have much money may offer to buy you train or plane tickets, pay for dinner, or treat you to other expensive events. In these situations, it's important that you refuse the gift at least a few times. You don't want to take something that they didn't expect you to accept. But if they continue to insist, they are probably just being very generous. Chinese people put a lot of stock in relationships and friendships. They will go out of their way to do other people favors, and sacrifice much to preserve and strengthen these relationships. Perhaps we shouldn't think this is so weird.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #43

English Info Guide

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

43

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 有英语版吗?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 有英語版嗎?

PINYIN

1. Yǒu Yīngyǔ bǎn ma?

ENGLISH

1. Do you have an English copy?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
有	有	yǒu	to have
英语	英語	Yīngyǔ	English
版	版	bǎn	edition

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这儿有图书馆吗? Zhèr yǒu túshūguǎn ma? Is there a library around here?	学英语很难。 Xué yīngyǔ hěn nán. Studying English is really difficult.
有法语版吗? Yǒu fǎyǔ bǎn ma? Is there a French edition?	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Chinese people always emphasize their country's history. It comes up all the time in everyday speech. You might well hear a middle-aged man on the street remarking to a woman, "Well, how do you expect a country with a five thousand year long history to be so easily brought together?" History and population size are two topics that are always on the tip of everyone's tongue, and people use them to explain almost any situation in China. Chinese people live in and for their history. Much of the language references historical events and stories. If you watch any TV or movies, you will notice that most television shows and many movies take place at some time in China's past. In fact, most of the television shows that take place in the present day are imported from Korea or Japan (mostly Korea).

If you want to understand China at all, you need to come briefed on its history. Knowing the background story for the society you are seeing will make you a lot more open and sensitive to its differences. Understanding how the Chinese got to where they are is the first step in making sense of the way they live.

This is also important for appreciating the tourist spots you're sure to hit up. Yeah, the Great Wall has a heck of a view, and no one needs history to go shopping in Shanghai (though you could probably get the same stuff off the Internet), but many of China's great sites don't really make sense until you understand what happened there or how that place came to be. (Though, again, China is not short on natural wonders that require no explaining.) The Forbidden City is just a bunch of red buildings and walls until you've read enough about

eunuchs, emperors, and empresses to make it a stage, a lively setting of scintillating and grand stories. (The Forbidden City is one site that perhaps is almost impossible for a foreigner to enjoy as much as a Chinese person. Being immersed in imperial television dramas and folklore gives a background that you almost certainly can't substitute.) Tian'anmen Square is the world's largest open air meeting place, and was the setting for one of the most important meetings in China's recent history: the Tian'anmen Square Protests in 1989. The site is much more breath-taking when you can imagine today's tourists replaced by thousands of protesters huddled in the square making competing speeches and later listening to machine gun fire come down the streets before tanks rolled in. Peking University probably doesn't mean too much to most Westerners, but it's the most prestigious university in a nation that traditionally puts education above all else. It was a fermentation point for the May 4th and June 4th movements, and a place where important figures such as Hu Shi and Chen Duxiu gathered and taught. Don't know what we're talking about? Get yourself to Wikipedia.

After Wikipedia, it's probably a good idea to get yourself a book about China. It doesn't matter what time period you are interested in; Chinese history goes back five thousand years, and we would contend that China has a richer and more complex history than any other country in the world. Read a little, and we're sure you'll agree. (How one compares the richness of history is up for debate and belies the fact that the previous statement was rather silly.)

But you can't possibly learn everything there is to know. Nor can you remember everything you've learned and reliably put particular sites in context. That's why you may find it very helpful to pick up whatever literature is available at the destinations you choose to visit.

Today's phrase is 有英语版吗? (*Yǒu yīngyǔ bǎn ma?*). This means "Do you have an English copy?" 有 (*Yǒu*) is "to have," 英语 (*yīngyǔ*) means "English," 版 (*bǎn*) means "edition," and 吗 (*ma*) is that little particle that turns statements into questions. Putting all these together, we get "Have English edition?" As usual, we don't have to give the sentence a subject (we don't have to say "you") because it should be obvious from context what we are talking about. One thing you do need to pay attention to in this sentence is the change of tones on *yīngyǔ*. *Yǔ* becomes a second tone because it precedes the third tone in 版 (*bǎn*).

If you're more comfortable in another language, or just curious, you can ask about another language by simply replacing the word 英语 (*yīngyǔ*) with the word for a different language. "Japanese" is 日语 (*rìyǔ*). If we want to ask for a Japanese version of a guidebook (or anything else), we can say 有日语版吗? (*Yǒu rìyǔ bǎn ma?*). This substitution works for any language. There is a list of languages in Quick Tip #2 at the end of this write-up.

The answer to your question will either be 有, *Yǒu* ("We have one") or 没有 *Méiyǒu* ("We do

not have any"). Almost all tourist sites will have some English introduction. At the very least they will have a sign that has both English and Chinese. Though often the English on these signs and pamphlets is confusing (and hilarious).

Only the largest tourist sites have printed materials in many different languages in addition to English, and you may find that Japanese and Korean materials are available more often than Western languages other than English. Many tourist sites will also have tour guides whom you can employ for a small (and often negotiable) fee. Though, if you are lucky, you will run into a college student on break who will try their best to explain the significance of the things around you.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Don't get scammed! Beware of fake Chinese college students. We've talked a couple of times about how you, as a foreigner, may be approached by Chinese people while walking around China. One type of Chinese people you may run into at tourist spots are young people claiming to be "Mongolian art students." (They are referring to Inner Mongolia, a province in Northern China. They may also say they are from any number of other places, but Mongolia still seems to have the most representatives.) These "students" will ask you if you are interested in art. Do you want to see an exhibit of art they and their classmates have done? Don't pay attention to them, and don't go with them. They are not art students, and they are probably not from Inner Mongolia. It is just a scam used to sell cheap art to foreigners at exaggerated prices. The pictures they will show you are mass-produced art made by who-knows-who. Buying this art does not help the burgeoning careers of bright-eyed, struggling artists, and you will be paying much more than you would in any other part of town. The only people you benefit are the ringleaders who put these operations together. Some of the things they show you will certainly be pretty, but they are by no means unique. Going to a section of town that specializes in art or trinkets will give you access to the exact same paintings at a much reduced price.

Quick Tip #2

Chinese follows a simple pattern for the naming of many foreign countries: one syllable that sounds like the name of that country in the country's native language followed by the character *guó* ("country" or "state").

For Example:

1. "Germany"
德国 *Déguó*
2. "England"
英国 *Yīngguó*
3. "France"
法国 *Fǎguó*
4. "Korea"
韩国 *Hánguó*
5. "Russia"
俄国
E2guó

The Chinese for the national language of these countries just cuts off the *guó* and replaces it with *yǔ* ("language").

For Example:

1. German
德语 *Déyǔ*
2. English
英语
Yīngyǔ
3. French
法语
Fǎyǔ

4. Korean
韩语
Hányǔ

5. Russian
俄语
E2yǔ

Other countries have their name turned into Chinese characters that should mimic the pronunciation of the country in its native language.

For Example:

1. Spain
西班牙 *Xībānyá*
2. Portugal
葡萄牙 *Pútáoyá*
3. Italy
意大利 *Yidàlì*

You just add *yǔ* onto the end of some countries' names to say their language.

For Example:

1. Spanish
西班牙语 *Xībānyáyǔ*
2. Portuguese
葡萄牙语 *Pútáoyáyǔ*
3. Italian
意大利语 *Yidàlìyǔ*

The word for "Arabic" also follows this pattern:

Arabic

阿拉伯语

Alābóyǔ

Japan is a special case. The Japanese people use Chinese characters. So Chinese just uses the Chinese pronunciation of those characters for Japanese place names:

Japan

日本

Rìběn

The word for "Japanese" drops the 本 (*běn*) and adds 语 (*yǔ*):

Japanese

日语

Rìyǔ

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #44

Business Etiquette

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

44

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我先走了。
2. 辛苦了。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我先走了。
2. 辛苦了。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ xiān zǒu le.
2. Xīn kǔ le.

ENGLISH

1. I'm leaving first.
2. You work hard.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
我	我	wǒ	I, me

走	走	zǒu	walk
辛苦	辛苦	xīnkǔ	hard, hard work
很	很	hěn	very
要	要	yào	to want
她	她	tā	she, her

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	我们走吧。 Wǒmen zǒu ba. Let's go.
辛苦你了。 Xīnkǔ nǐ le. You've worked hard.	今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.
他要一张纸。 Tā yào yī zhāng zhǐ. He wants a piece of paper.	她是谁? Tā shì shéi? Who is she?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Yes, yes, we know, we know. Business before pleasure. And thus, we come to today's phrases. These phrases are intended to grease the wheels of your efficient Chinese business machine. (Yes, that was said tongue-in-cheek.) Really, though, these will make your coworkers smile, even as you're skipping out early.

我先走了。(Wǒ xiān zǒu le.) This literally means "I first go." 我 (Wǒ) means "I" or "me." 先

(*Xiān*) means "first." 走 (*Zǒu*) means "to walk" or "to go." We also often use 走 (*Zǒu*) to mean "to leave." Thus, 我先走了。 (*Wǒ xiān zǒu le.*) means "I'm leaving first."

The 了 (*le*) in this sentence is the change-of-situation 了 (*le*) (as opposed to the past tense *le*). Here, 了 (*le*) indicates that the situation has changed from its previous configuration. You were all working together, but now you need to go. In some ways, this softens the sentence. It indicates that you are leaving because the situation has changed (e.g., your coworkers got added work, your wife called, etc.) not because you originally planned to leave before everyone else.

Thus, this phrase does not have the harshness of the English "I'm leaving first." In English, it sounds kind of like gloating or like a demand. In Chinese, it is merely recognition of circumstances outside of anyone's control. In some ways, it expresses sympathy with the other people who, through no fault of their own, have to stay longer or regret that you have to leave your friends with whom you were having such a great time.

辛苦了。 (*Xīnkǔ le.*) is another phrase we use in relation to work. 辛苦 (*Xīnkǔ*) means "hard" or "work hard." We can use it in reference to work, but it can also talk about other kinds of hardships. 他的生活很辛苦。 (*Tā de shēnghuǒ hěn xīnkǔ.*) means "Her life is very hard." [他 (*Tā*) means "he." 的 (*De*) is the possessive particle. 生活 (*Shēnghuǒ*) means "life." 很 (*Hěn*) means "very."] *Le* in 辛苦 (*Xīnkǔ le.*) is the past tense *le*. It indicates that 辛苦了。 (*Xīnkǔ le.*) is referring to the past.

One use of 辛苦了。 (*Xīnkǔ le.*) is a congratulation on a job well done. If you and another person have been working hard all day, when you finish, as you sit down and wipe the sweat off your brow, you can say, 辛苦了。 (*Xīnkǔ le.*) and smile. The appropriate response to this is to smile back and also say 辛苦了。 (*Xīnkǔ le*). Hopefully, you also have cold beers you can clink. This usage is a celebration of a completed job.

A very similar usage is for when talking to someone who has just completed a task that you were not part of, especially when that task benefitted you. Then you say 辛苦了。 (*Xīnkǔ le*). to them and it is recognizing and showing appreciation for their hard work. These first two phrases are of great importance when working with other people.

One last usage is in the sense of the other example sentence we gave, 他的生活很辛苦。 (*Tā de shēnghuǒ hěn xīnkǔ*). And when somebody tells you about a particularly hard experience they've had, you can show your sympathy by saying, 辛苦了。 (*Xīnkǔ le*).

Using these phrases can do a lot towards smoothing out the relationships at work, which we all know, makes all the difference.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Networking in China: how good are your relations? Speaking of relationships, it's not what you know, but who you know. If this phrase originates in the West, it is doubly true in China. Few business deals, from finding good jobs, to sales, to taking out a loan, happen without some sort of 关系 (*guānxi*). *Guānxi* means "relationship" or "connection." In the West, everything is based on rules. Our government and society is based on a social contract between people and with the government. If the contract is broken, there are certain stipulated penalties. It's not actually as simple as this, but the social contract is the basis.

China is based on relationships. For a long time the most sacred part of political and social doctrine was the "four bonds" emphasized by Confucian philosophers. These dictated the relationship of superiority and inferiority between father and son, emperor and minister, husband and wife, and son and mother. (There is debate as to how much the last hierarchy actually worked out in real life. Mothers tend to be pretty influential on their sons no matter what culture you are in.) Within these hierarchies, the superior party could do whatever he wanted to the inferiors. People's lives were based on trying to fill their spots within these relationships, not playing by some set of all-encompassing rules.

An old and famous Confucian story tells of Confucius's visit to a king. The king wanted to tell Confucius how morally upright the people in his kingdom were. "Look," he said, "a man committed a crime, but his son is such a good person that he reported on his father."

"Where I come from," Confucius replied, "good people do not betray their fathers."

This demonstrates the importance of relationships in traditional society; they completely override any other rules within the society.

This use of relationships still plays a large part in Chinese society. Chinese people will spend inordinate amounts of time doing favors for friends. Requesting and doing favors is a normal and important part of friendship.

Also, whenever Chinese people need to do anything, they will immediately turn to their *guanxi*. A person who wants to take out a small loan will not call up banks directly; they will not trust the system to give them what they want. Rather, they will try to figure out if they or any of their friends have any connections to a bank. Perhaps a friend works at a bank. They are many, many more times comfortable having their friend help them get a loan than they are approaching the bank as a stranger.

The prominent roles of relationships in Chinese society are important to remember when you are doing business in China.

Quick Tip #2

The phrase 我先走了。(Wǒ xiān zǒu le.) is not appropriate for exiting a conversation. Use it to leave a group when everyone is concerned with their own matters (like at work). It brings attention to your leaving, but it is just a passing matter. If you need to excuse yourself from a more intimate setting, talking with one other person or a very small group perhaps, it is better to say, 我要走了。(Wǒ yào zǒu le.) This means "I have to go." 要 (Yào) means "going to" or "have to." This phrase tells the people you are talking with that you have other things you must attend to, that you have to leave now. It's also nice to add 不好意思, bùhǎo yìsi ("sorry") in front of it.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #45

I Am a Vegetarian

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

45

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我是素食主义者。
2. 我不吃肉。
3. 我是佛教。
4. 可以不放肉吗？

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我是素食主義者。
2. 我不吃肉。
3. 我是佛教。
4. 可以不放肉嗎？

PINYIN

1. Wǒ shì sùshízhǔyìzhě.
2. Wǒ bù chī ròu.
3. Wǒ shì fójiào.
4. Kěyǐ bù fàng ròu ma?

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I am vegetarian.
2. I don't eat meat.
3. I am Buddhist.
4. Can you not add meat?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
我	我	wǒ	I, me
是	是	shì	to be
不	不	bù	(negative prefix)
吃	吃	chī	to eat
肉	肉	ròu	meat
佛教	佛教	fójiào	Buddhism
素食主义者	素食主義者	sùshízhǔyìzhě	vegetarian

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	我是大学生。 Wǒ shì dà xué sheng. I am a college student.
你是我最喜欢的作家！ Nǐ shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de zuòjiā! You are my favorite author!	是你吗？ Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?

我不认识他。 Wǒ bù rènshi tā. I don't know him.	要吃什么? Yào chī shénme? What do you want to eat?
孩子饿了，喂他吃饭吧。 Háizi è le, wèi tā chīfàn ba. The child is hungry. How about feeding him?	佛教起源于印度。 fó jiāo qǐ yuán yú yìn dù 。 Buddhism originated in India.
我是素食主义者。 Wǒ shì sùshízhǔyìzhě. I am a vegetarian.	

GRAMMAR

Language Expansion

We're sure some of you out there are vegetarians. While most people don't need to know the phrases in this lesson, they would seem to be very useful for those of us out there who don't eat meat. In fact, generally these phrases are not useful. We thought it would be a good idea to teach them to you. They might help you keep up the good fight and advance the vegetarian cause, but you may also find that they don't affect the composition of the food you are served very much.

Vegetarianism in China is very rare. Generally, it is limited to devout followers of Buddhism (thus one of today's phrases). All other people are expected to eat meat. The idea of not eating meat at all because of personal beliefs not connected with Buddhism just doesn't exist in most of Chinese society. Just as most Chinese people have never met a foreigner, they've also never met a vegetarian. They might know people who don't like to eat a lot of meat or don't like very fatty meat, but they don't know anyone who steadfastly refuses to eat meat. Thus, your iron rule against meat may be met with confusion. They will treat you as they treat their friends who don't like meat: "This only has a little meat, try it." "This is fish, it tastes different. You'll like it." While Chinese people have traditionally cooked many dishes without

meat (meat was long considered a luxury and was usually unavailable to most people), you may find that much of the food you get in restaurants has meat in it; possibly because of this view of meat as a luxury. Tofu is often flavored with pork. (As a side note, this may make tofu more appealing to people who would never normally eat it in their home country. You really should try some. We Westerners just don't understand how to cook tofu.) Greens have dried fish layered on top of them, ground meat mixed in, or are fried in pig grease. Every Chinese menu has a vegetable section, usually at the back of the menu just before drinks. However, just because the dish has vegetables doesn't mean it's absolutely meat free. Many very good vegetarians just give up on trying to keep up their habits in China. While they don't intentionally order meat, they accept that it's going to get into their digestive tract sometimes and it's not their fault for not wanting to live solely on McDonald's french fries. Some even try meat dishes occasionally. Hey, your time in China is limited; you might want to see what's out there.

Hopefully though, today's phrases will help you keep yourself more meat free.

The most basic phrase is 我是素食主义者, *Wǒ shì sùshízhǔyìzhě*. This means "I am vegetarian." 我, *Wǒ* means "I" or "me." 是, *Shì* is "to be." 素, *sù* means "vegetable." 食, *Shí* means "to eat" or "food." 主义, *zhǔyì* means "-ism." We place 主义, *zhǔyì* after many words to talk about different schools of thought. 资本, *Zīběn* means "capital" (as in money). 资本主义, *Zīběnzhǔyì* means "capitalism." 共产主义, *gòngchǎnzhǔyì* is "communism." (We can loosely translate 共产, *gòngchǎn* as "sharing products.") Thus, 素食主义, *sùshízhǔyì* literally means "eating vegetables-ism," which makes it the word for "vegetarianism." (Or, in our sentence, "vegetarian.")

You may pronounce this phrase perfectly, clearly saying "I am vegetarian." and the restaurant staff might still look at you confused. It's possible they've never even heard this word before. It's the same as you talking about the national pledge of allegiance in schools and someone saying, "I'm antidisestablishmentarian." (Bonus points to anyone who understands this.) The wait staff in the restaurant may have heard the word 素食主义, *sùshízhǔyì* before, but they don't necessarily know exactly what it entails.

The first step in clearing this up is to add a second sentence explaining your beliefs: 我不吃肉。 *Wǒ bù chī ròu*. ("I don't eat meat.") 我, *Wǒ* is "I" or "me." 不, *Bù* means "no." 吃, *Chī* is "to eat." 肉, *Ròu* means "meat." This is pretty straightforward, but as we explained before, the full force of your meaning may still not be clear. They may believe that you are saying that you just don't like meat and they will still treat your belief as a preference and not a hard, fast rule.

The next thing you may want to try is to put your view in a Chinese context. You can say,

我是佛教徒。 *Wǒ shì fójiàotú.* ("I am Buddhist.") 佛教, *fójiào* means "Buddhism." Very devout Buddhists (usually monks and nuns) do not eat any meat at all. Buddhism has a long history in China and the Chinese understand its precepts (to varying degrees). They will be used to the idea that Buddhists cannot eat meat. But devout Buddhists also do not eat eggs, hot pepper, garlic, onions, or generally anything strong-tasting. They do this to keep from stimulating their senses. The wait staff may find it very strange when you say you are Buddhist and then order stir-fried spinach with garlic and a spicy tofu.

As we mentioned, tofu in China is often flavored with meat. That spicy tofu you order may come with a generous helping of ground pork. We at SurvivalPhrases.com think that tofu is actually quite delicious with pork, but you might not agree. In this case, you'll want to use today's last phrase: 可以不放肉吗? *Kěyǐ bùfàng ròu ma?* ("Can you not add meat?") 可以, *Kěyǐ* means "can" or "to be allowed to." 放, *Fàng* means "to put." 吗, *Ma* makes the statement a question. The sentence is literally "Can no put meat?" There are two points to pay attention to for pronunciation. First, we pronounce the 可, *kě* in 可以, *kěyǐ* as a second tone because it precedes a third tone. Then we change the 不, *bù* to a second tone as well because it comes before a fourth tone. This sentence is the clearest direction you can give the staff. If you speak clearly, there should be no problem and you should get a meatless dish. But Chinese restaurants are not always particularly well organized (though this issue is certainly not limited to Chinese restaurants alone). You may find yourself confronted with the meat that you specifically asked not to have. If this happens, you generally only have to call over your server and they will recognize the mistake and rush to get you a new order, yelling things at the cooks from across the restaurant.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

This tip is not just for vegetarians: China has many wonderful fruits available cheaply from stands all over the place. If you see someone selling fruit, just go over and point at what you want. Be sure to ask 多少钱? *Duōshǎo qián?* ("How much does it cost?") The vendor will tell you the price per 斤, *jīn*. All fruit is sold by weight. Some big supermarkets will prepackage fruit and have a price per package, but otherwise it's always done by weight. (Interestingly, this is true for eggs, too.) The fruit sold on the street is often better and cheaper than the fruit in the supermarkets. The vendor will say something to you like 五块一斤。 *Wǔ kuài yī jīn*. This means "Five yuan per jin." (五, *Wǔ* is "five," 块, *kuài* is the casual word for the *yuan*, and 一, *yī* is "one.")

yī is "one.") The *jīn* is a traditional unit of weight in China. In modern China, it has been standardized as 500 grams. While China generally uses metric measurements for most things, all food is still sold by the *jīn*. The scales, however, only have grams and kilograms on them. You may then notice that the vendor points to a scale reading 1.5 kilograms and says, 三斤, *Sān jīn*. ("Three *jīn*.") Vendors will punch the price they have told you into their electric scales twice, because the scale only calculates price in kilograms.

The use of pesticides in China is much less regulated than it is in the West, so before you eat any fruit in China you must wash it. How much you wash it is up to you. Some people just give fruit a quick rinse; some will scrub every individual cherry.

Quick Tip #2

Some people, usually for religious reasons, may not eat certain kinds of meat. This is not a new concept for some Chinese people. There are substantial Hui and Uighur populations in the northwest and in Beijing. Both these races are traditionally Muslim and thus do not eat pork. Some Chinese people will be familiar with this practice and will understand if you say, 我不吃猪肉。 *Wǒ bù chī zhūròu*. ("I don't eat pork." 猪, *Zhū* means "pig.")

The way to say any kind of meat in Chinese is to just say the name of the animal followed by 肉, *ròu*. Some examples are:

猪肉, *Zhūròu* ("pork")

牛肉, *Niúròu* ("beef")

鸡肉, *Jīròu* ("chicken")

羊肉, *Yáng ròu* ("mutton")

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #46

Help!

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

46

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 救命啊!
2. 请打110。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 救命啊!
2. 請打110。

PINYIN

1. Jiù mìng a!
2. Qǐng dǎ yāoyāolíng.

ENGLISH

1. Help!
2. Please dial 110.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
啊	啊	a	(mood particle)

救命	救命	jiùmìng	help
请	請	qǐng	please
打	打	dǎ	to flag down

SAMPLE SENTENCES

哇，好多事情啊。 Wā, hǎo duō shìqíng a. Wow, so many things!	来人哪，救命！ Lái rén na, jiùmìng! Please come, help!
请帮我拿一下这个东西。 Qǐng bāng wǒ ná yíxià zhè ge dōngxi. Please hold this for me for a moment.	我打不到出租车。 Wǒ dǎ bù dào chūzūchē. I can't flag down a cab.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Make sure you pay attention to your belongings at all times. As a traveler, you are more vulnerable to theft than the average Chinese person is. First, you have no home, no people to help you, and are not fluent in the language. If you do lose something, you may find it causes you much more inconvenience than it would at home. Second, people will often be able to pick you out as a traveler. Travelers are more likely to have money and valuable things (such as cameras) and thus, thieves will target them.

Today's phrases are to help you if you get into a situation where you need help immediately. Except for one, these phrases are not just for encountering thieves, but you can use them in many different kinds of emergencies. You will almost certainly never have to use them, but it is probably best to pay special attention to practicing these phrases because, if you do need them, it is necessary that you be able to think of them quickly.

救命啊！ *Jiùmìng a!* literally means "Save life!" 救, *jiù* means "to save," 命, *mìng* means "life." We add 啊, *a* to the end to emphasize the urgency of what we are saying. Chinese people often add sounds onto the ends of their speech to emphasize certain feelings or tones. You can use this phrase in any emergency, from your friend falling into a river to a thief confronting you. 救命啊！ *Jiùmìng a!* means "Help!" and should be screamed at the top of your lungs. Anytime when it is not appropriate to scream, it is also not appropriate to say 救命啊！ *Jiùmìng a!* (Like if you are lost and need help finding your way, or if a box is too heavy to lift - unless that box is about to crush you.)

The next phrase is actually just one word: 小偷, *xiǎotōu*. 小, *xiǎo* means "little" and 偷, *tōu* means "to steal." 小偷, *xiǎotōu* is a noun meaning "thief." It refers to people who steal things through sneakiness. This does not include corporate criminals or muggers, or people who use force to steal. Muggers are very, very uncommon in China. Most theft occurs by way of trickery and quickness.

The third phrase is also one word: 警察, *jǐngchá*. 警, *jǐng* means "vigilant" and 察, *chá* means "to examine." Together they mean "police." You can shout both this and the previous word by themselves in emergencies.

The last phrase is 请打110。 *Qǐng dǎ yāoyāolíng*. This means "Please dial 110." 请, *qǐng* means "please." 打, *dǎ* literally means "to hit," but it is the verb we use in 打电话, *dǎ diànhuà* ("to make a phone call"). 110 is the number for the police. We discussed this in a previous write up, but it's worth mentioning again (especially since Michael made note of it). When talking about something's number, as in a phone number or the number of a bus, we use *yāo* for "one" instead of *yī*. This is to prevent confusion stemming from the similarity between *yī* and *qī* ("seven"). When saying this phrase, you should remember to pronounce 请, *qǐng* as a second tone because it precedes another third tone. Though, perhaps this will not be your most pressing concern at the time.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Safety in China: China is a very safe country. Very, very safe. Much safer than many Western countries. Many Chinese people are very concerned if they or someone close to them is going to America. The rate of violent crime is much higher in the US than it is in China, and

movies and television have not helped America's image in this aspect. (It is interesting to note that Chinese movies and television deal with violence and modern crime far less than American movies.) Michael tells the story of a young man he met his first time in China. The young man had heard Michael was from New York and told Michael that his girlfriend was going to New York to study. "Is she going to be safe?" he asked. "Is it true everyone there has guns?"

You may occasionally see violence in China. Fights are not totally uncommon, but almost all of these are because of anger, not because of any planned out criminal activity. It is extremely unlikely that you will ever be the target of violence. One reason for this is that the punishments for harming foreigners are much stricter than if the victim had been Chinese. The real danger in China is small-time thieves.

Quick Tip #2

Keeping your wallet in your back pocket or in the outside pocket of a bag is not the safest place for it. Michael says he has traveled all over with his wallet in his back pocket and never lost it, but he also reports that there have been two times that people have attempted to pick his pocket. However, he has noticed before they could succeed. Putting your wallet in your front pocket is much safer. It is most safe to carry some sort of traveler's pouch, something that you tuck into your pants or keep under your shirt.

As with anywhere, some places are more likely to have thieves than other places. On the bus and at the train station are the two most dangerous places for your belongings. In these places, the crush of people can make it hard to discern when somebody is prying your wallet from your pocket and when they are just trying to get past. Even Michael puts his wallet in his front pocket when he goes to the train station, and all his Chinese friends do the same. Many Chinese people will wear their backpacks on their chests when going through the train station so they can keep an eye on the pockets. The confusion and mass of people makes it hard to keep track of your stuff and it also makes the station hard to police. People can grab other people's bags and be off before anyone can do anything about it. You should consider any place where there are many people all moving around in a disorganized fashion somewhat unsafe. Especially places like shopping streets and outside malls, where people are likely to have extra cash.

Certain areas of China also have reputations for being more dangerous. Guangzhou is generally considered crime-ridden, though many people who live there or who have lived

there say it's not bad if you know how to take care of yourself. New Yorkers have often said the same of their hometown. Beijing is considered safe because it is the seat of the government. In China, the ability of the government to control the populace really diminishes the farther you get away from Beijing, though Shanghai is also considered very safe. Drug use and petty crimes are much more prevalent the farther you get from Beijing. Many smaller cities are less well policed and poorer and thus, are more likely to have pickpockets and thieves. A friend from Xinjiang (in the northwest) laughed at Michael as he walked around with his bag hanging over his lower back. "At home, we would never do that," she said. Drug use is most common in the northwest (near Pakistan, Afghanistan, and Inner Asia) and in the southwest (near Burma and Laos). The very isolated mountains between Tibet and Sichuan (in the west-center of China) are considered extremely unsafe because it is impossible to police them as they are huge and there are no people living there. Driving through these mountains, you run the risk of encountering bandits, which is one of the few instances where you might be exposed to violence.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #47

Medical Assistance in China

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

47

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 请叫救护车。
2. 请送我到医院。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 請叫救護車。
2. 請送我到醫院。

PINYIN

1. Qǐng jiào jiùhùchē.
2. Qǐng sòng wǒ dào yīyuàn.

ENGLISH

1. Please call an ambulance.
2. Please take me to the hospital.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
叫	叫	jiào	to call

SAMPLE SENTENCES

今年，我妹妹又出了一张专辑，叫《月光》。

Jīnnián, wǒ mèimèi yòu chū le yìzhāng zhuānjí,
jiào Yuèguāng.

My sister put out another album this year
called "Moonlight."

从这边到那边要多久？

Cóng zhèbian dào nàbian yào duōjiǔ?

How long does it take to go from here to
there?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

The last lesson was about emergencies, but we mostly focused on crime. Today, we're talking about medical emergencies. The most important part of today's lesson is probably the emergency numbers (listed in Quick Tip #1) but memorizing today's phrases might be very helpful, or possibly life saving.

Qǐng jiào jiùhùchē. means "Please call an ambulance." *Qǐng* means "please." *Jiào* means "to call" as in "Call him over." or "She calls me her big brother." *Jiù* means "to save," *hù* means "to protect," and together they mean "to give first aid." When combined with *chē* ("car"), the word becomes "ambulance" ("first aid car"). Thus, our whole sentence is "Please call an ambulance."

The next phrase is for when your medical condition is not quite so urgent that you need an ambulance; often a cab will do just fine. In this case, say to the cabbie, *Qǐng sòng wǒ dào yīyuàn.* *Sòng* means "to give" or "to deliver." It also means "to escort" or "to see somebody off." Here it is probably best translated as "to take." *Wǒ* means "I" or "me." *Qǐng sòng wǒ* literally means "please deliver me," but it can be translated as "please take me." *Dào* means "to arrive," but, as we've noted before, we can often translate it as "to." *Yī* means "doctor" and *yuàn* denotes a certain area, thus *yīyuàn* means "hospital." Our whole sentence is then: *Qǐng*

sòng wǒ dào yīyuàn. This means "Please take me to the hospital." This might also be a good thing to say to a Chinese friend (if you have to go to the hospital). A trip to the hospital is a lot easier to deal with if you have someone accompanying you, and a trip to a Chinese hospital is much easier if you have a Chinese person accompanying you. Don't feel bad about asking this favor. As we've said, Chinese people put a lot of stock in friendships and think nothing of doing favors. They believe that favors are just another part of being friends. (On second thought, their attitude towards favors may make them seem somewhat ungrateful when they ask favors of you. They think it's no big deal.) Chinese people consider going to the hospital alone a pitiable condition; it means you have no friends.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

There are a few different emergency numbers in China and they apply to different types of emergencies.

Police: 110

Fire: 119

Medical: 120

Traffic Accidents: 122

Now that the Olympics is coming, Beijing has simplified its system. You can call 110 for any kind of emergency and they will connect you to the proper department. It is still encouraged that you use the specialized numbers when possible to reduce stress on 110. At the present, Beijing only has sixteen lines for 110 and this can result in delays (nobody likes to wait on hold when they're bleeding from the head.) The city government says it plans to increase this number to thirty lines by July, 2008.

All other cities still use different numbers for different kinds of emergencies. It's probably a good idea to write these numbers down and keep them on you, though any guidebook you bring with you will probably have the numbers in it.

Quick Tip #2

There are some private medical practices in China, mostly in the countryside, but these people are rarely certified medical professionals. Private practitioners are usually just people with some medical knowledge who provide cheap care. Thus, some poor people opt for their services. You should go to a hospital.

The quality of hospital care in China varies to an extreme degree. The US embassy's website gives a terrifying review of Chinese hospitals. But it should be noted that this review was filed in 2001 and it is certainly not the norm. You can get good quality medical care in Chinese cities, but you have to pay for it. Some hospitals are of higher quality than others are; some have special VIP wards. (Good medical care is ridiculously expensive by Chinese standards, but it's cheaper than uninsured medical care in the West.) Standard medical care is only sparsely available in rural areas. Within cities, you will be automatically directed to the best hospitals because you are a foreigner. The Chinese government is aware of the poor conditions in many of its hospitals and does its best to keep foreigners out of these places. If you go to a normal hospital by yourself, no one will stop you from entering, but a cabbie or an ambulance will only take you to the best hospitals, the ones approved for foreigner use.

Normal hospitals in cities are not actually that bad. They may be a little dirty and you may notice a couple bloodstains that you feel should be cleaned up. However, if you are going for something minor (the flu, a stomach infection, an infected cut) you probably don't have much to worry about. Normal hospitals are also very cheap. Getting yourself checked out by a doctor costs something in the range of twenty *yuan*. But, if you are doing something that's going to involve a lot of blood, you probably want a high class hospital. In addition to more sanitary medical care, more expensive hospitals will also probably have people there who speak English. You will not find that in your average hospital.

Even in a very good hospital you should make sure they are using new disposable needles and razor blades. If there is any question about this, tell them that you will pay the cost for a new needle or blade. (They shouldn't be more than ten *yuan* each.) The most common complaints about Chinese hospitals, other than the pools of blood lying around, are that they often reuse needles, razor blades, and gloves. You probably have enough money that you can prevent them from using contaminated instruments.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #48

Explaining Symptoms in Chinese: Part I

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

48

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 药店在哪儿?
2. 西药在哪儿?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 藥店在哪兒?
2. 西藥在哪兒?

PINYIN

1. Yàodiàn zài nǎr?
2. Xīyào zài nǎr?

ENGLISH

1. Where is a pharmacy?
2. Where is the Western medicine?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
在	在	zài	at

哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where
这边	這邊	zhèbian	here, around here

SAMPLE SENTENCES

他在后面。 Tā zài hòumiàn. He is in the back.	您住在哪儿? Nín zhù zài nǎr? Where are you staying?
请这边走。 Qǐng zhèbiān zǒu. Please walk this way.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

For health's minor ups and downs, there is the pharmacy. You're much more likely to require the pharmacy's services than the hospital's. To locate a pharmacy, use today's phrase 药店在哪儿? Yàodiàn zài nǎr? This is a new use of our time-honored 在哪儿, zài nǎr, construction. 在, zài means "at" and 哪儿, nǎr means "where." 药店, yàodiàn means "pharmacy." 药, yào means "medicine" and 店, diàn means "store," so 药店, yàodiàn is literally, "medicine store." All together, our phrase means "Where is a pharmacy?"

Once you find a pharmacy you may notice that it is split into two sections, one for Western medicine, and one for Chinese medicine. The Chinese medicine section is generally larger. Chinese people believe very strongly in the effectiveness of Chinese medicine. (It should be noted that they're not alone. Many people all over the world tout the benefits of Chinese medicine.) When challenged on this front, Chinese people will tell you that Western medicine is stronger and thus more immediately effective, but it also harms your body. Chinese medicine, they say, works with your body, strengthening it and making you all around healthier. Western medicine just gets rid of your current ailment with no thought to your future

well-being. Thus, Western medicine is necessary sometimes for life-threatening conditions or when you need quick relief, but in general, Chinese medicine is better for you.

Interestingly, many pharmacists will decline to give their customers Western medicine if the customer says they have never taken Western medicine before. They are afraid the shock to the customer's system will be too great. Hospitals in China prescribe Chinese medicine (usually in conjunction with Western medicine). Some doctors will suggest Chinese medicine even in very serious circumstances. A female friend of Michael's told him that she was being given a Chinese medical regimen to treat a swollen mammary gland. The doctors told her that Chinese medicine is more advanced in this area than Western medicine. (It should be noted that many of the most ostentatious claims about Chinese medicine are made by practitioners at private hospitals, places notorious for trying to scam the nervous and ill-educated. Most people stick to the original argument we mentioned, that Chinese medicine improves your overall health, not that it is more effective.)

So does Chinese medicine work? Maybe. Probably at least sometimes. But you should stick to Western medicine, because then at least you know how to take it. Chinese medicine also has lots of complicated rules about when to take it and what other medicines should be taken with it. For example, some medicines are just for summer ailments, some are for certain kinds of coughs, but not others. Do not take Chinese medicines that your Chinese friends may suggest. They are unlikely to hurt you, but you will probably end up drinking all sorts of bitter things with no effect. If you do take Chinese medicine, it should be because a doctor prescribed it to you (a real doctor, not a quack at a private hospital). And in that case, you should have someone on hand who can understand exactly the doctor's instructions as to how the medicine should be taken.

"Chinese medicine" in Chinese is 中药, zhōngyào. 中, Zhōng means "middle" and is often used to mean "China" as China is 中国, Zhōngguó ("middle country"). Michael said in the lesson that "Western medicine" is 西药, xīyào. If you go to a pharmacy, and you plan to buy Western medicine, you are going to need to ask where the Western medicine is (as everything will be in Chinese). To do this you just say 西药在哪儿? Xīyào zài nǎr? This is the same structure as our previous sentence—a noun and then 在哪儿? zài nǎr. The sentence means "Where is the Western medicine?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Here are some helpful tips about medication in China. On second thought, it would be best if you could avoid going to the pharmacy all together. China's regulation of food and drugs is not very consistent and fake medicine is a reasonably large problem in China. Saying the medicine is fake does not mean it will harm you. We are not talking about accidentally ingesting poison; it's just that the medicine may have no effect. Fake means it just doesn't work. It's most likely that if you buy medicine in China, it will be real. If you do have to go to the pharmacy, there's no reason to think twice about it, but it's probably easier if you just bring medicine with you to China. (Some suggestions: anti-diarrheal medication and decongestant.) Medicine you bring with you is of a guaranteed standard and plus the directions for use are not in Chinese.

Quick Tip #2

When you do ask, 药店在哪儿? *Yàodiàn zài nǎr?*, one answer you will very likely get is 那边, *nàbian*. 那边, *nàbian* means "over there." 那, *nà* means "that," but it is part of *nàr*, which means "there." 边, *Bian* has no tone in this usage. We can use 边, *bian* as the suffix for a noun of locality. That's what the dictionary said. We don't really understand it either. Maybe the dictionary is so unclear because it's a concept that is hard to put into words and has to be explained using examples. The aforementioned *nàbian* indicates a general area "over there." If you said 这边, *zhèbian* (这, *zhè* means "this" and we use it in 这儿, *zhèr*, which means "here."), you would be indicating the area around you, as in "around here." 左边, *zuǒbian* means "on the left." 右边, *yòubian* means "on the right." (左, *zuǒ* means "left" and 右, *yòu* means "right.") We can attach 边, *bian* to any word indicating direction or placement and it makes a noun representing a general area. 东边, *dōngbian* means "the east." 外边, *wàibian* means "outside."

Upon entering a pharmacy, you may ask 西药在哪儿? *Xīyào zài nǎr?* The clerk will gesture with their hand and perhaps say, 那边, *nàbian* or 左边, *zuǒbian*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #49

Explaining Symptoms in Chinese: Part II

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

49

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我肚子疼。
2. 这儿疼。
3. 我发烧了。
4. 我拉肚子了。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我肚子疼。
2. 這兒疼。
3. 我發燒了。
4. 我拉肚子了。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ dùzi téng.
2. Zhèr téng.
3. Wǒ fāshāo le.
4. Wǒ lā dùzi le.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. My stomach hurts.
2. It hurts here.
3. I have a fever.
4. I have diarrhea.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
我	我	wǒ	I, me
这儿	這兒	zhèr	here
要	要	yào	to be going to, have to
肚子	肚子	dùzi	stomach
疼	疼	téng	to hurt
发烧	發燒	fāshāo	fever
拉肚子	拉肚子	lā dùzi	diarrhea

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	我住在这儿。 Wǒ zhù zài zhèr. I live here.
明天我们要去杭州。 Míngtiān wǒmen yào qù Hángzhōu. Tomorrow, we are going to Hangzhou.	他肚子疼。 Tā dùzi téng. He has a stomachache.

他的脚疼。
Tā de jiǎo téng.

His feet hurt.

我发烧了。
Wǒ fāshāo le.

I have a fever.

我有点儿拉肚子。
Wǒ yǒu diǎnr lādùzi.

I have a little diarrhea.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Nobody likes a whiner. Are you hot? Well, that's great. We all are. You telling us that you're hot isn't making us any cooler. Sometimes, though, it's necessary to complain, to tell people what's wrong with you. Let's say you've been throwing up for the last hour and a half and now you've gone to the hospital (this lesson's starting off on the gross foot already). It would be nice to be able to let the doctor know that your stomach hurts without having to wait until you actually vomit on his or her shoes. Or what if you have diarrhea and you go to the pharmacy? If your throat hurts or you're sneezing a lot, perhaps you can think of clever bits of sign language to communicate these ailments to the pharmacist. But diarrhea is something you'd rather be able to say in a low voice and be done with the whole matter.

The first thing we're going over is how to tell someone what part of you hurts. If you're bleeding or have a huge bruise, all you have to do is point and make a sad face, but sprains are rarely obvious at first glance and a headache, stomachache, or toothache never is. We'll start with the stomach. *Wǒ dùzi téng* means "My stomach hurts." *Wǒ* means "I" or "me," *dùzi* means "stomach," and *téng* is "to hurt." Notice that we don't need *de*, the possessive particle, here. When talking about parts of one's body, adding *de* is unnecessary, though it is not wrong to add it. If we wanted to, we could also make this sentence even simpler and get rid of *wǒ*. If you say *Dùzi téng*, it should be obvious whose stomach you are talking about. Whether or not you use *wǒ* is up to you.

If you want to talk about another part of the body, just replace *dùzi* in the previous sentence.

Tóu means "head." *Wǒ tóu téng* means "My head hurts." *Wǒ yá téng* means "My tooth hurts." (*Yá* is "tooth.") *Wǒ sǎngzi téng* means "My throat hurts." (*Sǎngzi* means "throat.") We can't possibly teach you the name for every part of the body, and you wouldn't be able to remember them anyway, so as a backup, you can just say *Zhèr téng*. *Zhèr* means "here." Saying *Zhèr téng* means "It hurts here." Obviously, you need to point to the area that hurts when you say this, but this can replace learning a lot of other words. You can also say *Wǒ zhèr téng* if you want.

Another non-obvious symptom is a fever. *Wǒ fāshāo le* means "I have a fever." *Fā* means "to send out." *Shāo* is a noun that means "fever." (We can also use it as a verb meaning "to roast" or "to burn.") We could translate these two put together as "the fever is coming out," but it's probably best not to think about it, just remember that *shāo* uses the verb *fā*. (This happens occasionally with *fā*. It is paired with nouns in a way that doesn't translate well into English.) Here, *le* is the change-of-situation *le*. It indicates that you having a fever is a new occurrence. If you've had a fever for quite some time now, then you don't have to use *le*.

We saved the best for last: "diarrhea." This is the greatest wrench in anyone's China travel plans. You should expect it and plan for it. We're not saying that everyday will be intestinal hell, but you're probably going to have to ward off one or two attacks to your digestive tract. The interesting thing is that you are not alone. It is not just because you are a Westerner that you may have stomach troubles in China. It seems that Chinese people often do, too. Perhaps it is the hot pepper and oil in the food, maybe Chinese restaurants are not very sanitary, or possibly, there is just too much drinking (we'll be getting to that). However, Chinese people seem to get mild diarrhea often and they are not ashamed to talk about it. We're not sure if it is because it is such a common occurrence that people are so open about it, but one's doings in the bathroom are frequently the topic of passing conversation and remarks in any kind of setting (yes, even at the dinner table, as Michael mentioned). This is not to say that these things are talked about in detail, but they are mentioned casually, just like any other ailment that might restrict what you can do (like your foot hurting).

The Chinese word for diarrhea is *lā dùzi*. This literally means "pull stomach." *Lā* means "to pull" and *dùzi* is "stomach." This is actually a euphemism. The technical way to say "diarrhea" is *xièdù*, but nobody says this (perhaps it is too descriptive). Make no mistake though, *lā dùzi* does not beat around the bush. It means "diarrhea," as opposed to other more vague sayings like *Wǒ dùzi téng* and *Wǒ dùzi bù shūfu*. ("My stomach is uncomfortable." *Bù* means "no" and *shūfu* means "comfortable.") The phrase you can use with the pharmacist is *Wǒ lā dùzi le*. ("I have diarrhea.") The *le* here is again the change-of-situation *le*. We are not expecting you to say this freely amongst other people, but we don't want you to be surprised if they ask. They are just making what they feel is a totally normal inquiry about your health, and the

information may be pertinent if you are traveling together. (Perhaps you'd like to call it a day and have a little quality time with your porcelain friend back at the hotel.)

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Do you know how to go drinking in China? While we're talking about manners and feeling ill, we might as well put in something about alcohol. Believe us, this has more to do with getting sick than you may think.

The Chinese drinking style is different from that in the West (or at least in America). To begin with, Chinese does not really have a word for "tipsy." "Drunk" in Chinese is *zuì*. *Wǒ hēzuì le* or *Wǒ zuì le* means "I am drunk." (Literally, "I drink drunk." or "I drunk." *Hē* means "to drink." The *le* is the change-of-situation *le*.) But *zuì* does not cover the wide range of feelings that the English "drunk" does. "Drunk" in English can be anywhere from a little red-faced to feeling extra boisterous to not knowing how to get home. The Chinese *zuì* just applies to the latter end of the spectrum. *Zuì* means you're feeling kind of dizzy, you might need to sit down for a while, you can't be held responsible for your actions, and you might need to find a bathroom soon. There is not a good Chinese word for the state in between the time when you start drinking and the time you are keeled-over on the sidewalk. There is a reason for this.

Most Chinese men drink. But there are some men and women who will tell you they don't drink. If you ask them why, they will tell you that being drunk doesn't feel good. They are talking about that room-spinning *zuì*. Drinking in China is often a communal activity and it is hard to avoid getting *zuì*. This is because in China, you do not control how much you drink. Everyone else decides for you. Whenever someone toasts you, you have to drink. There is almost no way to get out of it. (Though as a foreigner, you may be able to duck expectations sometimes.) Thus, everyone is expected to drink as much as the person who can drink the most (or who is least concerned with their health). The expectations of those around them and their need to reaffirm these relationships often force Chinese people to this state of *zuì*.

The flip side of this is that there is no shame in throwing up or passing out. In the West, throwing up usually carries with it the belief that you could not control yourself. You decided to drink too much, and now you are sick. Though your friends will help you and sympathize, they still think it is your fault. This is not true in China. Your throwing up is everyone else's fault.

They don't even think throwing up is a bad thing. You may often see two or three friends accompanying their fallen brother as he hurls outside the restaurant. The friends are laughing, clinking bottles, and slapping their disabled comrade on the back. Someone getting sick or passing out just shows that they're partying hard. People are often somewhat proud of the guy throwing up. He has given his all to do the drinking his friends asked him to do; he has sacrificed his personal health to affirm their closeness. Again, Chinese people really value relationships. It's kind of a nice, warm feeling. Though, it doesn't always taste so good the next day.

Quick Tip #2

Speaking of which, we might as well include one more phrase for today. *Wǒ yào tù le* means "I'm going to vomit." *Yào* means "going to" or "have to." *Tù* means "to vomit." *Le* is especially appropriate here because it signifies that you have been hit with the sudden uncontrollable need to purge your stomach, not that you have been slightly nauseous for some time. If you can come up with this phrase at the right time, you are a super hero and will be inducted into our All-Time Language Learner's Hall of Fame. We're betting you forget it when you need it, though.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #50

Certain Medicine in China

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

50

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我要止疼药。
2. 我要阿斯匹林。
3. 我要头疼药。
4. 我要感冒药。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我要止疼藥。
2. 我要阿斯匹林。
3. 我要頭疼藥。
4. 我要感冒藥。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ yào zhǐténgyào.
2. Wǒ yào āsīpīlín.
3. Wǒ yào tóuténgyào.
4. Wǒ yào gǎnmàoyào.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I want a painkiller.
2. I want aspirin.
3. I want headache medicine.
4. I want cold medicine.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
我	我	wǒ	I, me
要	要	yào	to want
药	藥	yào	medicine
止疼药	止疼藥	zhǐténgyào	painkiller
阿斯匹林	阿斯匹林	āsīpīlín	aspirin
过敏药	過敏藥	guòmǐnyào	allergy medicine
过敏	過敏	guòmǐn	allergy
头疼	頭疼	tóuténg	headache
感冒	感冒	gǎnmào	to have a cold

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	他要一张纸。 Tā yào yī zhāng zhǐ. He wants a piece of paper.
---	---

我不喜欢吃药。 Wǒ bù xǐhuan chīyào. I don't like to take medicine.	你有止疼药吗？ Nǐ yǒu zhǐténgyào ma? Do you have a painkiller?
给我一瓶阿斯匹林。 Gěi wǒ yī píng āsīpīlín. I'll have a bottle of aspirin.	吃一片过敏药。 Chī yī piàn guòmǐnyào. Take an allergy pill.
我对花生过敏。 Wǒ duì huāshēng guòmǐn. I'm allergic to peanuts.	我头疼。 Wǒ tóuténg. I have a headache.
他感冒了。 Tā gǎnmào le. He caught a cold.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

This is our last lesson about getting sick and having medical problems. This lesson is meant to help make your experience at the pharmacy easier. Michael says that when he goes to the pharmacy he usually just tells them his symptoms. He doesn't ask for a specific medicine. Hopefully, the vocabulary in this lesson and the last will cover anything you need taken care of at the pharmacy.

Zhǐténgyào means "painkiller." *Zhǐ* means "stop," *téng* means "pain," and *yào* means "medicine." Thus, *zhǐténgyào* literally means "stop pain medicine." If you want a painkiller, just go into a pharmacy, walk up to the counter, and say *Wǒ yào zhǐténgyào*. *Wǒ* means "I" or "me" and *yào* means "to want." (*Yào* has many different meanings. This one is a different character from the *yào* that means "medicine." The one we talked about in the last lesson was the same, but with a different usage.) There should be no other language requirements for this

transaction. (Except perhaps, understanding the price.) In some pharmacies, they will ask for money at the counter where you get the medicine, others will have a separate counter where you pay.

All of today's phrases follow this same pattern: *Wǒ yào* (medicine name). Chinese is like this. The grammar is very simple. Chinese is often regarded as a very difficult language to learn, but it's really only the very beginning that is difficult. Getting yourself acclimated to the tones and recognizing characters can be very hard, but once you're used to these systems, everything else is just about memorizing new vocabulary. Chinese is a language that definitely gets much easier as you go.

The next phrase Michael talked about was *Wǒ yào āsīpīlín*. ("I want aspirin.") The characters that we use for *āsīpīlín* all have their own meaning, but in this word, their meanings are unimportant. These characters were selected to mimic a certain sound. *Āsīpīlín* is meant to sound like the English "aspirin." There are many words in Chinese that are taken from other languages (though they only make up a small fraction of the Chinese lexicon). Chinese has a very rigid bank of sounds. It's not like English where we can use letters to make up sounds that we didn't have before, or just use the spelling from another language and force people to memorize the way to say it. In Chinese, there are only the sounds that exist in the already created characters. So when importing words, the Chinese have to use these characters to approximate the sound of the new word. We have seen an example of this with the word *kǎ* ("card"). This character is also part of another imported word *kǎlùlǐ* ("calorie"). The inflexibility of the Chinese sound bank can get frustrating when using Chinese for place names or names of people. All places in the world have a Chinese name (we talked about this in a previous lesson) and so do all famous people. To take one simple example, "Beckham" in Chinese is *bèikèhànmǔ*. You can see how this follows the English. Other names are not nearly as recognizable. How do you say Schwarzenegger? We forget, but it's not easy. Many of the sinicizations of names are not obvious and Chinese people often don't know famous people's names in English (or whatever language the name is in). Often, you may be confronted with somebody who is shocked that you don't know the particular celebrity they are talking about. "If only I could think of their name in English...", they will say scratching their head.

Let's skip to the fourth phrase Michael brought up and talk about a general formula last. *Wǒ yào guòmǐnyào*. means "I want allergy medicine." *Guòmǐn* means "allergic." Thus, *guòmǐnyào* is "allergy medicine."

All these examples are well and good, but you can't be expected to remember the name of every kind of medicine. This is why Michael presented you with a simple formula for saying medicines. All you have to say is the symptom or ailment you are suffering from plus *yào*. (As

we said, *yào* means "medicine.") In the lesson, Michael used the example "headache medicine." *Tóu* means "head." *Téng* means "pain." *Tóuténg* means "headache." "Headache medicine" is then *tóuténgyào*. If you want headache medicine you just say, *Wǒ yào tóuténgyào*. The same is true for "cold medicine." *Gǎnmào* means "cold" (the illness only). *Wǒ yào gǎnmàoyào*. means "I want cold medicine."

You can apply this formula to any symptom or disease. Saying the symptom plus *yào* will not always give you the word that Chinese people use for that kind of medicine, but it will get your point across and people should have no problem understanding you.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

The following is a list of symptoms. Remember that you can pair these with the word *yào* to get the appropriate medicine for these symptoms:

1. Dǎ pēnti: "to sneeze"
2. Késou: "to cough"
3. Bísāi: "nasal congestion"
4. Liú bíti: "to have a runny nose"
5. Biànmì: "constipation"
6. Yǎng: "itchy"
7. Zhǒng: "to swell"
8. Má: "numb"
9. Yūn: "dizzy"
10. Yùnnhuán: "seasick"
11. Yùnnchē: "carsick"
12. Fàngpì: "fart"

Quick Tip #2

Chinese people don't say, "Bless you" or "Gesundheit" or anything else special when people sneeze. Some places have little sayings that are said after people sneeze or rhymes about

good luck and long life, but most people will just ask you if you have a cold or offer you a tissue. There is no special significance attached to people sneezing (other than as a sign of illness) and Chinese people will think you're weird if you ask what you should say when somebody sneezes. You should ask this, it's an interesting and easy way to have conversation.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #51

Chinese Self Introduction

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 5 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

51

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我叫。
2. 我是。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我叫。
2. 我是。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ jiào .
2. Wǒ shì.

ENGLISH

1. I am called .
2. I am (This pattern is used with first names.)

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
我	我	wǒ	I, me

妹妹	妹妹	mèimei	younger sister
哥哥	哥哥	gégé	older brother
弟弟	弟弟	dìdi	younger brother
小	小	xiǎo	little, small
老	老	lǎo	old
小姐	小姐	xiǎojiě	Ms.
先生	先生	xiānshēng	Mr., sir
认识	認識	rènshi	to know, to recognize
高兴	高興	gāoxìng	happy
很	很	hěn	very
姓	姓	xìng	last name, family name
王	王	Wáng	king, a common family name
什么	甚麼	shénme	what
你	你	nǐ	you
是	是	shì	to be
叫	叫	jiào	to call
姐姐	姐姐	jiějie	older sister

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	你有妹妹吗？ Nǐ yǒu mèimei ma? Do you have a younger sister?
--	--

他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēgē. He is my older brother.	你弟弟好可爱哦！ Nǐ dìdì hǎo kě'ài o! Your little brother is so cute!
这儿有一个小卖部。 Zhèr yǒu yī ge xiǎomàibù. There is a small shop here.	我的狗很老。 wǒ de gǒu hěn lǎo. My dog is really old.
小姐，请给我菜单。 Xiǎojiě, qǐng gěi wǒ càidān. Miss, please give me the menu.	王先生，很高兴认识你。 Wáng Xiānshēng, hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ. Mr. Wang, nice to meet you.
你认识他吗？ Nǐ rènshi tā ma? Do you know him?	今天很高兴见到你。 Jīntiān hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ. Very happy to see you today.
DVD很便宜 DVDhěn piányi The DVD is very cheap.	您贵姓？ Nín guì xìng? What is your surname?
你好，我叫王国易。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Wáng Guóyì. Hello, I'm Wang Guoyi.	你说什么呢？ Nǐ shuō shénme ne? What did you say?
是你吗？ Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	我是大学生。 Wǒ shì dà xué sheng. I am a college student.
你是我最喜欢的作家！ Nǐ shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de zuòjiā! You are my favorite author!	是你吗？ Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?

今年，我妹妹又出了一张专辑，叫《月光》。

Jīnnián, wǒ mèimèi yòu chū le yìzhāng zhuānjí, jiào Yuèguāng.

My sister put out another album this year called "Moonlight."

你姐姐很漂亮。

Nǐ jiějie hěn piàoliang.

Your older sister is really beautiful.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Lots of people say Chinese people are rude, but actually most Chinese people are very friendly. The biggest problem is that almost all Chinese people cannot speak English. They assume there is no way for them to communicate with foreigners, so they tend to ignore you. (Or just stare.) Once you do break the ice, once you show that you're a real person, they will become incredibly welcoming. Sometimes they seem overly friendly. They will invite you out for dinner (and insist on paying), they will want your phone number and email address, they will want to know all about you and introduce you to all their friends. It is only the language barrier that turns these normally very friendly people into a mass of cold shoulders.

Today's lesson is the start of breaking the ice. Once the ice is broken you will find people are very patient with any problems you are having in Chinese, but first you have to get introduced. In the lesson, Michael went over two ways to say "My name is..." These can be used if you are meeting new people on your own or if you're being introduced by a third party. The first phrase is "*Wǒ jiào* (your name)." This literally means "I am called..." *Wǒ* means "I" or "me." *jiào* means "to call." Together, *Wǒ jiào* is "I am called." (Michael used his name as an example. The whole sentence was *Wǒ jiào Michael*.)

Another way to introduce yourself is to say *Wǒ shì* (your name). This literally means "I am..." It's *Wǒ* again plus *shì*, which means "to be." (Using the example "Michael," the phrase is *Wǒ shì Michael*.) After you introduce yourself you can ask the people you are talking to their name. There was no time to go over this in the lesson, but that's why we have the PDFs. A simple way to ask another person's name is to just take the first phrase from today, replace the *Wǒ* with *nǐ* (which means "you"), and put *shénme* at the end to make it a question. *shénme* means "what." The new phrase is then *nǐ jiào shénme?* Literally, "You called what?" but it

means "What are you called?" or "What is your name?" To this they will respond with their name. Because you have used the word *jiào*, they will probably use *jiào* in their response. They will probably say "*Wǒ jiào* (their name)." It is customary in China to introduce yourself with just your last name. It is probably safe to assume (especially if the person you are talking to is over 30) that the name the person gives you is their family name. They will say something like *Wǒ jiào Wáng. Wáng* is a very common Chinese last name. They may also say *Wǒ Xìng Wáng*. This means "My last name is Wáng." *Xìng* means "last name" or "family name." (There are many different ways for people to introduce themselves as well as many ways for them to ask your name. We can't possibly hope to teach them all now, so good luck, and stay on your toes.)

Now that they have introduced themselves, it would be appropriate for you to say *Hěn gāoxìng rénshi nǐ*. and shake their hand. *Hěn gāoxìng rénshi nǐ*. means "Nice to meet you." *Hěn* means "very." *gāoxìng* means "happy." *rénshi* means "to know." (*rénshi* is often used for knowing other people, but it can be used for "knowing" Chinese characters, among other things.) *nǐ* is, again, "you." The phrase is then literally "Very good to know you." Because you are just meeting them, the meaning changes to "Very good to meet you." or "Nice to meet you." This phrase is nice to say to someone, but if you forget it, it's also okay to just say *nǐ hǎo*. (Remember this means "Hello.") This is okay even if you have already said *nǐ hǎo*. to them.

Now that you have met this person, what do you call them? Do you just call them *Wáng*. Actually, that would be okay. It's acceptable to just call someone by their last name. But it's much nicer to add a title onto this name. Michael introduced the simplest two titles in the lesson. *Xiānshēng* means "Mr." and *xiǎojiě* means "Ms." If *Wáng* is a man he can be called *Wáng xiānshēng*. If *Wáng* is a woman she would be *Wáng xiǎojiě*. (Remember to change the tone on the *xiǎo* in *xiǎojiě* to second tone because there are two third tones in a row.) Just put one of these titles (the appropriate one, please) behind the person's last name and you're ready to go.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Chinese people love to use nicknames. It is very common practice to add *xiǎo* or *lǎo* in front the last name of someone you are friendly with. (This should only be done in informal situations.) *xiǎo* means "little" and *lǎo* means "old." An older person (named *Wáng*) can be

called *Lǎo Wáng*. Someone who is young is *xiǎo Wáng*. Often this is kind of a joke, people will call someone who is still quite young, but older than them, *lǎo Wáng*. People might call someone who acts too serious *lǎo Wáng* to make fun of their attitude. Someone whose is old, but acts youthful could be called *xiǎo Wáng*.

Chinese people also like to give people fake family titles. A woman who is older than you might be called *jiějiě* or *Wáng jiějiě*. (*jiějiě* means "older sister.") Chinese people use these nicknames to indicate friendliness and a close relationship with one another. A younger man could be called *dìdì*. ("Younger brother.") Chinese people also commonly use *gégé* or *dàgé* ("older brother") and *mèimèi* ("younger sister"), as well many other names for relatives. But remember this is very informal, and usually starts as the drinks begin to flow.

Quick Tip #2

Chinese people don't bow. Do not make this mistake. (Other Asian cultures do it and the Chinese used to do it. The wait staff at fancy restaurants still do it, but you don't want to mimic the wait staff.) Chinese people shake hands now. Bowing will make you look silly and possibly embarrass the people you are meeting.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #52

Introducing Others in Chinese

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

52

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 这是。
2. 这是我朋友。
3. 这是我丈夫。
4. 这是我妻子。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 這是。
2. 這是我朋友。
3. 這是我丈夫。
4. 這是我妻子。

PINYIN

1. Zhè shì.
2. Zhè shì wǒ péngyou.
3. Zhè shì wǒ zhàngfu.
4. Zhè shì wǒ qīzi.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. This is .
2. This is my friend, .
3. This is my husband.
4. This is my wife.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
这	這	zhè	this	pronoun
先生	先生	xiānshēng	Mr.	noun
男朋友	男朋友	nán péngyǒu	boyfriend	noun
女朋友	女朋友	nǚ péngyǒu	girlfriend	noun
同学	同學	tóngxué	classmate	noun
妻子	妻子	qīzi	wife	noun
丈夫	丈夫	zhàngfu	husband	noun
朋友	朋友	péngyǒu	friend	noun
我	我	wǒ	I, me	pronoun
是	是	shì	to be	verb
太太	太太	tàitai	Mrs., wife	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这是你的票。 Zhè shì nǐ de piào. This is your ticket.	我是她的男朋友。 Wǒ shì tā de nán péngyǒu. I am her boyfriend.
---	--

这是我的女朋友。 Zhè shì wǒ de nǚpéngyǒu. This is my girlfriend.	同学今天打电话给我，向我爆了一条新闻。 tóngxué jīntiān dǎ dānhuà gěi wǒ, xiàng wǒ bào le yī tiáo xīnwén. My classmate called me today and broke a piece of news.
他的妻子比他大十岁。 Tā de qīzi bǐ tā dà shí suì. His wife is older than him by ten years.	她是我的妻子。 Tā shì wǒ de qīzi. She is my wife.
丈夫的离开，让她觉得心里空落落的。 Zhàngfu de líkāi, ràng tā juéde xīnlǐ kōngluòluò de. Her husband's departure left her feeling empty.	她本来和我是朋友，直到她知道升职的是我而不是她。 tā běnlái hé wǒ shì péngyou , zhídào tā zhīdào shēngzhí de shì Wǒ ér bu shì tā . She was a friend of mine until I got the promotion instead of her.
他是我二十年的朋友了。 tā shì wǒ èrshí nián de péngyou le . He has been my friend for twenty years.	我最好的朋友和我去哪儿都在一起。 wǒ zuì hǎo de péngyou hé wǒ qù nǎ dōu zài yìqǐ . My best friend and I go everywhere together.
他是我的朋友。 Tā shì wǒ de péngyǒu. He is my friend.	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.	那个是我太太。 nà ge shì wǒ tàitai . That is his wife.
这位是张太太。 zhè wèi shì zhāng tài tai . This is Mrs Zhang.	

GRAMMAR

Today's lesson is very straightforward, there is no grammar involved and the word order follows the English exactly. *Zhè shì* means "this is." *Zhè* means "this" and *shì* is "to be." To introduce someone you are with you can just say *Zhè shì* followed by their name. If your friend's name is Bobby Valentine, you would say *Zhè shì Bobby Valentine*. ("This is Bobby Valentine." Bobby needs people to introduce him; he only speaks Japanese, not Chinese.)

It's often helpful to introduce people's relation to you in addition to their name, as there is a big difference between a sibling and a spouse. Let's start with "friend." "Friend" in Chinese is *péngyou*. To say "my friend" you just add *wǒ* ("I" or "me"). Literally *wǒ péngyou* would be "me friend," but it means "my friend." You can also add *de* after *wǒ* to make it *wǒ de péngyou*. *De* is the possessive particle, here it changes "me" to "my." When we are talking about something we own we should always use *de*. "My car" is *wǒ de chē*. But when talking about close personal relationships, the Chinese don't use *de*. It's okay to use *de* for more distant relationships. People often say *wǒ de tóngxué* ("my classmate") or *wǒ de lǎobǎn* ("my boss"). But for close relationships like relatives and friends, *de* is rarely used. People just say *wǒ péngyou*. To introduce your friend the whole phrase would be *Zhè shì wǒ péngyou*. ("This is my friend.") You can add your friend's name after this (*Zhè shì wǒ péngyou*, Bobby Valentine.) but you don't have to. The phrase is perfectly complete by itself. If you have been waiting for your friend, and you are about to leave, it is absolutely normal not to give your friend's name. If you are introducing a friend to the hosts of a dinner party, it's probably best to get names out of the way right at the beginning. (Though life doesn't always play out this way.)

This podcast also included words for spouses. *Zhè shì wǒ zhàngfu*. means "This is my husband." *Zhè shì wǒ qīzi*. means "This is my wife." (Remember to change *wǒ* to a second tone in the latter phrase because it precedes another third tone.) These can be used in exactly the same way as *Zhè shì wǒ péngyou*.

If you want to say boyfriend or girlfriend, it is very much like English. You just say male or female plus the word for friend. "Girlfriend" is *nǚ péngyou*. "Boyfriend" is *nán péngyou*. (*Nǚ* means "female" and *nán* means "male.") Be aware though, people are sometimes a little uncomfortable about saying the words "boyfriend" or "girlfriend" out loud, and will sometimes call their significant other their *péngyou* ("friend") even though they've been dating for years.

The next step in any introduction is for the parties being introduced to say "Hello." Remember, *Nǐ hǎo*. means "Hello." The *nǐ* is changed to second tone because *hǎo* is third tone. This common greeting is always appropriate, no matter the circumstances. You could get fancy and use some of the other greetings we studied in the first lesson. You could say the very formal *Nín hǎo*. But *Nǐ hǎo*. is probably your best bet. It's polite, but it doesn't sound stuffy or overdone. Almost nobody, other than customer service representatives, uses *nín*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

People often do not give a person's name when they introduce them. Sometimes we do this on purpose. A girl on a first date who runs into some of her friends may purposely not reveal her guest's name because she's embarrassed or is unsure of the strength of the relationship. Most of the time though, this failure to give names is accidental. We are not all great in social situations, and in the heat of the moment we might just say, "This is my wife." and not "This is my wife, Peggy Lee." What are you to do if you've been introduced to someone, but have never gotten their name? (This seems to happen very frequently with Chinese married couples.) One tactic is to combine "Mr." or "Mrs." with the last name of their spouse. "Mr." came up in lesson on self introductions, in Chinese it is *Xiānshēng*. We have not studied "Mrs." before. In Chinese, "Mrs." is *Tàitai*. These titles come after the last name of the person you're addressing. "Mr. Wang" would be *Wáng Xiānshēng*. "Mrs. Wang" would be *Wáng Tàitai*. The problem with this is that Chinese people do not change their last names after marriage. A woman named Wang will still be called Wang after she gets married to a Li. Still, it is considered okay to call a woman *Wáng Tàitai* if the man she is married to is named Wang and you don't know her last name. Calling her this just recognizes that she is married to a man named Wang, everyone still knows that this is not her family name. A man, however, might not like it so much if you were to refer to him by his wife's last name. One thing about this world, and something that is particularly true in Asia, men do not like being defined by their wives. (In China it is very hard for a woman with a doctorate to find a husband because most men want to marry someone with a lower degree of education than themselves. "Woman doctor" practically means "old maid" in China.) Thus, there is the second way to deal with this problem: ask their name. Maybe you precede this with *Bùhǎoyìsī*. ("Sorry.") Then move into the way of asking someone's name that we went over in the self introduction lesson: *Nǐ jiào shénme?* ("What are you called?") Asking someone's name is never out of line, even if you've already been told it. Most Chinese take it for granted that foreigners cannot remember Chinese names. (Which leads us to Quick Tip #2.)

Quick Tip #2

Many Chinese people have English names. Just as we said before, Chinese people take it for granted that foreigners will not be able to pronounce or remember their names. For this reason, almost all Chinese people get an English name whenever they start to study English. This name is not considered permanent and many Chinese people will pick a new name whenever the fancy strikes them. (Like when they see a movie they particularly like.) Some Chinese people, however, will keep this first name for their entire life. In foreign companies or companies that interact with foreigners often, everyone will have an English name and this will be the only name they are known by. An entire office of Chinese people speaking Chinese will still call each other by their English names. Some people get so used to this English name that it becomes the only name they ever use. So do not be surprised when

many people, especially young people and those from business sectors, tell you an English name. It may seem strange at first, but it has become a normal part of many people's lives.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #53

Long Time, No See in China

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 2 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

53

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 好久不见。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 好久不見

PINYIN

1. Hǎo jiǔ bùjiàn.

ENGLISH

1. Long time no see.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
好久	好久	hǎojiǔ	long time

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我来了好久。 Wǒ lái le hǎojiǔ. I've been here a long time.	我好久没有联系他了。 Wǒ hǎojiǔ méiyǒu liánxì tā le. I haven't been in touch with him in a while.
--	--

GRAMMAR

We once talked to an Australian who had lived in China for a little while. During that time he had a German girlfriend who spoke some Chinese. "She had such nice Chinese." he'd say. "Whenever she talked people would smile." His girlfriend didn't have great Chinese, but she knew what to say.

Wouldn't it be nice to be able to make people smile? Today's lesson is an example of just that kind of Chinese. *Hǎo jiǔ bùjiàn*. ("Long time no see.") is not necessary for getting around China. It won't help you when you're in trouble and it won't allow you to buy things on the cheap. Today's phrase has no use but to make other people smile.

Hǎo means "good" and *jiǔ* means "a long time." Together, *hǎo jiǔ* means "a good long time." *Jiǔ* is rarely used by itself (this is an example of a Chinese tendency we talked about earlier; they want to make two syllable words). Generally *jiǔ* is combined with *hǎo* or *hěn* ("very"). It is difficult to say whether adding *hǎo* to *jiǔ* really changes the meaning in common speech. Yes, technically *hǎo jiǔ* should be a longer time than *jiǔ*, but people almost never say *jiǔ* by itself, so it's hard to compare. Today's phrase is a set phrase, but even in other instances you should not use *jiǔ* without adding *hǎo* or *hěn*. (Remember to change the third tone on *hǎo* or *hěn* to a second tone because *jiǔ* is also a third tone.)

Bù means *no* and *jiàn* means "to see" or "to meet." Together they are literally "no see." *Bù* changes to a second tone when it is followed by another fourth tone, as is the case here.

Altogether the phrase is *Hǎo jiǔ bùjiàn*. This means "Long time no see." This is used in exactly the same way as the English expression. You say it when you meet up with someone. It can be used sarcastically with someone you see all the time. It's a very friendly phrase and hearing it from the mouth of a foreigner, from a new initiate to China, is bound to put a smile on people's faces.

In the lesson Michael introduced a slightly modified form of the phrase: he added *le* to the end to make the whole phrase *Hǎo jiǔ bùjiàn le*. What does *le* add to this phrase? The answer is, not much. Some Chinese people assert that adding *le* is more casual. Others say it represents a change in situation from the past when you and the person you are talking to met a lot. Everyone agrees that whether or not you add *le* doesn't make very much difference.

Still, now seems like a good time to have a very brief overview of what *le* adds to a sentence. Different aspects of *le* are discussed in more detail in other lessons. This is just an overview. It will be exceptionally brief. *Le* has two main uses: 1. Put a sentence in the past tense. 2. Indicate

a change of situation.

The first use: *Le* is put after the verb in a sentence to indicate that verb is in the past tense. *Wǒ chī.* means "I eat." or "I will eat." *Wǒ chī le.* means "I ate."

The second use: *Le* is put at the end of a sentence to indicate that the situation described in the sentence is a change from the previous situation. *Xià yǔ.* means "It's raining." People say *Míngtiān xià yǔ.* which means "It will rain tomorrow." Or they say *Xià yǔ.* in response to the question "Is it still raining?" But when someone is outside and it starts to rain they add a *le*, they say *Xià yǔ le.* This points out that the rain is just starting. A minute ago it wasn't raining, but now it is.

Another example: When sick people get better they say *Hǎo le.* *Hǎo* means "good," as we've said before. Adding the *le* indicates that, yes, they were sick before, but now they are better.

Both these uses of *le* are very common. Which is being used when *le* is added to *hǎo jiǔ bùjiàn*? That is hard to say. Perhaps it makes it more casual, it adds a nice flip of the tongue. Either way, it does not effect the meaning enough for you to worry about saying it one way or another.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Another great Chinese greeting is *Chī le ma?* This means "Have you eaten?" *Chī* means "to eat," *le* puts it into the past tense, and *ma* makes it a question. You don't need to add "you" (*nǐ*) because in the context of a greeting it should be pretty obvious who you are talking to. *Chī le ma?* is an old fashioned greeting and has become somewhat of a joke. We can't tell you how this greeting started, but it's been in use for a while. It is one more example of the emphasis the Chinese put on food. You can see friends passing each other on the street waving and one of them yelling out, *Chī le ma?* The other one always laughs. This greeting has become somewhat anachronistic, which means it's definitely good for a smile. People respond by saying either *Chī le.* ("I've eaten.") or *Hái méiyǒu.* ("Not yet." *Hái* means "still" and *méiyǒu* is the past tense version of "no." More on that some other time.) *Chī le ma?* can be the preface to a long conversation or it can be something just said in passing. It can be used at any time of the day, though it is strange to use it on someone if you know whether they've eaten or not.

(Perhaps you are staying in the same hotel room.) If someone says this to you, you only need to answer the question, you do not need to ask them in turn. The joke has been made, it is less funny the second time around. Try this phrase on your Chinese friends, it is exceedingly friendly.

Quick Tip #2

We are not sure how accurate this is, but it's an interesting point of view and contains at least a kernel of truth. (We will use Americans as the example because that is the example the Chinese teacher chose.)

A Chinese teacher once said, "Americans are like peaches and the Chinese are like coconuts. Americans are very soft on the outside, but they will reserve an inner pit that is their own and only ever let a few people inside of it. The Chinese can be hard on the outside, but once you crack through their shell, they will give you everything inside them."

Americans are very good at making new friends; they love to meet new people and make conversation. This is a foreign concept (no pun intended) for Chinese people. The Chinese tend to have a small circle of friends delineated by their work, schooling, and family. Chinese people rarely have friends they have met outside of these three situations. Parties and going out to bars are not a common thing for the Chinese (though, like everything in China, this is changing). If someone does hold a party, it is often an office or class party. Classmates and co-workers all go out to a restaurant or karaoke club together. People do not bring outsiders, there is no walking around and mingling with new people. Chinese people, when they do go to bars or clubs, often express their preference for being able to sit with their friends and get table service. They have no intention of mixing with other people at the bar.

On the other hand, after an American meets someone and has a nice conversation, they are very likely to say, "Well, it was nice meeting you. I have to be off." And that's the end of the relationship. This is not so with the Chinese. Once you have managed to crack the ice with a Chinese person (and remember, this is a generalization) they will almost certainly want to exchange telephone numbers. If you meet someone while traveling they will want your email address and they will want to keep up a correspondence. People will give you a business card and say that if you have any problems, you should contact them; and they mean this. In China, relationships are built off of helping one another. Chinese people expect you to come to them with your problems. They will make lots of time to help people they have met only recently with mundane issues. And this is not just because you are a foreigner (though there

is a certain amount of helping-the-guest graciousness in these gestures) Chinese people do the same for each other. Many Chinese people will offer you a place to stay in your first meeting. They will change their hotel reservations to be with you. Generally, they will do everything they can to help you, even though you've just met. For many Chinese people being friends is taken very seriously.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #54

What Time Is It?

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

54

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 现在几点?
2. 四点。
3. 请问。
4. 十二点四十分。
5. 十二点半。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 現在幾點?
2. 四點。
3. 請問。
4. 十二點四十分。
5. 十二點半。

PINYIN

1. Xiànzài jǐdiǎn?
2. Sìdiǎn.

CONT'D OVER

3. Qǐng wèn.
4. Shíèrdiǎn sìshífēn.
5. Shíèrdiǎn bàn.

ENGLISH

1. What time is it now?
2. 4 o'clock.
3. May I ask?
4. 12.40.
5. Half past twelve.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
点	點	diǎn	o'clock
半	半	bàn	half
分	分	fēn	minute
问	問	wèn	to ask
请	請	qǐng	please
现在	現在	xiànzai	now

几	幾	jǐ	how many (under ten), a few
小时	小時	xiǎoshí	hour
个	個	ge	universal measure word
刻	刻	kè	quarter of an hour

SAMPLE SENTENCES

下午4点。 Xiàwǔ sì diǎn. Four o'clock in the afternoon.	我吃一半就好。 Wǒ chī yī bàn jiù hǎo. I'll eat half; it's enough.
等我一分钟。 Děng wǒ yī fēnzhōng. Wait for me for one minute.	你不知道，那就问问吧。 Nǐ bù zhīdào, nà jiù wènwen ba. If you don't know, just ask.
我想问一下，那个人是谁？ Wǒ xiǎng wèn yíxià, nàge rén shì shéi? I want to ask, who is that?	请帮我拿一下这个东西。 Qǐng bāng wǒ ná yíxià zhè ge dōngxi. Please hold this for me for a moment.
现在几点钟？ Xiànzài jǐ diǎnzhōng? What time is it now?	你有几个？ Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge? How many do you have?
他在跑道上跑了一个小时了。 Tā zài pǎodào shàng pǎo le yí gè xiǎoshí le. He's been running on the track for an hour.	这个菜太辣了。 This dish is too spicy.
这个多少钱？ Zhège duōshǎo qián? How much is this?	尝尝这个。 Chángchang zhège. Have a taste of this.

他是一个间谍。

Tā shì yí ge jiàndié.

He is a spy.

现在是八点三刻。

xiànzài shì bā diǎn sān kè.

It is a quarter to nine now.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Your mobile phone (probably) isn't going to work in China. This is an inconvenience in itself, but brings along with it the added problem that you may lose track of time. More and more people are using their mobile phones as watches. If you're one of these people then you need to add a wristwatch to the list of things you need for China; although it's not like there won't be many cheap watches for sale once you get there. If you ever find yourself without your timepiece, perhaps it clashes with your oh-so-fashionable traveler's pouch, today's phrase will come in handy.

Michael went through the phrases backwardly. It makes a lot more sense to start with the words for different times:

1:00 - *yīdiǎn*

2:00 - *liǎngdiǎn*

3:00 - *sāndiǎn*

4:00 - *sìdiǎn*

5:00 - *wǔdiǎn*

6:00 - *liùdiǎn*

7:00 - *qīdiǎn*

8:00 - *bādiǎn*

9:00 - *jiǔdiǎn*

10:00 - *shídiǎn*

11:00 - *shíyīdiǎn*

12:00 - *shíèrdiǎn*

As Michael said, *diǎn* basically translates as "o'clock." When you are telling time you put *diǎn* behind a number to signify the hour of the day. *Diǎn*, however, does not mean "hour." If you want to say "three hours" instead of "three o'clock" then you would say *sān ge xiǎoshí*. *Ge* is a

measure word and *xiǎoshí* means "hour." (*Xiǎo* means "little" and *shí* means "time.")

Remember to correct the tones on *liǎngdiǎn*, *wǔdiǎn*, and *jiǔdiǎn*. The initial third tones on these times become second tones because *diǎn* is also a third tone.

We've talked about *jǐ* in previous lessons. *Jǐ* means "how many" (or "a few"). *Jǐdiǎn?* is used to ask the time and literally means "How many o'clock?" Here, again, we change the initial third tone to a second tone to prevent there being two third tones in a row.

Usually when Chinese people ask what time it is they say, *Xiànzài jǐdiǎn?* *Xiànzài* means "now." Literally this phrase is "Now how many o'clock?" It is used to ask, "What time is it now?" This is much, much more common than just saying *Jǐdiǎn?*

When asking the time from a stranger it is polite to preface your question with *Qǐng wèn*. *Qǐng* means "please." *Wèn* means "to ask." *Qǐng wèn* is then equivalent to saying "May I ask?" The whole time-asking sequence would be: *Qǐng wèn. Xiànzài jǐdiǎn?* *Qǐng wèn* can be used as a polite interjection before any questions you'd like to ask.

To add minutes to the time you just say the number of minutes after *diǎn* and then follow that number with *fēn*. *Fēn* means "minute." "5:55" would be *wǔdiǎn wǔshíwǔfēn*. "4:23" is *sìdiǎn èrshísānfēn*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

Chinese people rarely say, *sìdiǎn sānshífēn*. Usually they say, *sìdiǎn bàn*. *Bàn* means "half." One could think of *sìdiǎn bàn* as meaning "half past four." Really, no one says *sānshífēn*.

Chinese people do often say things like *liǎngdiǎn shíwǔfēn*. But they're also just as likely to say, *liǎngdiǎn yīkè*. *Kè* means a quarter of an hour, but it is only used as *yīkè*. No one says *sānkè* for "45."

Quick Tip #2

Military time (a 24-hour clock) is used all over China. You will often see digital clocks that

read "22:30" or "16:20." We're sure everyone understands military time and won't be too thrown off by this, but we figured it would be nice to say something about it. Military time is so common that many people use it in their speech. People will sometimes talk about getting out of work at *shíqīdiǎn* ("17:00") or catching a train at *èrshíèrdiǎn* ("22:00").

In addition to running on military time, China also technically has only one time zone. China is about as large as the U.S. (which has four time zones), but the entire country is on Beijing time. Beijing is located in the eastern most part of the country. This means that the areas of Tibet and Xinjiang in the western part of the country, areas that are already somewhat isolated from the government, tend to have some clocks set to their own unofficial time. Certain actions in these regions (when one goes to work or school, for example) are still controlled by the government and thus technically use government time, but the regional government will change the timing of these actions to make up for the absence of time zones. Thus schoolchildren in Xinjiang are told to attend class at 10 A.M. They are used to eating lunch at 2 P.M.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #55

Likes and Dislikes

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

55

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我喜欢。
2. 我不喜欢。
3. 我喜欢这个。
4. 我喜欢中国菜。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我喜歡。
2. 我不喜歡。
3. 我喜歡這個。
4. 我喜歡中國菜。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ xǐhuān.
2. Wǒ bù xǐhuān.
3. Wǒ xǐhuān zhège.
4. Wǒ xǐhuān Zhōngguó cài.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I like it.
2. I don't like it.
3. I like this.
4. I like Chinese food.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
我	我	wǒ	I, me
喜欢	喜歡	xǐhuān	to like
中国菜	中國菜	Zhōngguó cài	Chinese food
美国菜	美國菜	Měiguó cài	American food
唱	唱	chàng	to sing
不喜欢	不喜歡	bù xǐhuān	do not like

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	我喜欢中国菜。 Wǒ xǐhuān Zhōngguó cài. I like Chinese food.
中国菜很好吃。 Zhōngguó cài hěn hǎochī. Chinese food is delicious.	我不知道真正的美国菜是什么。 wǒ bù zhīdào zhēn zhèng de Měiguó cài shì shénme I don't know what real American food is.

他在练习唱歌。
tā zài liànxí chàngē.

He is practicing singing.

这个人喜欢向领导告状，我们都不喜欢她。

zhè ge rén xǐhuān xiàng lǐngdǎo gàozhuàng,
wǒmen dōu bù xǐhuān tā.

This person likes to complain to the
leaders; we don't like her.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Do we need to explain why expressing likes and dislikes is an important part of language? Isn't that self-evident? Shouldn't we instead spend more time trumpeting the glories of Chinese food; its elegant sweets, captivating sours, fragrant aromas, and in-your-face spiciness? Almost all topics of discussion have two sides, this is one of the exceptions. Chinese food is so varied that it is impossible for anyone to say they don't like Chinese food. Impossible. We won't hear of it. You don't like spicy? Try Shanghai cuisine, it's delicate, sometimes with a hint of sweetness. Don't like sweet? Sichuan cuisine combines hot peppers and garlic for knock-your-socks-off savory. Or check out Yunnan for crispy fried vegetables and delectable pickles. Against oil? The people of Zhejiang aren't too into oil either. They prefer lightly flavored steamed and stir-fried dishes. Don't like rice? In Xinjiang they don't eat it. Many Xinjiang restaurants don't have any rice. They fill that spot with roast bread and noodles; and, of course, seasoned goat. And then there's Guangdong food, which is a category all its own and a Shangri-la of tastes for those who dare to put forth their tongues. (The people of Guangdong are famous for eating anything they can catch and cook.) We have left out at least ten other major styles of cooking in the Chinese palette. China is just too big and has too long a history to not have developed many different styles of cuisine. Each province has a richness of cooking history comparable to most nations. It is acceptable to say that one does not like a certain style of Chinese food, but to say one does not like Chinese food as a whole is out and out ridiculous. And we will accept no arguments to the contrary.

Wǒ xǐhuān. means "I like it." (A phrase you will often find yourself using in China.) *Wǒ* means "I" or "me," and *xǐhuān* means "to like." As we have seen before, the object "it," which appears in the English, is not included in the Chinese. "It" is unnecessary if people know what you are talking about. Because of this background, Chinese people, when speaking English, often

forget to add an object into their speech. If you ask them, "Do you like living in England?" they will answer "I like." They are directly translating *Wǒ xǐhuān*. When using this phrase remember that *wǒ* becomes a second tone because it has another third tone following it.

You can add objects onto the end of this phrase to make it more specific. Let's start with "this" and "that." Just to refresh your memory, "this" is *zhège* and "that" is *nàge*. If someone asks you to indicate a preference between two things presented to you, you can pick one by saying *Wǒ xǐhuān zhège*. ("I like this.") or *Wǒ xǐhuān nàge*. ("I like that.")

You can make the sentence even more specific by using a noun instead of a pronoun. Just put whatever it is you like after *xǐhuān*. Our example is "Chinese food," because everyone loves Chinese food. (Again, there is no other acceptable position on this matter.) The Chinese, however, don't know that everyone like Chinese food. Chinese people will often be very interested in whether or not you like Chinese food. They like Chinese food, there are rumors among the Chinese that Westerners cannot stomach Chinese food. This is where *Wǒ xǐhuān Zhōngguó cài* is going to come in handy. *Zhōngguó* means "China" and *cài* means "food." Together they mean "Chinese food." The whole phrase means "I like Chinese food." You can plug in any noun you want instead of "Chinese food" to indicate your fondness towards that noun. We were just trying to put an idea in your head.

What if you don't like something? It's perfectly alright to have dislikes. To negate the phrase we just insert *bù* ("no") in front of *xǐhuān*. The phrase *Wǒ bù xǐhuān* literally translates as "I no like." It means "I don't like it." It is important to note that once *wǒ* and *xǐhuān* are separated by *bù*, *wǒ* reverts back to third tone. The usage of the phrase does not change when it is negated, we can still just add objects onto the end to specify what we are talking about. Let's try one. *Měiguó* means "America" and *Měiguó cài* means "American food." *Wǒ bù xǐhuān Měiguó cài* thus means "I don't like American food." Actually, we shouldn't pick on American food. Once you get past the cloying, commercial surface of American food, past the McDonald's, the KFCs, and Pizza Huts, American food has a richness and variety that is seldom explored. If you don't believe us, we suggest a road trip. Though for that trip you won't need survival phrases, just a prescription for Lipitor.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

So how do you ask someone else about what they like or dislike? Making questions out of declarative statements is really easy in Chinese: just add *ma* to the end of the sentence. *Nǐ xǐhuān ma?* means "Do you like it?" (*Nǐ* means "you.") Any of the phrases we have talked about can be made into a question just by adding *ma*.

Chinese people will often ask you, *Nǐ xǐhuān Zhōngguó cài ma?* ("Do you like Chinese food?") How do you answer this question? As we've said in previous lessons, Chinese does not have a good equivalent for "yes." If you want to answer the question above with a "yes," you would say, *Wǒ xǐhuān Zhōngguó cài.* or *Wǒ xǐhuān.* or simply *Xǐhuān.* (We know who and what we're talking about from the question.) As we've said before, in Chinese, yes or no questions are generally answered by repeating the verb or the adjective in question. If you want to say no, you just negate the verb or adjective in your answer. So if you want to answer that you don't like Chinese food (heathen!) you would say, *Wǒ bù xǐhuān Zhōngguó cài.* or *Wǒ bù xǐhuān.* or just *Bù xǐhuān.* You could simply say *Bù.* ("No.") but it would sound funny and kind of incomplete. *Bù xǐhuān.* is much better.

Quick Tip #2

You can also attach verb phrases to the end of today's phrase. *Chàng* means "to sing" and *gē* means "song." Together *chàng gē* means "to sing songs," but it also often has the hidden meaning "to sing karaoke." The Chinese (and many other Asian nations) have a love affair with karaoke that Westerners find, at the very least, hard to understand. Many Chinese people consider karaoke the ideal way to spend a night out. China has many, many karaoke clubs. These are big buildings with lots of private rooms that people rent out by the hour. Chinese people will spend hours singing their favorite songs, and will want you to come along too. While it's definitely a good idea to check out Chinese culture, including how they like to spend their free time, it's understandable if you get very tired of singing the same Bon Jovi and Carpenters songs again and again. (The selection of English songs is very limited.) For this reason it may become necessary to say, *Wǒ bù xǐhuān chàng gē.* ("I don't like singing songs.") Your friends may be a little disappointed, but sometimes that's a small price to pay to get out of singing "Yesterday Once More" again.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #56

Useful and High Frequency Chinese Adjectives

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 6 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

56

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我很高兴。
2. 我饿死了。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我很高興。
2. 我餓死了。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ hěn gāoxìng.
2. Wǒ èsǐle.

ENGLISH

1. I am happy.
2. I am starving.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
我	我	wǒ	I, me	pronoun

你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
很	很	hěn	very, very much	adverb
是	是	shì	to be	verb
非常	非常	fēicháng	extremely	adverb
真	真	zhēn	really	adverb
有点	有點	yǒudiǎn	a little	adverb
高兴	高興	gāoxìng	happy	adjective
悲伤	悲傷	bēishāng	sad	adjective
伤心	傷心	shāngxīn	sad	adjective
有趣	有趣	yǒu qù	interesting	adjective
有意思	有意思	yǒu yìsi	interesting	adjective
没意思	沒意思	méi yìsi	boring	adjective
累	累	lèi	tired	adjective
寂寞	寂寞	jìmò	lonely	adjective
怕	怕	pà	afraid	verb
可怕	可怕	kěpà	scary	adjective
可笑	可笑	kěxiào	funny, laughable	adjective
不	不	bù	no	adverb
太	太	tài	too	adverb
年轻	年輕	niánqīng	young	adjective
饿	餓	è	hungry	adjective
她	她	tā	she, her	noun
他	他	tā	he/him	personal pronoun
它	它	tā	it	pronoun

男的	男的	nánde	male	adjective
女的	女的	nǚde	female	adjective
好	好	hǎo	good	adjective
死	死	sǐ	to die	verb
难受	難受	nánshòu	uncomfortable	adjective
难吃	難吃	nánchī	tastes bad	adjective
难听	難聽	nántīng	bad sounding	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?
今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.	他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.
这个菜非常好。 Zhègè cài fēicháng hǎo. This dish is extremely good.	今天真热。 Jīntiān zhēn rè. It's really hot today.
他屡次犯错，我都原谅了他，现在 我有点儿受不了了。 tā lǚcì fàncuò, wǒ dōu yuánliàng le tā, xiànzài wǒ yǒu diǎnr shòu bu liǎo le. I've forgiven him for several mistakes he's made, but right now, I can't stand it anymore.	他回来我太高兴了。 Tā huílái wǒ tài gāoxìng le. His coming back made me really excited.

你对她做了什么，看，她多悲伤！ nǐ duì tā zuò le shénme, kàn, tā duō bēishāng ! What have you done to her? Look how sad she is!	伤心的男孩一个人坐着。 shāng xīn de nán hái yí gè rén zuò zhe 。 The sad teenager is sitting alone.
这本书很有趣。 zhè běn shū hěn yǒu qù. This book is interesting.	中国文化很有意思。 Zhōngguó wénhuà hěn yǒu yìsi. Chinese culture is very interesting.
整天呆在家里真没意思。 zhěngtiān dāi zài jiā lǐ zhēn méiyìsi. It is boring to stay inside all day long.	我工作了一天，很累。 Wǒ gōngzuò le yìtiān, hěn lèi. I've worked for a whole day, and I'm tired.
她自己在家寂寞难耐，所以决定出去见朋友。 tā zìjǐ zàijiā jìmò nán nài, suǒyǐ juéding chūqù jiàn péngyǒu. Alone at home, she went out to see friends because she couldn't stand being lonely.	我很怕胖！ Wǒ hěn pà pàng! I'm really afraid of getting fat.
这部电影真可怕。 zhè bù diànyǐng zhēn kěpà. It is such a scary movie.	你不觉得这很可笑吗？ nǐ bù juéde zhè hěn kěxiào ma? Don't you think it is funny ?
下午我不忙。 Xiàwǔ wǒ bù máng. I'm not busy in the late afternoon.	夏天太热了。 Xiàtiān tài rè le. The summer is too hot.
只有保持肌肤水润，才能保持年轻美貌。 Zhǐyǒu bǎochí jīfū shuǐrùn, cái néng bǎochí niánqīng měimào. You can only keep your youthful appearance if you keep your skin moist.	我不饿。 Wǒ bú è I'm not hungry.

她是谁? Tā shì shéi? Who is she?	他一个人去, 我不放心。 Tā yí gè rén qù, wǒ bú fàngxīn. He went alone, I can't relax.
你看它了吗? Nǐ kàn tā le ma? Have you seen it yet?	你能帮我照顾它吗? Nǐ néng bāng wǒ zhàogu tā ma? Can you help me look after it?
有个男的在和她搭讪。 yǒu ge nán de zài hé tā dāshàn. That guy is chatting up this girl.	这个女的已经六十岁了, 每天还浓妆艳抹的, 让人觉得很不舒服。 Zhège nǚde yǐjīng liùshí suì le, měitiān hái nóngzhuāngyànmǒ de, ràng rén juéde hěn bù shūfu. This woman's 60 years old, but she still dresses up and puts on makeup every day -- it makes people feel uncomfortable.
加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.	我已经累死了。 Wǒ yǐjīng lèi sǐ le. I'm already really tired.
他的话让我觉得更难受了。 Tā de huà ràng wǒ juéde gèng nánshòu le. What he said made me feel even more troubled.	这家店的东西真难吃。 zhè jiā diàn de dōngxi zhēn nánchī. Food in this restaurant tastes bad.
他说的话很难听, 真伤人。 tā shuō dehuà hěn nántīng, zhēn shāngrén. What he said sounded bad. It really hurt.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

We originally set out to make 50 lessons, but at the end we've tacked on a bunch of "bonus" lessons. These lessons have been covering things we forgot or felt we couldn't leave out or, in the case of today's lesson, just some stuff that we thought might be nice.

The most simple way to use adjectives in Chinese is: subject+*hěn*+adjective. *Hěn* means "very." A sample sentence with the first adjective from today *gāoxìng* ("happy") would be: *Wǒ hěn gāoxìng*. ("I am happy.") Notice that *hěn* takes the place of the English verb "to be." *Hěn* does not carry with it the meaning "to be." Chinese does away with the use of a verb in these simple adjective phrases. It is in fact okay to say, *Wǒ gāoxìng*. The use of a verb is unnecessary in this kind of phrase. *Hěn* is added simply because it sounds nice. *Wǒ gāoxìng* has the same meaning as *Wǒ hěn gāoxìng*. But *Wǒ gāoxìng* sounds kind of terse. The Chinese feel that *Wǒ hěn gāoxìng* rolls off the tongue better. Thus, while *hěn* keeps the meaning "very," it is mostly ignored in these sentences. It is just viewed as a place-holder, something to make the sentence flow better. (Remember to change the third tone on *wǒ* to a second tone because it precedes the third tone on *hěn*.)

While *hěn* is just a phonetic place-holder, Chinese people do often use modifiers of degree with adjectives. These replace *hěn* in the sentence. *Fēicháng* means "extremely." *Wǒ fēicháng gāoxìng* means "I am extremely happy." *Zhēn* means "really" and *yǒudiǎn* means "a little." *Wǒ zhēn gāoxìng* means "I am really happy." *Wǒ yǒudiǎn gāoxìng* means "I am a little happy."

Gāoxìng ("happy") is the combination of *gāo*, which means "high," and *xìng*, which means "pleasure." Younger Chinese people sometimes use the English word "high" in their Chinese sentences to mean "happy." They will say, *Wǒ hěn high*. It's sometimes tough not to giggle a little when a Chinese person tells you excitedly in English, "I'm very high!"

We can use our simple adjective phrase with any of the other adjectives from today's lesson. The second phrase would be *Wǒ hěn bēishāng*. ("I am sad.") *Bēi* means "sad" and *shāng* means "hurt." Another way to say "sad" is *shāngxīn* which literally means "hurt heart." (*Xīn* means "heart.")

Yǒu qù means "interesting." *Yǒu* means "to have." *Qù* means "interest" or "delight." Technically you could say, *Wǒ hěn yǒu qù*, but that sounds quite arrogant. Better to say *Nǐ hěn yǒu qù*. ("You are interesting.") or *Nà hěn yǒu qù*. ("That is interesting.") *Yǒu qù* can be used for both people and things.

Another adjective that uses *yǒu* (and that will play into the next adjective from the lesson) is *yǒu yìsi*. *Yìsi* means "meaning." Thus *yǒu yìsi* literally means "having meaning" or

"meaningful." *Yǒu yìsi* is used to mean "interesting" or "fun." (It's hard to make a difference between the two in Chinese.) *Nǐ hěnyǒu yìsi.* would mean "You are lots of fun."

Méi negates *yǒu*. Thus *méiyǒu yìsi* means "uninteresting" or "boring" *Méiyǒu yìsi* can be shortened to *méi yìsi*. When negating an adjective you generally would not use *hěnyǒu*. The syllable that *hěnyǒu* took up to help the flow of the sentence has been replaced by the negater. *Hěnyǒu* is no longer necessary. If you were to include *hěnyǒu* (or any other modifier of degree) it would be to add meaning. *Hěnyǒu méi yìsi* would mean "very boring." If you want to negate adjectives that don't use *yǒu*, just place *bù* ("no") before the adjective.

The next two are totally simple: *lèi* means "tired" and *jìnmò* means "lonely." Plugged into the formula they become *Wǒ hěnyǒu lèi.* and *Wǒ hěnyǒu jìnmò.*

Pà means "afraid." *Wǒ hěnyǒu pà.* means "I am afraid." *Kě* means "can" or "may." Combined with *pà* it is an adjective for things that make you afraid. *Kěpà* thus means "scary." *Kě* may be combined with a number of different words to describe things that make you do whatever *kě* is combined with. *Xiào* means "to laugh." *Kěxiào* means "funny." (Though it means it more in a negative sense, as in "laughable.")

Nánshòu means "uncomfortable." *Nán* means "difficult" and *shòu* means "to stand" or "to endure." Thus *nánshòu* literally means "hard to stand" or "hard to deal with." *Wǒ hěnyǒu nánshòu.* means "I am uncomfortable." (Maybe your girlfriend dumped you or the chair you are sitting in is broken.) *Nán* can be combined with many different verbs to create adjectives. *Chī* means "to eat." *Nánchī* means "tastes bad." *Tīng* means "to hear." *Nántīng* means "sounds bad." Michael *de shēngyīn hěnyǒu nántīng.* means "Michael's voice is grating." (*Shēngyīn* means "sound" or "voice.")

The last little bit of the lesson goes over things we touched on earlier in this PDF. Michael mentions that *bù* negates adjectives. He uses *bù hǎo* ("not good") as his example. He then puts in one modifier of degree that we purposely left off till now: *tài*. *Tài* means "too." As we mentioned before, modifiers of degree replace *hěnyǒu* in the sentence structure. *Tài* and an adjective should usually be followed by *le*. We don't have an explanation for this, it's just the way things are done. *Nǐ tài hǎo le.* thus literally means "You are too good." This is not the best translation though. It is better to translate it as "You are great." *Tài* in Chinese does not have the same connotations as "too" in English. "Too" means more than desirable or permissible. *Tài* often just means "very." This changes in context. *Niánqīng*1 means "young." Most of the time when older people say *Nǐ tài niánqīng le.* they are complimenting you. They are saying, "You are so young." But there are instances, perhaps when discussing marriage, getting old, or other "mature" topics, when *Nǐ tài niánqīng le.* loses its positive connotation.

There it means "You are too young."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

A common colloquial way of modifying the degree of an adjective is to add *sǐ le* after the adjective. *Sǐ* means "to die." Adding *sǐ le* to an adjective means "extremely." *Wǒ lèi sǐ le.* means "I am dead tired." *Wǒ jì mò sǐ le.* means "I am so lonely I could die." The most common usage of this is probably *Wǒ è sǐ le.* ("I am starving." *È* means "hungry.")

Quick Tip #2

Somehow we have neglected "he," "she," and "it" throughout this entire series. It is one of the quirks of the Chinese language that all three are pronounced the same way; they are all *tā*. The only way to tell the difference is from the Chinese characters. Often Chinese people will ask a friend who is telling a story if the *tā* in the story is *nán de* ("male") or *nǚ de* ("female"). If they don't know the character in the story then there is no way for them to know. Because of this you will notice that Chinese people speaking English often mix up "he" and "she." They are not used to making this phonetic distinction in pronouns.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #57

Chinese for Special Events

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

57

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 生日快乐。
2. 春节
3. 恭喜发财!
4. 恭喜

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 生日快樂。
2. 春節
3. 恭喜發財!
4. 恭喜

PINYIN

1. Shēngrì kuàilè.
2. chūnjié
3. Gōngxǐ fācái!
4. gōngxǐ

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Happy birthday.
2. Spring Festival, Chinese New Year
3. Congratulations and be prosperous!
4. Congratulations

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
生日	生日	shēngrì	birthday
恭喜	恭喜	gōngxǐ	congratulations
快乐	快乐	kuàilè	happy
发财	發財	fācái	to get rich
春節	春節	Chūn Jié	Spring Festival

SAMPLE SENTENCES

生日快乐！这是你的礼物！ Shēngrì kuàilè! Zhè shì nǐ de lǐwù! Happy Birthday. Here are your gifts.	你生日是什么时候？ Nǐ shēngrì shì shénme shíhòu? When is your birthday?
他获得了比赛第一名，我们应该对他说声恭喜。 tā huòdé le bǐsàidì yī míng, wǒmen yīnggāi duì tā shuō shēng gōngxǐ. We should go and say 'Congratulations,' for he has won first place in the contest.	在别人的眼里，我是一个非常快乐、没心没肺的人。 Zài biérén de yǎnlǐ , wǒ shì yīgè fēicháng kuàilè, méixīnméifèi de rén. In people's eyes I'm a perfectly happy, utterly blithe person.

你也新年快乐! nǐ yě xīnnián kuàilè! Happy New Year to you too!	他一天到晚做发财梦，但从来不付诸行动。 tā yī tiān dào wǎn zuò fācái mèng, dàn cónglái bù fù Zhū Xíngdòng. He dreams of getting rich every day, but he never puts it into practice.
恭喜发财! Gōngxǐfācái! Wishing you riches! (New Year's greeting)	他跟我借钱，我不给，他就抢了我的银行卡。 Tā gēn wǒ jièqián , wǒ bù gěi , tā jiù qiǎng le wǒ de yínhángkǎ. He came to borrow money but I wouldn't give him any, so he snatched my bank card.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

We're right at the end, so we might as well start congratulating ourselves. *Gōngxǐ, gōngxǐ*. But we're not there yet. We've still got a couple of lessons to go in your introduction to Chinese and China.

We're going to whip through the lesson's content pretty quickly because most of this PDF will actually be in the Quick Tips. (Why do we call them Quick Tips if they're longer than the actual lesson? Don't know. The name was handed down from on high.)

Shēngrì kuàilè. means "Happy birthday." *Shēngrì* means "birthday." Literally its characters are "birth" (*shēng*) and "day" (*rì*). *Kuàilè* means "happy." Traditionally, the Chinese eat noodles for lunch on their birthday. Now, many people buy Western-style cakes and sing "Happy Birthday." The Chinese words to "Happy Birthday" go: *Zhù nǐ shēngrì kuàilè*. This means "Wish you a happy birthday." (*Zhù* means "to wish" and *nǐ* means "you.") This sentence is sang again and again to the tune of "Happy Birthday." Much like in the West, the singing is often out of tune. Also, Western-style cakes in China generally involve cheap whipped cream and fruit and are not very good. (That is Michael's opinion. Feel free to make posts in which you lambaste him for it.)

Chinese New Year is called *Chūnjié* in Chinese. This literally means "Spring Festival." (*Chūn* means "spring" and *jié* means "festival" or "holiday.") Many Chinese people are unaware that Westerners say "Chinese New Year" and will talk about "Spring Festival" with foreigners. They are greeted with blank stares. Now you will know what they are talking about when they say "Spring Festival." Quick Tip #1 is all about Chinese New Year, so, right now, we will only touch on the proper sayings.

Gōngxǐ fācái. is a traditional saying used during the Chinese New Year. It literally means "Congratulations and be prosperous." (*Gōngxǐ* means "congratulations." *Fā* means "to come out" and *cái* means "wealth.") People also say, *Xīnnián kuàilè.* or *Guòniánhǎo.* These are greetings used during the New Year. *Xīnnián kuàilè.* is more recent in origin. It literally means "New Year happy." It is an adaptation of the Western "Happy New Year." Just as *Shēngri kuàilè.* is an adaptation of the Western "Happy birthday." (*Xīn* means "new" and *nián* means "year.") *Guòniánhǎo.* is more traditional and literally means "Pass year good." (*Guò* means "to pass," *nián* means "year," and *hǎo* means "good.") All three sayings should be yelled at the top of one's lungs. As you will see if you ever have the good fortune to be in China for the Spring Festival, Chinese New Year is not a time for being quiet.

Gōngxǐ ("congratulations") may also be used as a response to hearing about someone's promotion, high test score, or new child.

The list of Chinese holidays is far too long to go into here, but there are two others of note: the Mid-Autumn Festival and the Dragon Boat Festival. All traditional Chinese holidays are based on the lunar calendar and thus fall on a different day every year. The Mid-Autumn Festival falls in mid-to-late September. The Dragon Boat Festival is in early-to-mid June. They, and many other Chinese holidays, have wonderful back stories and celebrations. What a pity that we don't have space to discuss them.

But Spring Festival beckons...

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

The Chinese New Year is celebrated right before the beginning of spring. Thus it is called Spring Festival (*Chūnjié*.) The festival begins on New Year's Eve, the night before the first day of the first month of the lunar calendar, and lasts till the fifteenth day of the first month. The New Year (the first day) usually falls in early-to-mid February on the Gregorian calendar

(though sometimes it is in late January).

The legend goes that the people of ancient China believed in the *Nian*, a man-eating beast that came down from the mountains (or from under the sea, depending on who's telling the legend and where they come from) every twelve months to wreak havoc on mankind. The *Nian* could be frightened away by loud noises and liberal use of the color red. So people began the custom of painting things red and banging drums and clappers and setting off fireworks. Thus every year people celebrate *guònián* ("the passing of the *Nian*"). They celebrate that they have scared off the *Nian* and he has not eaten them. This legend, of course, is a play on words, as *nián* means "year" and thus *guònián* means "the passing of a year."

The Chinese celebrate the New Year with their families. Almost every Chinese person goes home for the New Year. Traditionally, extended families are brought together for huge reunion banquets on New Year's Eve. Now, many people are content just to be with their immediate family. Still, the time around Chinese New Year is the time of the world's largest human migration. During this time migrant workers go home to be with their families and overseas Chinese go back to China. In this time there are more than one billion trips taken within China.

Many different types of food are common during New Year's feasts and what is served often depends on what part of China you are in. Fish is generally eaten everywhere because the word for "fish" (*yú*) sounds the same as the word for "surplus." Mandarin oranges are also eaten all over China because they are abundant at that time (and they are delicious). Northern Chinese people generally eat boiled dumplings called *jīǎozi* and put a coin in one of the dumplings. The person who gets the lucky dumpling receives a certain amount of money.

Before the New Year homes are decorated with pictures and poems, all prominently featuring the color red which is supposed to be good luck. Houses are cleaned thoroughly to get rid of the bad luck from the old year and prepare the house for incoming good luck. Some people even give parts of their house a new coat of red paint.

On New Year's Eve and all throughout the holiday (though mostly on New Year's Eve) people set off absolutely intense amounts of fireworks. These are supposed to scare away evil spirits (and the *Nian*) and plus they're fun. Heading up to the New Year little stands are set up all over to sell fireworks. They sell pieces that range from tiny crackers to huge balls shot from mortars that you swear belong on the battlefield. Nothing reminds you that you are alive like

seeing the jolt from a firecracker you've just lit. Especially when the explosion was big enough to take off your hand. Fireworks are banned in some urban areas, though Beijing has recently lifted its ban. Take that, evil spirits!

New Year's Eve is not necessarily a time when you go out. Like Christmas in many Western countries, it is a time to be spent with family. (Though perhaps you and your family are blowing up a small piece of the nation together.) Many, many Chinese people stay in with their families on New Year's Eve and watch the CCTV (China's main television station) New Year's Eve Gala. It is an hours-long program that features a never-ending series of comedic performances. While most Chinese people keep it on during their family gathering, many of them are only half watching it. They spend this time joking, eating melon seeds, and gossiping until midnight. It is considered bad form to go to bed before midnight.

While Chinese New Year is a very important holiday, you may be surprised by how few people are out on New Year's Eve. Remember that there are also very few people that go out on Christmas Eve in Western countries. Everyone is at home with their families.

The rest of the Spring Festival is spent resting, visiting relatives, receiving red packets with money (if you are young), and generally getting fat. There is a week-long national holiday during this time and almost everybody, except some poor saps in the service industry, has off. Do not try to travel during this time. (Didn't we mention the world's largest human migration?) Just find a place you like beforehand and enjoy the festivities.

As you are certainly aware, the Chinese zodiac follows a set of twelve years. The order as well as the next time that year occurs is listed below:

Chinese	Romanization	English (Year)
鼠	(shǔ)	rat, mouse (2008)
牛	(niú)	ox, cow (2009)
虎	(hǔ)	tiger (2010)
兔	(tù)	rabbit (2011)
龙	(lóng)	dragon (2012)

蛇	(shé)	snake (2013)
马	(mǎ)	horse (2014)
羊	(yáng)	sheep goat (2015)
猴	(hóu)	monkey (2016)
鸡	(jī)	rooster, chicken (2017)
狗	(gǒu)	dog (2018)
猪	(zhū)	pig (2007, 2019)

You can use these to calculate what year you are. Many Chinese people will ask you what your Chinese Zodiac year is and it may impress them if you can remember it. Remember that the Chinese year does not actually start until the Spring Festival. Thus, if you were born in January, 1983, your sign is the dog, not the pig. It did not become the year of the pig until February, 1983.

The Chinese are not ones to limit themselves and do not stick only to the Chinese zodiac. Many young Chinese people are very interested in the Western zodiac and may know much more about it than you do. Starting in Japan in the 1970s, grouping personalities by blood type also became very popular in Asia. Younger Chinese people will often ask your blood type as a window into what kind of person you are. Thus it is helpful to come to China with all three pieces of information prepared.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #58

The 4 Chinese Tones

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 2 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

58

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
声调	声调	shēngdiào	tone
一声	一声	yīshēng	first tone, the flat tone
二声	二声	èrshēng	second tone, the rising tone
三声	三声	sānshēng	third tone, the falling-rising tone
四声	四声	sìshēng	fourth tone, the falling tone

SAMPLE SENTENCES

外国人要学好汉语声调很困难。 wàiguórén yào xuéhǎo hànyǔ shēngdiào hěn kùnnan. It is difficult for a foreigner to learn Chinese tones well.	"一"有时候发一声，有时候发二声。 "yī" yǒu shíhou fā yī shēng, yǒu shíhou fā èr shēng The word "一" sometimes is with the first tone, though sometimes with the second tone.
"一"有时候发一声，有时候发二声。 "yī" yǒu shíhou fā yī shēng, yǒu shíhou fā èr shēng The word "一" sometimes is with the first tone, though sometimes with the second tone.	学习中文的人发三声的时候听起来很怪。 xuéxí Zhōngwén de rén fā sān shēng de shíhou tīng qǐlai hěn guài. It sounds strange when a Chinese learner pronounces a third toned word.
四声发音不是很难。 sì shēng fāyīn bù shì hěn nán. It is not that hard to pronounce a falling tone.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In fact, Chinese is not a particularly hard language. The beginning, the time when you are first learning, is enough to make anyone cry, but once you get past the two major hurdles, once you adapt to the idea of a tonal and pictographic language, the rest is just memorization. Chinese grammar is exceedingly simple. It is nothing in comparison to English grammar. English, and many other languages, seems easy to learn at first, but, if you want to speak like a native speaker, it is almost impossible. People who have lived in America for most of their lives still make small grammatical errors that give them away as non-native speakers. Chinese grammar contains none of these complex permutations. Words are just thrown together in sentences. Word order is very formulaic, and also reasonably flexible. Plus there's no conjugating anything. Chinese people often complain about all the tenses in English. Why do you need all these different configurations of verbs? they ask. Chinese gets by without ever changing the way a verb, or any other word, is said. This makes it very easy to copy the way native speakers speak. The hardest part is getting the pronunciation right.

But, even in this area, there is a lot of room to move. That there are so many people speaking so many different dialects in China works to your advantage. Many native Chinese-speakers grew up speaking a dialect other than Mandarin and thus don't have standard pronunciation. Many people mistake Michael for a Chinese person on the phone. Yes, his Chinese is good, but a big part of why they do this is that Chinese people are used to giving leeway in pronunciation, they are used to hearing people who pronounce words differently than they do. "Yes," Michael responds when people say he sounds like a Chinese person, "like a Chinese person, but not quite a Beijinger." "Oh, no. Not quite a Beijinger," they say. Beijingers are the standard for Mandarin pronunciation. "Maybe someone from Hunan," they offer. The bar for pronunciation is set low in China.

That being said, all dialects of Chinese are tonal, thus Chinese people all know how to wrap their vocal chords around pitch inflections. This is something you need to practice. You might be able to get by, kind of, without learning tones, but you won't ever have anything bordering on meaningful conversation.

In Mandarin, the national, standard dialect of Chinese, there are four tones. (Some other dialects have more tones. Cantonese, for example, has eight.) Chinese people number the tones and talk about them as "first tone," "second tone," "third tone," and "fourth tone." "Tone" in Chinese is *shēngdiào*. *Shēng* means "sound" or "voice" and *diào* means "transfer" or "shift."

Shēngdiào can refer to tone in the larger sense, as in the sound of a musical instrument or someone's singing voice, but it is also the word that refers specifically to the tones of Chinese characters. We will not only refer to tones by their numbers, but we will also give them names based on the way the pitch changes. This should, hopefully, make them easier to remember. Using the romanization system of Chinese, called pinyin, the tones are noted by placing different accent marks above the vowels in a word. These accent mark directly reflect the change of inflection called for by the tone.

The first tone is the flat tone. When saying words with the first tone your pitch does not change. You start out somewhat high and stay there, holding it. This is also sometimes called the singing tone, because holding this tone is like holding a note when singing. This tone is signified with a flat, horizontal line above a vowel: *ā*. In Chinese, "first tone" is *yīshēng*. *Yī* means "one" and *shēng* means "sound." All the Chinese names for the tones follow this pattern: a number and then the word for "sound" or "voice."

The second tone is the rising tone. It starts out below the first tone and then rises up in pitch. Michael pulled out the length of the tone in order to try to demonstrate how the sound moves, but you don't have to make it that long. It is important that, in order to differentiate the second tone from other tones, namely the third tone, you make sure the tone only goes up. It should not stay flat or go down at any point. Michael, in his attempt to stretch it out for you to hear, has sometimes allowed it to start out a little flat and this can be confusing to the Chinese ear. There is no need for this tone to be long, and most Chinese pronounce very quickly. Second tone is symbolized by a rising line above a vowel: *á*. In Chinese, "second tone" is *èrshēng*. *Èr* means "two."

The third tone is the falling-rising tone. The tone starts out somewhere below the level of the first tone, then comes down rather low, becoming kind of guttural, before rising up again to at least the level of its origin. The third tone is usually the most difficult for English-speakers. The most important part of this tone is getting your voice down lower. If you pull your pitch from a normal level down into your throat while saying a word, you find that it often rises naturally at the end. Thus if you just concentrate on the deep part of this sound you can often trick yourself into saying the whole tone somewhat correctly and get something which Chinese people will recognize as third tone. The third tone is symbolized by a v-shape above a vowel: *ǎ*. In Chinese, "third tone" is *sānshēng*. *Sān* means "three."

The fourth tone is the falling tone. You start out high, like a first tone, but then fall rapidly. A lot of people think this sounds like a first tone, only one that is said very quickly. Whatever it sounds like to you, that is okay, but you must remember to make the tone fall. Perhaps it is that English-speakers naturally cause their pitch to fall when saying a word rapidly, as

Michael demonstrated by comparing the fourth tone to the tone one uses in English to make an annoyed order. One must remember though, that it is possible possible to say a very quick, short first tone, where your pitch does not move. It is thus important to pay attention to your pitch and make sure it is actually falling. The fourth tone is denoted by a falling dash over a vowel: à. "Fourth tone" in Chinese is *sìshēng*. *Sì* means "four."

Those are the tones. We must remind you how absolutely central tones are to the Chinese language. To begin with, Chinese is a language full of homophones, words that sound exactly the same. Thus Chinese people are used to differentiating words based on context, but if you don't pronounce the tone, you've made your word at least four times harder to understand. You have to remember, Chinese people are not used to people not pronouncing the tone. The tone, for them, is a normal part of how one indicates different words. It would be similar to pronouncing all f's, h's, s's, and m's as f in English. Try it. Yes, you could sometimes guess what somebody was saying if they did this, especially if you were aware of their problem beforehand, but, out of the blue, their speech would be generally unintelligible. Not pronouncing tones in Chinese is probably even worse of a handicap than what we just mentioned. This is why you may feel like you are pronouncing the word for "bike tire" correctly, you may be point at bicycle tires, but the man at the repair shop still stares at you blankly. "What? Great Wall of China?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip #1

The tone mark is always placed over the vowel in a word, but some words have two vowels. In these cases the mark is written over the vowel that opens your mouth the most. Thus *i* never gets the tone mark if it is with another vowel. *A* always gets the tone mark when it is with other vowels. Here are some examples: *liù, shǎo, qiē, shòu, cuò*. That should give you enough of an idea. Of course, placing the tone mark over the wrong vowel would never actually cause any confusion anyway.

Quick Tip #2

As is true with all languages, many people learn to read and write first, or at least they learn their basics from books. While listening to podcasts is a little better than a book, it is still something else entirely to speak and communicate with other people. You need to be brave

and make this step. You will learn the most when you are in situations where you have to use Chinese to communicate, where it is no longer something you just play around with, but a real medium for meaning. No matter how embarrassing or tough it may be, you have to make an effort to talk to Chinese people in China if you want your Chinese to get better. The best situation is talking to people who speak little or no English. Then you are really forced to learn communication skills.

That being said, let us suggest that you try to find other Chinese learners to practice with. You will find these situations much less stressful, as both of you are coming from the same position and you both probably understand the need to speak clearly and slowly. In addition, you are likely to have very similar vocabularies and will use only what's necessary to communicate your meaning. One may often lose what a native speaker is saying because of embellishments.

The best situation is to find a fellow Chinese-learner who does not speak English. In China there are many Japanese, Russians, and Koreans—especially Koreans—learning Chinese. Some of them have somewhat good English, but you will find many people who are more comfortable communicating in Chinese. It sometimes feels rather silly to speak to a fellow English-speaker in Chinese, especially when you know you could be communicating much more easily. This is not so with a Korean who does not speak English. They have the advantages of both worlds. They will speak slowly and use basic vocabulary, but it is still necessary that you use Chinese if you hope to communicate. Perhaps their pronunciation will not be exactly right, but, if you are going to be in China for a while, these kinds of friends make a comfortable incubator to sustain you between your ventures among Chinese people. Plus, you can exchange stories about how weird China is.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #59

Have a Great Trip!

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

59

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Hi guys, (And girls. Though I really think "guys," when plural, is a unisex way of addressing people. My boss says I'm going to catch a lot of flak for this.)

First of all, I want to say thank you if you have made it this far in the podcasts. I listened to my taped thank you message and it sounds very rushed and kind of insincere. Thinking back on the time when we were recording the podcasts, it probably was very rushed. The podcasts were done on kind of a whim. It was a part time job that I found while stopping in Tokyo for a few months. All 60 lessons had to be done before I got the boat back to China. We recorded the last corrections the day before I left. I had already moved out of my apartment and was living in a friend's house with all my stuff crammed in my backpack.

By the time the podcasts started to come out I was already back in Beijing. There's a lot I wish I could change about them; tips I wish I'd put in, times when I think my pronunciation wasn't clear, phrases that I later realized you should have. I tried to put all these things in the PDFs that accompany the lessons. I know the PDFs refer to me in third person. I wish I hadn't decided to write them that way. Having to use third person made for some really awkward sentences.

Since this is the last time I'm going to be addressing you guys, the bosses suggested I give you the best pieces of advice I can think of. I'm kind of drawing a blank. The best advice I can give is something very simple, though perhaps some people will find it a little off-putting. It goes: Don't be a lazy wimp.

You made it to China. Did you come all this way to eat McDonald's, drink Starbucks, and join other foreigners in whining about the locals and their living conditions? Yes, China can be a bit dirty, the food is spicy, people don't speak English and some of them like to spit. There, I've said it. Now you know before you get here. You can't feign shock and horror when people are a little, or sometimes very, rude and there is garbage on the street. It is your decision to come here and, to some degree, you know what you're getting into. I wish I could curse in this thank you note. Being a New Yorker, I feel I need vulgar language to express this next sentiment: China is freaking amazing! Don't let yourself miss it because you stayed in a little foreigner bubble, because you spent your whole time eating in hotel lobbies, being carted around from sight to sight, and having drinks in expensive bars. Get out of your safe zone: eat street food, go to little restaurants, start up conversations with anyone who is willing to try to communicate

with you, go out of your way to meet locals, watch the people on the street closely.

That's really the best tip I have for you: Remember that you're in China. Every once in a while think about that. Say it to yourself as you walk down the street, "I'm in China." Isn't that kind of ridiculous? When you were five would you ever have imagined yourself in China? It's hilarious, isn't it.

Make friends with people who don't speak English. This is the way you really learn a language. It is only when you are forced to communicate that you really learn how to. If you always stay around English speakers, if you've always got this crutch, then Chinese will be nothing more than a little trick you pull to get cheap souvenirs. And, more importantly, if you meet locals, you will actually be interacting with China; with the real China that most Chinese people live in, touch, and smell everyday. China is more than big stores and a really long wall. It is more than crowds of smiling spectators who giggle at you. You won't know unless you try to communicate. You can't ever feel the sincere and defensive Chinese patriotism, the uninhibited exuberance of Chinese drinking partners, or the bold, matter-of-fact, and yet sometimes shockingly tender curiosity that comes out in Chinese life. If you leave China with no Chinese friends, then you've really missed out. This isn't to say that one should always avoid nice hotels and bars with foreigners in them. Heck, sometimes I would kill to hear an American accent calling out, "Cheers!" But it's important to remember that cheap beer and cheap food is not all there is to China. Plus, if you stick to the foreign places, it won't really be that cheap.

Eat like a Chinese person. My friend David visited me and we spent the whole time eating on the street and in little dirty restaurants. We made sure to wash it down with Chinese *baijiu* (112 proof Chinese liquor) to kill any bacteria there might be. (Chinese people do actually have a habit of consuming *baijiu* whenever they have seafood to counteract anything in the seafood that might possibly make you sick.) David went to the Great Wall by himself. I was busy writing PDFs for the site. David came back tired as hell, but laughing. "There was this guy who kept complaining about China," David reported. "He said he threw up all over the Great Wall. He kept saying China was too dirty and cursing the people who made his omelette at his hotel." Are you coming to China to have omelettes? Actually, I understand that the hardest part of your diet to change is often breakfast, but you'd be amazed how many delicious things there are out there. Just bring your *Wǒ yào zhège*. ("I want this.") and you're totally prepared for street food. Don't be afraid of eating everything and anything, it won't hurt you. The only thing I don't eat is fresh fruit on a stick that they sell on the street. And that has only made me sick once in over a year of eating it.

So that's it. Don't sleep, go out. Don't turn down food and drinks. Don't forget to remind

yourself what's going on. You're in China, for God's sake. When is this going to happen again? Look at the sky, the buildings, the buses, the people around you, and laugh out loud. Then go talk to Chinese people. Take the bus with them. Take the hard sleeper. Offer them an orange. They will more than repay you and you won't forget it.

I really hope you enjoyed the podcasts. I hope you learned something. But, most of all, I hope this is the start of a wonderful adventure. When was the last time you had an adventure? Aren't you due for one?

Sincerely,

Michael



ChineseClass101.com



LEARN CHINESE: DISCOVER
**CHINESE
CULTURE
& TRADITIONS**



ChineseClass101.com

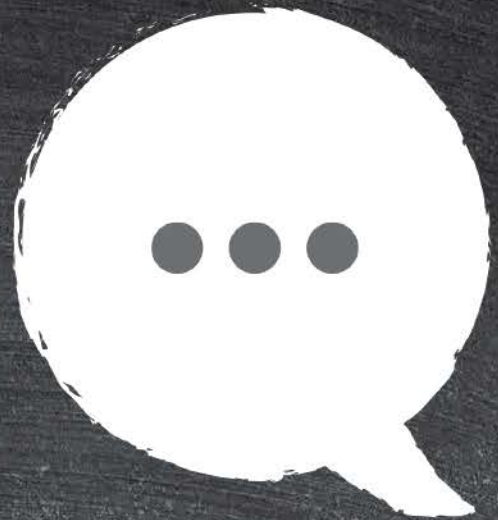
BONUS
TRAVEL TO
CHINA
CHEAT SHEET

innoVativeLANGUAGE.COM

If you love the **Chinese** language, then you'll love this!

Get our Complete **Chinese** Learning Program
at **ChineseClass101.com**.

- Speak **Chinese** From Your First Lesson
- Access hundreds of Audio & Video Courses
by Real Teachers
- Get **FREE** New Lessons Every Week
- Learn Anywhere, Anytime on Any Android
Device or Computer



Go to
ChineseClass101.com
and sign up for your

FREE

Lifetime Account!



LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #1

National Holidays

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

#1

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most important public holidays in China?
2. 1. 春节
3. 2. 端午节
4. 3. 清明节
5. 4. 中秋节
6. 5. 国庆节

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most important public holidays in China?
2. 1. 春節
3. 2. 端午節
4. 3. 清明節
5. 4. 中秋節
6. 5. 國慶節

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most important public holidays in China?
2. 1. Chūn jié
3. 2. Duānwǔ jié
4. 3. Qīngmíng jié
5. 4. Zhōngqiū jié
6. 5. Guóqìng jié

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most important public holidays in China?
2. 1. Chinese New Year
3. 2. Dragon Boat Festival
4. 3. Tomb-Sweeping Festival
5. 4. Mid-Autumn Festival
6. 5. National Day

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
端午节	端午節	Duānwǔ jié	Dragon Boat Festival

春节	春節	Chūn jié	Chinese New Year
清明节	清明節	Qīngmíng jié	Tomb-Sweeping Festival
中秋节	中秋節	Zhōngqiū jié	Mid-Autumn Festival
国庆节	國慶節	Guóqìng jié	National Day

SAMPLE SENTENCES

端午节要吃粽子。 Duānwǔjié yào chī zòngzi. People eat rice dumplings during the Dragon Boat Festival.	春节是一个团圆的日子。 Chūn jié shì yí gè tuányuán de rìzi. Chinese New Year is a time for family gatherings.
清明节去踏青。 Qīngmíng jié qù tàqīng. People go outside and enjoy the greenery during the Tomb-Sweeping Festival.	中秋节要吃月饼。 Zhōngqiū jié yào chī yuèbǐng. People eat moon cake during the Mid-Autumn Festival.
国庆节有焰火表演。 Guóqìng jié yǒu yànhuǒ biǎoyǎn. A fireworks display is held on National Day.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Chinese New Year

Also known as Spring Festival, Chinese New Year is the most important traditional holiday in China. The celebration lasts from Chinese New Year's Eve, which is the last day of the last lunar month, until the Lantern Festival, which is the 15th day of the first lunar month.

2. Dragon Boat Festival

The Dragon Boat Festival is celebrated on the fifth day of the fifth lunar month, so it's also called the Double Fifth. Celebrations generally include eating rice dumplings, drinking realgar wine, and racing dragon boats.

3. Tomb-Sweeping Festival

The Tomb-Sweeping Festival usually occurs around the fifth day of the fourth lunar month. It is a time for people to sweep the tombs of their departed family members.

4. Mid-Autumn Festival

The Mid-Autumn Festival is on the fifteenth day of the eighth lunar month during a full moon. On this day, family members gather to share mooncakes and gaze at the moon for celebration.

5. National Day

The People's Republic of China was founded on October 1, 1949, so the Chinese mark this anniversary of this day every year as National Day. The day is also the beginning of Golden Week, which is when most Chinese go shopping or traveling.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #2

Foods

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

2

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular foods in China?
2. 1. 饺子
3. 2. 汤圆
4. 3. 粽子
5. 4. 火锅
6. 5. 小笼包

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular foods in China?
2. 1. 餃子
3. 2. 湯圓
4. 3. 粽子
5. 4. 火鍋
6. 5. 小籠包

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular foods in China?
2. 1. jiǎozi
3. 2. tāngyuán
4. 3. zòngzǐ
5. 4. huǒguō
6. 5. xiǎolóngbāo

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular foods in China?
2. 1. Chinese dumpling
3. 2. tangyuan
4. 3. zongzi
5. 4. hot pot
6. 5. xiaolongbao

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
饺子	餃子	jiǎozi	Chinese dumpling

汤圆	湯圓	tāngyuán	tangyuan
粽子	粽子	zòngzi	zongzi
火锅	火鍋	huǒguō	hot pot
小笼包	小籠包	xiǎolóngbāo	xiaolongbao

SAMPLE SENTENCES

北方过年要吃饺子。 Běifāng guònián yào chī jiǎozi. In North China, people eat Chinese dumplings to celebrate the Chinese New Year.	中国有过冬至吃汤圆的习俗。 Zhōngguó yǒu guò dōngzhì chī tāngyuán xísú. In China, it is a traditional custom to serve tangyuan during the Winter Solstice Festival.
人们通过吃粽子来纪念诗人屈原。 Rénmen tōngguò chī zòngzi lái jìniàn shīrén Qū Yuán. People eat zongzi to commemorate the death of the poet Qu Yuan.	四川的麻辣火锅非常受欢迎。 Sìchuān de mála huǒguō fēicháng shòu huānyíng. The spicy Sichuan hot pot is very popular.
小笼包是上海著名的小吃。 Xiǎolóngbāo shì Shànghǎi zhùmíng de xiǎochī . Xiaolongbao is a famous Shanghai snack.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Chinese dumpling

Chinese dumplings are one of the most popular foods in China, especially in the north. They are made up of a small piece of dough stuffed with ground meat and various vegetables like cabbage, celery, or leek.

2. Tangyuan

Tangyuan is made from glutinous rice flour mixed with water and formed into balls, which are then cooked in boiling water. Usually they are served with several kinds of sweet fillings like sesame, red bean, or chopped peanuts.

3. Zongzi

Zongzi is a traditional food also known as a rice dumplings. *Zongzi* is made of glutinous rice stuffed with different fillings and wrapped in bamboo, reed, or other large flat leaves.

4. Hot Pot

A hot pot is a simmering metal pot placed at the center of the dining table. While the hot pot simmers, ingredients like meat, leafy vegetables, wontons, and egg dumplings are placed into it and cooked at the table.

5. Xiaolongbao

Xiaolongbao is a popular traditional Chinese food which is steamed in small bamboo baskets. They are traditionally filled with pork, but variations include other meats, seafood, and vegetarian fillings.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #3

Beverages

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

3

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular beverages in China?
2. 1. 乌龙茶
3. 2. 普洱茶
4. 3. 白酒
5. 4. 啤酒
6. 5. 珍珠奶茶

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular beverages in China?
2. 1. 烏龍茶
3. 2. 普洱茶
4. 3. 白酒
5. 4. 啤酒
6. 5. 珍珠奶茶

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular beverages in China?
2. 1. wūlóng chá
3. 2. pǔěr chá
4. 3. bái jiǔ
5. 4. pí jiǔ
6. 5. zhēnzhū nǎi chá

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular beverages in China?
2. 1. oolong tea
3. 2. puerh tea
4. 3. white liquor
5. 4. beer
6. 5. bubble tea

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
普洱茶	普洱茶	pǔěr chá	puerh tea

乌龙茶	烏龍茶	wūlóng chá	oolong tea
白酒	白酒	báijiǔ	white liquor
啤酒	啤酒	píjiǔ	beer
珍珠奶茶	珍珠奶茶	zhēnzhū nǎichá	bubble tea

SAMPLE SENTENCES

云南是普洱茶的产地。 Yúnnán shì pǔ ěr chá de chǎndì. Puerh tea is produced in Yunnan.	乌龙茶对身体有好处。 Wūlóngchá duì shēntǐ yǒu hǎochù . Oolong tea is good for health.
在中国，喝白酒是一种文化。 Zài Zhōngguó, hē báijiǔ shì yìzhǒng wénhuà. Drinking baijiu is a kind of culture in China.	来瓶啤酒。 Lái píng píjiǔ. I'll have a bottle of beer.
珍珠奶茶有很多种口味。 Zhēnzhū nǎichá yǒu hěnduō zhǒng kǒuwèi. There are many different flavors of bubble tea.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Oolong Tea

Oolong tea is a traditional Chinese tea that can be sweet and fruity with honey aromas, woody and thick with roasted aromas, or green and fresh with bouquet aromas.

2. Puerh Tea

Puerh is a variety of dark tea produced in Yunnan Province. It's named after the region which was a trading post for dark tea during the time of imperial China.

3. White Liquor

Baijiu is a distilled liquor with an alcohol by volume ranging from forty percent to sixty percent. In the South, *baijiu* is generally made from glutinous rice, but in the North it is distilled from sorghum, wheat, barley or millet.

4. Beer

Beer is often served during informal occasions with friends or family members. The most popular beer in China is Qingdao Beer, a brand which originates from the city of Qingdao in Shandong province.

5. Bubble Tea

Bubble tea is a tea-based drink from Taiwan which comes with small, chewy tapioca balls called pearls. There are generally two types: fruit-flavored teas and milk teas.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #4

Home-cooked Meals

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

4

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular home cooked meals in China?
2. 1. 东坡肉
3. 2. 宫保鸡丁
4. 3. 叉烧
5. 4. 麻婆豆腐
6. 5. 皮蛋

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular home cooked meals in China?
2. 1. 東坡肉
3. 2. 宮保雞丁
4. 3. 叉燒
5. 4. 麻婆豆腐
6. 5. 皮蛋

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular home cooked meals in China?
2. 1. Dōngpō ròu
3. 2. gōngbǎo jīdīng
4. 3. chāshāo
5. 4. mápó dòufǔ
6. 5. pídan

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular home cooked meals in China?
2. 1. Dongpo Pork
3. 2. Kung Pao chicken
4. 3. Char siu
5. 4. Mapo tofu
6. 5. century egg

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
东坡肉	東坡肉	Dōngpō ròu	Dongpo Pork

宫保鸡丁	宮保雞丁	gōngbǎo jīdīng	Kung Pao chicken
叉烧	叉燒	chāshāo	Char siu
麻婆豆腐	麻婆豆腐	mápó dòufǔ	Mapo tofu
皮蛋	皮蛋	pídàn	century egg

SAMPLE SENTENCES

东坡肉是以宋朝诗人苏东坡的名字命名的。 Dōngpō ròu shì yǐ sòngcháo shīrén Sū Dōngpō de míngzì míngmíng de. Dongpo Pork is named after the famed Song Dynasty poet Su Dongpo.	宫保鸡丁是一道川菜。 Gōngbǎo jīdīng shì yídào chuāncài. Kung Pao chicken is a dish in Sichuan cuisine.
叉烧非常好吃。 Chāshāo fēicháng hǎochī . Char siu is very delicious.	麻婆豆腐在日本很受欢迎。 Mápó dòufǔ zài rìběn hěn shòu huānyíng . Mapo tofu is popular in Japan.
皮蛋有很多种做法。 Pídàn yǒu hěnduō zhǒng zuòfǎ . There are many ways to cook century eggs.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Dongpo Pork

Dongpo pork is a dish made by pan-frying and then red cooking pork belly. The pork is cut small and consists of half fat and half lean meat.

2. Kung Pao Chicken

Kung Pao chicken is a spicy stir-fry dish made with chicken, peanuts, vegetables, and chili peppers. It is a classic dish in Sichuan cuisine and is very popular throughout China.

3. Char Siu

Char siu is a popular way to flavor and prepare barbecued pork in Chinese cuisine. It can be served either separately or with other food.

4. Mapo Tofu

Mapo tofu is a popular dish from the Sichuan province. It is a combination of tofu set in a spicy chili sauce and often cooked with fermented black beans and minced pork or beef.

5. Century Egg

A century egg is a common ingredient in Chinese cuisine. It is made by preserving duck, chicken, or quail eggs in a mixture of clay, ash, salt, quicklime, and rice hulls for several weeks to several months.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #5

Sweets and desserts

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

5

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular sweets and desserts in China?
2. 1. 金银馒头
3. 2. 老婆饼
4. 3. 龙须糖
5. 4. 沙琪玛
6. 5. 龟苓膏

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular sweets and desserts in China?
2. 1. 金銀饅頭
3. 2. 老婆餅
4. 3. 龍鬚糖
5. 4. 沙琪瑪
6. 5. 龜苓膏

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular sweets and desserts in China?
2. 1. jīnyín mántou
3. 2. lǎopó bǐng
4. 3. Lóngxū táng
5. 4. shāqíma
6. 5. guīlínggāo

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular sweets and desserts in China?
2. 1. Steamed and Deep-Fried Mantou
3. 2. Sweetheart cake
4. 3. Dragon's Beard Candy
5. 4. Sachima
6. 5. Tortoise Jelly

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
------------	-------------	--------	---------

金银馒头	金銀饅頭	jīnyín mántou	Steamed and deep-fried mantou
老婆饼	老婆餅	lǎopó bǐng	Sweetheart cake
龙须糖	龍鬚糖	Lóngxū táng	Dragon's Beard Candy
沙琪玛	沙琪瑪	shāqímǎ	Sachima
龟苓膏	龜苓膏	guīlínggāo	Tortoise Jelly

SAMPLE SENTENCES

金银馒头是一道甜点。 Jīnyín mántou shì yídào tiándiǎn . Steamed and deep-fried mantou is a dessert.	买老婆饼送给老婆。 Mǎi lǎopó bǐngsòng gěi lǎopó. People buy sweetheart cakes as a gift for their wife.
据说龙须糖有上千年的历史。 Jùshuō Lóngxū táng yǒu shàng qiān nián de lìshǐ. It is said that Dragon's Beard Candy has a history of more than one thousand years.	沙琪玛是满族的一种食物。 Shāqímǎ shì Mǎnzúde yìzhǒng shíwù . Sachima is a Manchu food.
人们在夏天吃龟苓膏。 Rénmen zài xiàtiān chī guīlínggāo . People eat Tortoise Jelly in summer.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Steamed and Deep-Fried Mantou

Steamed and deep-fried mantou is also called steamed and deep-fried mini bun. It is often

served with sweetened condensed milk as a dessert in Chinese restaurants.

2. Sweetheart cake

Sweetheart cake is a traditional Chinese pastry with flaky, thin skin made with winter melon, almond paste, and sesame and spiced with five spice powder.

3. Dragon's Beard Candy

Dragon's Beard Candy is an old-fashioned candy with a rich, sweet flavor. It has a threaded, chewy texture, and its appearance resembles that of a white cocoon or pillow shape.

4. Sachima

Sachima mainly consists of flour, butter, and rock sugar or rock candy. *Sachima* has a soft texture which makes it especially popular with older people and children.

5. Tortoise Jelly

Tortoise Jelly is often eaten for its herbal flavor during summer.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #6

Fruits

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

6

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular fruits in China?
2. 1. 荔枝
3. 2. 哈密瓜
4. 3. 龙眼
5. 4. 桃
6. 5. 枇杷

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular fruits in China?
2. 1. 荔枝
3. 2. 哈密瓜
4. 3. 龍眼
5. 4. 桃
6. 5. 枇杷

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular fruits in China?
2. 1. lìzhī
3. 2. Hāmì guā
4. 3. lóng yǎn
5. 4. táo
6. 5. pípá

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular fruits in China?
2. 1. lychee
3. 2. Hami melon
4. 3. longan
5. 4. peach
6. 5. loquat

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
荔枝	荔枝	lìzhī	lychee

哈密瓜	哈密瓜	Hāmì guā	Hami melon
龙眼	龍眼	lóng yǎn	longan
桃	桃	táo	peach
枇杷	枇杷	pípá	loquat

SAMPLE SENTENCES

关于杨贵妃和荔枝，有一首非常著名的诗：一骑红尘妃子笑，无人知是荔枝来。 Guānyú Yáng Guìfēi hé lìzhī, yǒu yì shǒu fēicháng zhùmíng de shī : yí jì hóngchén fēizǐ xiào , wú rén zhī shì lìzhī lái . There's a very famous poem regarding Yang Guifei and the lychee: "At a horse raising red dust, the imperial concubine smiled; No one knew it was for the lychee fruit it had brought."	提起哈密瓜人们就会想到新疆。 Tíqǐ Hāmìguā rénmen jiù huì xiǎng dào Xīnjiāng. When Hami melon is mentioned, people think of Xinjiang.
中医认为龙眼会使人上火。 Zhōngyī rènwéi lóngyǎn huì shǐ rén shànguǒ. In Chinese medicine, the longan is thought to give internal "heat."	孙悟空爱吃水蜜桃。 Sūnwùkōng ài chī shuǐmítáo. The Monkey King loves eating honey peach.
初夏是枇杷成熟的季节。 Chūxià shì pípá chéngshú de jìjié. Loquat fruit is ripe in early summer.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1.

Lychee

The lychee has a whitish pulp with a floral smell and a fragrant, sweet flavor. It is usually eaten fresh.

2. Hami melon

A hami melon is a type of melon, originally from Hami in Xinjiang, Western China. Its outer color is generally white with pink or yellow with green.

3. Longan

A longan is a tropical tree that produces edible fruit. The tree's name literally means "dragon eye" because its fruit resembles an eyeball when it is shelled.

4. Peach

The peach is a popular fruit native to Northwest China. In China, the honey peach variety is particularly popular for its sweetness.

5. Loquat

Loquats contain several large brown seeds. Its skin is thin but can be peeled off by hand when the fruit is ripe.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #7

Vegetables

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

#7

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular vegetables in China?
2. 1. 番茄
3. 2. 红薯
4. 3. 胡萝卜
5. 4. 大白菜
6. 5. 辣椒

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular vegetables in China?
2. 1. 番茄
3. 2. 紅薯
4. 3. 胡蘿卜
5. 4. 大白菜
6. 5. 辣椒

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular vegetables in China?
2. 1. fānqié
3. 2. hóngshǔ
4. 3. húluóbo
5. 4. dàbáicài
6. 5. làjiāo

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular vegetables in China?
2. 1. tomato
3. 2. sweet potato
4. 3. carrot
5. 4. Chinese cabbage
6. 5. chili pepper

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
番茄	番茄	fānqié	tomato

红薯	紅薯	hóngshǔ	sweet potato
胡萝卜	胡蘿卜	húluóbo	carrot
大白菜	大白菜	dàbáicài	Chinese cabbage
辣椒	辣椒	làjiāo	chili pepper

SAMPLE SENTENCES

在中国，番茄又叫西红柿。 Zài Zhōngguó, fānqié yòu jiào xīhóngshì. In Chinese, tomato is also called "xihongshi".	烤红薯在冬天很受欢迎。 Kǎo hóngshǔ zài dōngtiān hěn shòu huānyíng. Baked sweet potato is popular during winter.
胡萝卜含有丰富的维生素。 Húluóbo hányǒu fēngfù de wéishēngsù. Carrot is rich in vitamins.	大白菜可以用来做泡菜。 Dàbáicài kěyǐ yòng lái zuò pāocài. Chinese cabbage can be used to make pickles.
制作辣油时，辣椒的味儿很呛鼻子。 Zhìzuò làyóu shí, làjiāo de wèi er hěn qiàng bízi. When making chili oil, the smell of chili pepper really irritates the nose.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Tomato

The Chinese often cook a tomato with an egg to make soup or a tomato omelette.

2. Sweet potato

Sweet potato is very common in China, especially in the North. The yellow variety is usually baked in a large iron drum and sold as street food during the winter.

3. Carrot

In traditional Chinese medicine, the carrot is known to be a vegetable that's especially healthy, especially for the eyes, and is called "little ginseng."

4. Chinese cabbage

Chinese cabbage is more common in northern China. It has succulent, white stems with dark green leaves and is often used in home-cooked dishes.

5. Chili pepper

The chili pepper is a common ingredient in Chinese dishes. Fresh or dried chilies are often used to make chili oil to add spice to other dishes.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #8

Food Souvenirs

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

8

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular food souvenirs in China?
2. 1. 茶
3. 2. 腊肉
4. 3. 蛋挞
5. 4. 茅台
6. 5. 月饼

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular food souvenirs in China?
2. 1. 茶
3. 2. 臘肉
4. 3. 蛋撻
5. 4. 茅台
6. 5. 月餅

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular food souvenirs in China?
2. 1. chá
3. 2. làròu
4. 3. dàntǎ
5. 4. Máotái
6. 5. yuèbǐng

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular food souvenirs in China?
2. 1. tea
3. 2. cured meat
4. 3. egg tart
5. 4. Maotai
6. 5. mooncake

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
茶	茶	chá	tea

腊肉	臘肉	làròu	cured meat
蛋挞	蛋撻	dàntǎ	egg tart
茅台	茅台	Máotái	Maotai
月饼	月餅	yuèbǐng	mooncake

SAMPLE SENTENCES

茶很适合赠送给长辈。 Chá hěn shìhé zèngsòng gěi zhǎngbèi . Tea is a good gift for elders.	我喝茶。 Wǒ hē chá. I drink tea.
过年可以赠送腊肉。 Guònián kěyǐ zèngsòng làròu. You can send cured meat as a Chinese New Year's gift.	蛋挞在香港很受欢迎。 Dàntǎ zài Xiānggǎng hěn shòu huānyíng. Egg tart is popular in Hong Kong.
有一种说法很流行：“买茅台的不喝，喝茅台的不买。” Yǒu yìzhǒng shuōfǎ hěn liúxíng : " mǎi Máotái de bù hē, hē Máotái de bù mǎi . " There is a popular adage: "Those that buy Maotai don't drink it; those that drink Maotai don't buy it".	月饼象征着团圆。 Yuèbǐng xiàngzhēng zhe tuányuán . The mooncake symbolizes family reunion.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Tea

China is well known for its tea and tea culture since, high quality tea is often sent as a gift.

2. Cured meat

Cured meat is popular in southern China, especially in Canton, Sichuan, Hunan, and Jiangxi. Generally the meat is cured during the last lunar month so it is called *la rou* in Chinese.

3. Egg tart

Egg tart is a popular dessert in mainland China, Hong Kong, and Macau. It consists of an outer pastry crust that is filled with egg custard and baked.

4. Maotai

Maotai is a Chinese liquor produced in the town of Maotai, Guizhou Province. Maotai is very expensive, so people usually see it as a good gift rather than purely as a drink.

5. Mooncake

A mooncake is a bakery product traditionally eaten during the Mid-Autumn Festival. Mooncakes are usually put in nice packaging for purchase, and the better the packaging, the more expensive the mooncake.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #9

Pop and Traditional Culture

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

9

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular examples of pop or traditional culture in China?
2. 1. 京剧
3. 2. 书法
4. 3. 儒家思想
5. 4. 武术
6. 5. 中医

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are five examples of pop or traditional culture in China?
2. 1. 京劇
3. 2. 書法
4. 3. 儒家思想
5. 4. 武術
6. 5. 中醫

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are five examples of pop or traditional culture in China?
2. 1. jīngjù
3. 2. shūfǎ
4. 3. Rújiā sīxiǎng
5. 4. wǔshù
6. 5. zhōngyī

ENGLISH

1. What are five examples of pop or traditional culture in China?
2. 1. Beijing opera
3. 2. Chinese calligraphy
4. 3. Confucianism
5. 4. Chinese martial arts
6. 5. Traditional Chinese medicine

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
京剧	京劇	jīngjù	Beijing opera

书法	書法	shūfǎ	Chinese calligraphy
儒家思想	儒家思想	Rújiāsixiǎng	Confucianism
武术	武術	wǔshù	Chinese martial arts
中医	中醫	zhōngyī	traditional Chinese medicine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

一般来说，京剧里有四种主要角色：生，旦，净，丑。 Yìbānláishuō, jīngjù lǐ yǒu sì zhǒng zhǔyào juésè : shēng , dàn , jìng , chǒu. Generally speaking, there are four major types of roles in Beijing opera: Sheng, Dan, Jing and Chou.	写书法所需的笔墨纸砚被称为"文房四宝"。 Xiě shūfǎ suǒxū de bǐ mò zhǐ yàn bèi chēngwéi "wénfángsìbǎo" . The necessary implements of Chinese calligraphy—the ink brush, ink, paper and inkstone—are referred to as the Four Treasures of the Study.
仁是儒家思想的核心。 Rén shì Rújiāsixiǎng de héxīn. Ren (Humaneness) is at the core of Confucianism.	功夫片深受中国武术的影响。 Gōngfū piān shēn shòu Zhōngguó wǔshù de yǐngxiǎng. Kung fu movies have been greatly influenced by Chinese martial arts.
中医以阴阳五行作为理论基础。 Zhōngyī yǐ yīnyáng wǔxíng zuòwéi lǐlùn jīchǔ. Traditional Chinese medicine is based on the theory of Yin-Yang and Five Phases.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Beijing opera

The Beijing opera combines music, vocal performance, mime, dance, and acrobatics. It is considered "quintessential Chinese culture."

2. Chinese calligraphy

There are a variety of styles of Chinese calligraphy. The essential implements of Chinese calligraphy include the ink brush, ink, paper, and inkstone.

3. Confucianism

Confucianism is an ethical and philosophical system developed from the teachings of Confucius. Confucianism is characterized by its promotion of virtues, including *Ren* (humaneness), *Yi* (righteousness), *Zhong* (loyalty) and *Xiao* (filial piety).

4. Chinese martial arts

There are a number of fighting styles in Chinese martial arts, amongst which the Shaolin style is the first institutionalized one. *Taichi*, *Wing Chun* and *Qigong* are also popular styles among the Chinese.

5. Traditional Chinese medicine

Traditional Chinese medicine includes a broad range of practices created by the Chinese, including herbal medicine, acupuncture, massage, exercise, and dietary therapy. Traditional Chinese medicine takes longer to work than Western medicine does, but it is relatively mild and good for health.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #10

Traditional Clothing

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

10

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most common traditional clothing in China?
2. 1. 旗袍
3. 2. 莲履
4. 3. 襦裙
5. 4. 深衣
6. 5. 唐装

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most common traditional clothing in China?
2. 1. 旗袍
3. 2. 莲履
4. 3. 襦裙
5. 4. 深衣
6. 5. 唐装

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most common traditional clothing in China?
2. 1. qípáo
3. 2. liánlǚ
4. 3. rúqún
5. 4. shēnyī
6. 5. tángzhuāng

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most common traditional clothing in China?
2. 1. Qipao
3. 2. Lotus shoes
4. 3. Ruqun
5. 4. Shenyi
6. 5. Tang suit

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
旗袍	旗袍	qípáo	Qipao

莲履	蓮履	liánlǚ	lotus shoes
襦裙	襦裙	rúqún	ruqun
深衣	深衣	shēnyī	shenyi
唐装	唐装	tángzhuāng	Tang suit

SAMPLE SENTENCES

旗袍在三四十年代非常流行。 Qípáo zài sānsìshí niándài fēicháng liúxíng. Qipao was very fashionable in the 1930s and 1940s.	莲履只有巴掌大小。 Liánlǚ zhǐyǒu bāzhǎng dàxiǎo. Lotus shoes are small enough to fit in the palm of a hand.
襦裙是古代汉族的日常衣着。 Rúqún shì gǔdài hànzú de rìcháng yīzhuó. A ruqun was the daily wear of the Han People in ancient times.	深衣是历史最悠久的服饰之一。 Shēnyī shì lìshǐ zuì cháng de fúshì zhīyī. Shenyi is one of the clothing items with the longest history.
唐装起源于唐人街。 Tángzhuāng qǐ yuán yú táng rén jiē. The Tang suit originated from China Town.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Qipao

A qipao is a body-hugging one-piece dress for women. It was created in the 1920s and was later made fashionable by socialites and upper class women throughout the country.

2. Lotus shoes

Lotus shoes were worn by women in ancient times who had bound feet. Lotus shoes are made in different styles and colors and were usually ornately decorated with embroidered designs of animals or flowers.

3. Ruqun

A *ruqun* is an item of traditional Chinese attire which is primarily for women, although men can also wear it. It consists of a blouse and a wrap-around skirt.

4. Shenyi

Shenyi is traditional Chinese attire for men. It has been the formal wear and court dress since the Shang Dynasty.

5. Tang suit

A Tang suit is a type of formal jacket for men which is worn on many occasions. The suits are made in various colors, often red, navy, gold, black, and green, and they often feature the use of Chinese characters.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #11

Historical figures

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

11

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. Who are the five most famous historical figures in China?
2. 1. 秦始皇
3. 2. 孔子
4. 3. 武则天
5. 4. 孙中山
6. 5. 毛泽东

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. Who are the five most famous historical figures in China?
2. 1. 秦始皇
3. 2. 孔子
4. 3. 武則天
5. 4. 孫中山
6. 5. 毛澤東

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. Who are the five most famous historical figures in China?
2. 1. Qínshǐ Huáng
3. 2. Kǒng Zǐ
4. 3. Wǔ Zétiān
5. 4. Sūn Zhōngshān
6. 5. Máo Zédōng

ENGLISH

1. Who are the five most famous historical figures in China?
2. 1. Qin Shi Huang
3. 2. Confucius
4. 3. Empress Consort Wu
5. 4. Sun Yat-sen
6. 5. Mao Zedong

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Pinyin	English
秦始皇	Qínshǐ Huáng	Qin Shi Huang

孔子	Kǒng Zǐ	Confucius
武则天	Wǔ Zétiān	Empress Consort Wu
孙中山	Sūn Zhōngshān	Sun Yat-sen
毛泽东	Máo Zédōng	Mao Zedong

SAMPLE SENTENCES

秦始皇是中国历史上第一位皇帝。 Qín shǐ huáng shì Zhōngguó lìshǐ shàng dì yī wèi huángdì. Qin Shi Huang was the first emperor in Chinese history.	孔子又被叫作孔夫子。 Kǒngzǐ yòu bèi jiàozuò Kǒng Fūzǐ. Confucius was also called Kong Fuzi (Master Kong).
武则天是中国历史上第一位女皇帝。 Wǔ Zétiān shì Zhōngguó lìshǐ shàng dì yī wèi nǚ huángdì. Empress Consort Wu was the first woman to become an empress of China.	为了纪念孙中山，他的故乡被命名为中山。 Wèile jìniàn Sūnzhōngshān , tā de gùxiāng bèi mìngmíngwéi Zhōngshān . To commemorate Sun Yat-sen, his home town was named Zhongshan.
1949年，毛泽东在北京宣布中华人民共和国成立。 Yījiǔsìjiǔ nián, Máo Zédōng zài Běijīng xuānbù Zhōnghuárénmíngòngghé chénglì. In 1949, Mao Zedong announced the establishment of the People's Republic of China in Beijing.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Qin Shi Huang

Qin Shi Huang was a pivotal figure in Chinese history. After unifying China, the imperial rule he set existed for nearly 2,000 years, and still has a profound influence in every aspect of

Chinese society.

2. Confucius

Confucius was a great thinker, teacher, philosopher, and politician of the Spring and Autumn period in Chinese history. Confucianism was developed by his followers from his teachings.

3. Empress Consort Wu

Empress Consort Wu was the only woman who has ever ruled China in her own right. She married two emperors before coming into full power.

4. Sun Yat-sen

Sun Yat-sen was the first president and the founder of the Republic of China. Often referred to as the "Father of the Nation," he was the pivotal leader of the Xinhai Revolution, which marked the end of imperial rule and brought in the air of democracy.

5. Mao Zedong

Mao Zedong was the founding father of the People's Republic of China. The Chinese commonly refer to him as Chairman Mao. Under Mao's leadership, China became a single-party socialist country.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #12

Animals

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

12

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five best-known animals in China?
2. 1. 大熊猫
3. 2. 东北虎
4. 3. 扬子鳄
5. 4. 金丝猴
6. 5. 丹顶鹤

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five best-known animals in China?
2. 1. 大熊貓
3. 2. 東北虎
4. 3. 揚子鱷
5. 4. 金絲猴
6. 5. 丹頂鶴

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five best-known animals in China?

2. 1. dà xióngmāo

3. 2. dōngběi hǔ

4. 3. Yángzǐ è

5. 4. jīnsī hóu

6. 5. dāndǐng hè

ENGLISH

1. What are the five best-known animals in China?

2. 1. Giant panda

3. 2. Amur tiger

4. 3. Chinese alligator

5. 4. Golden snub-nosed monkey

6. 5. Red-crowned Crane

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Pinyin	English
大熊猫	dà xióngmāo	giant panda

东北虎	dōngběi hǔ	Amur tiger
扬子鳄	Yángzǐ è	Chinese alligator
金丝猴	jīnsī hóu	golden snub-nosed monkey
丹顶鹤	Dāndǐng hè	Red-crowned crane

SAMPLE SENTENCES

大熊猫的食物是竹子。 Dàxióngmāo de shíwù shì zhúzi. The giant panda eats bamboo.	东北虎是丛林之王。 Dōngběi hǔ shì cónglín zhī wáng. The amur tiger is the King of the Jungle.
扬子鳄被称为“活化石”。 Yángzǐ è bèi chēngwéi " huó huàshí " . The Chinese alligator is referred to as "live fossil."	金丝猴的毛很柔软。 Jīnsīhóu de máo hěn róuruǎn. The fur of the golden snub-nosed monkey is very soft.
丹顶鹤经常被叫做仙鹤。 Dāndǐng hè jīngcháng bèi jiàozuò xiānhè. The Red-crowned Crane is often called "fairy crane."	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Giant panda

The giant panda is native to China, mainly in Sichuan province, a mountainous region covered by foliage. The giant panda is referred to as a national treasure in China.

2. Amur tiger

The amur tiger lives in the northeastern part of China. Its forehead fur resembles the Chinese character meaning "the king," which is why the Chinese call it the king of the jungle.

3. Chinese alligator

The Chinese alligator lives exclusively in China and is the world's smallest variety of alligator. It is an endangered species.

4. Golden snub-nosed monkey

Golden snub-nosed monkeys live in southern China. This endangered species gets its Chinese name from its shimmering gold fur. These monkeys have multi-colored fur on their shoulders and backs.

5. Red-crowned Crane

The red-crowned crane is often featured in myths and legends. In Taoism, it is a symbol of longevity and immortality.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #13

Plants

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

13

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular plants in china?
2. 1. 冬虫夏草
3. 2. 梅
4. 3. 当归
5. 4. 牡丹
6. 5. 水仙

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular plants in china?
2. 1. 冬蟲夏草
3. 2. 梅
4. 3. 當歸
5. 4. 牡丹
6. 5. 水仙

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular plants in china?
2. 1. Dōng chóng xià cǎo
3. 2. méi
4. 3. dāngguī
5. 4. mǔdān
6. 5. shuǐxiān

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular plants in china?
2. 1. Caterpillar fungus
3. 2. Chinese plum
4. 3. Chinese angelica
5. 4. Chinese peony
6. 5. Chinese Sacred Lily

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Pinyin	English
冬虫夏草	Dōng chóng xià cǎo	Caterpillar fungus

梅	méi	Chinese plum
当归	dāngguī	Chinese angelica
牡丹	mǔdān	Chinese peony
水仙	shuǐxiān	Chinese sacred lily

SAMPLE SENTENCES

冬虫夏草很贵。 Dōng chóng xià cǎo hěn guì . Caterpillar fungus is very expensive.	梅是中国人很喜爱的一种植物。 Méi shì Zhōngguó rén hěn xǐ ài de yì zhǒng zhí wù . The Chinese plum is one of the favorite plants in China.
当归的根是最常见的中药之一。 Dāngguī de gēn shì zuì cháng jiàn de zhōng yào zhī yī . The root of the Chinese angelica is one of the most common Chinese traditional medicines.	牡丹是中国的四大名花之一。 Mǔdān shì Zhōngguó de sì dà míng huā zhī yī . The Chinese peony is regarded as one of the "Four Famous Flowers."
水仙的花语是思念。 Shuǐxiān de huā yǔ shì sī niàn . The flower language of the Chinese Sacred Lily is "miss you."	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Caterpillar fungus

The literal translation of the Mandarin for Caterpillar fungus means "winter worm, summer grass." It is a fungus that is used as an herbal remedy. The fungus germinates in the living larvae of moths, kills and mummifies them, and then produces the fruiting body which is used

as an herbal remedy.

2. Chinese plum

The Chinese plum is usually called a plum blossom. It flowers in late winter and early spring and is considered to be a seasonal symbol and a spirit of the country.

3. Chinese angelica

The Chinese angelica is known as female ginseng. It is widely used in traditional Chinese medicine and can be used as an ingredient in soups.

4. Chinese peony

The Chinese peony comes in many varieties. The flower is usually big with beautiful colors and is often called the King of Flowers.

5. Chinese Sacred Lily

The Chinese sacred lily grows from a bulb. The flowers are paper white and contain an aroma that is barely detectable to the human nose. In Chinese culture, the flower is a symbol of grace and purity.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #14

Geographical features

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

14

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most famous geographical features in China?
2. 1. 喀斯特地貌
3. 2. 哈尼梯田
4. 3. 戈壁沙漠
5. 4. 黄土高原
6. 5. 内蒙古大草原

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most famous geographical features in China?
2. 1. 喀斯特地貌
3. 2. 哈尼梯田
4. 3. 戈壁沙漠
5. 4. 黄土高原
6. 5. 內蒙古大草原

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most famous geographical features in China?
2. 1. Kāsītè dìmào
3. 2. Hā'ní Tītán
4. 3. Gēbì Shāmò
5. 4. Huángtǔ Gāoyuán
6. 5. Nèiměnggǔ Dàcǎoyuán

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most famous geographical features in China?
2. 1. Karst
3. 2. Hani Rice Terraces
4. 3. Gobi Desert
5. 4. Loess Plateau
6. 5. Inner Mongolia Grasslands

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Pinyin	English
喀斯特地貌	Kāsītè dìmào	karst

哈尼梯田	Hā'ní Tītián	Hani Rice Terraces
戈壁沙漠	Gēbì Shāmò	Gobi Desert
黄土高原	Huángtǔ Gāoyuán	Loess Plateau
内蒙古大草原	Nèiměnggǔ Dàcǎoyuán	Inner Mongolia Grasslands

SAMPLE SENTENCES

云南石林是著名的喀斯特地貌风景区。 Yúnnán Shílín shì zhùmíng de Kāsītè dìmào fēngjǐngqū . The Stone Forest in Yunnan is a notable tourist site for karst topography.	哈尼梯田是中国第二处世界自然遗产。 Hāní Tī tián shì Zhōngguó dì èr chù shìjiè zìrán yíchǎn. The Hani Rice Terraces were the second site in China listed as a World Natural Heritage.
丝绸之路穿越了戈壁沙漠。 Sīchóu Zhī Lù chuānyuè le Gēbì Shāmò . The Silk Road cuts across the Gobi Desert.	黄土高原是中国水土流失最严重的地区。 Huángtǔ Gāoyuán shì Zhōngguó shuǐtǔliúshī zuì yánzhòng de dìqū. The Loess Plateau has been considered the most highly eroded region of China.
内蒙古大草原上每年都会举行那达慕大会。 Nèiměnggǔ dàcǎoyuán shàng měi nián dōu huì jǔxíng Nādámù dàhuì . The Naadam is hosted on the Inner Mongolia Grasslands every year.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Karst

Karst topography is a geological formation shaped by the dissolution of a layer or layers of

soluble bedrock. In China, it can be found in Guangxi, Guizhou, and Yunnan, which is one of the largest karst areas in the world.

2. Hani Rice Terraces

The Hani Rice Terraces are located in Yunnan province and have a history of over 1,200 years. In China, the Hani Rice Terraces are regarded as nature's most beautiful carving.

3. Gobi Desert

The Gobi Desert is a large desert region that covers parts of northern and northwestern China. It holds several important cities along the historic Silk Road trade route.

4. Loess Plateau

The Loess Plateau is commonly known as Huangtu Plateau in China. It is a plateau that covers almost all of Shanxi and Shaanxi provinces, as well as parts of Gansu province, the Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region, and the Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region.

5. Inner Mongolia Grasslands

The Inner Mongolia Grassland cover a large area of northern China. The grasslands have favored the development of animal husbandry in this region.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #15

Cities

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

15

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five best-known cities in China?
2. 1. 北京
3. 2. 上海
4. 3. 广州
5. 4. 南京
6. 5. 香港

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five best-known cities in China?
2. 1. 北京
3. 2. 上海
4. 3. 廣州
5. 4. 南京
6. 5. 香港

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five best-known cities in China?
2. 1. Běijīng
3. 2. Shànghǎi
4. 3. Guǎngzhōu
5. 4. Nánjīng
6. 5. Xiānggǎng

ENGLISH

1. What are the five best-known cities in China?
2. 1. Beijing
3. 2. Shanghai
4. 3. Guangzhou
5. 4. Nanjing
6. 5. Hong Kong

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
------------	-------------	--------	---------

广州		Guǎngzhōu	Guangzhou
南京		Nánjīng	Nanjing
香港		Xiānggǎng	Hong Kong
上海	上海	Shànghǎi	Shanghai
北京	北京	Běijīng	Beijing

SAMPLE SENTENCES

广州是中国第三大城市。 Guǎngzhōu shì Zhōngguó dì sān dà chéngshì . Guangzhou is the third largest city of China.	南京是一座历史文化名城。 Nánjīng shì yí zuò lìshǐ wénhuà míngchéng . Nanjing is a city with historical and cultural heritage.
香港人讲粤语。 Xiānggǎngrén jiǎng Yuèyǔ . The Hong Kong people speak Cantonese.	我爸爸住在上海。 Wǒ bàba zhù zài Shànghǎi. My dad lives in Shanghai.
我去北京大楼。 Wǒ qù Běijīng dàlóu. I'm going to the Beijing building.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Beijing

Beijing is the capital of China, and it has 3,000 years of history. It is the second largest city by population and is the political, cultural and educational center of China.

2. Shanghai

Shanghai is the largest city by population in China. It is among the four municipalities directly under the central government with Beijing, Tianjin, and Chongqing.

3. Guangzhou

Guangzhou is the capital and largest city of Guangdong province. It is one of the five National Central Cities with its key role being in national transportation and commerce.

4. Nanjing

Nanjing is the capital of Jiangsu province in eastern China and has been the capital of China on several occasions. The name means "southern Capital" in Chinese.

5. Hong Kong

Hong Kong is one of the two special administrative regions of China, with the other being Macau. It had been a British colony for a hundred years and was returned to China in 1997. It now has a different political system under the principle of "one country, two systems."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #16

Sports

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

16

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular sports in China?
2. 1. 足球
3. 2. 游泳
4. 3. 乒乓球
5. 4. 羽毛球
6. 5. 太极拳

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular sports in China?
2. 1. 足球
3. 2. 游泳
4. 3. 乒乓球
5. 4. 羽毛球
6. 5. 太極拳

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular sports in China?
2. 1. zúqiú
3. 2. yóuyóǒng
4. 3. pīngpāng qiú
5. 4. yǔmáo qiú
6. 5. tàijíquán

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular sports in China?
2. 1. Soccer
3. 2. Swimming
4. 3. Table tennis
5. 4. Badminton
6. 5. T'ai chi

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
------------	-------------	--------	---------

太极拳		tàijíquán	t'ai chi
游泳	游泳	yóuyóǒng	swimming
足球	足球	zúqiú	soccer
乒乓球		pīngpāng qiú	table tennis
羽毛球	羽毛球	yǔmáoqiú	badminton

SAMPLE SENTENCES

打太极拳有助于长寿。 dǎ tàijíquán yǒuzhùyú chángshòu. Exercising with t'ai chi helps with longevity.	我喜欢游泳。 Wǒ xǐ huān yóu yǒng. I like swimming.
我和大卫·贝克汉姆踢了足球。 Wǒ hé Dàwèi Bèikèhànmǔ tī le zúqiú. I played soccer with David Beckham.	运动员正在踢足球。 yùndòngyuán zhèngzài tī zúqiú. The players are playing soccer.
乒乓球是中国的国球。 Pīngpāngqiú shì Zhōngguó de guó qiú . Table tennis is China's national game.	公司组织了羽毛球比赛。 Gōngsī zǔzhī le yǔmáoqiú bǐsài. The company organized a badminton tournament.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Soccer

Soccer is one of the most popular sports in China. China's professional soccer league is the China Football Association Super League.

2. Swimming

Swimming is a popular sport for many Chinese in the summer. In northern China, there is even a tradition of winter swimming with a temperature of between -20 and -30 degrees centigrade.

3. Table tennis

Table tennis is commonly called "ping pong" in China. It is one of the most popular sports because all that's needed is a table, a ping pong ball, and a racket.

4. Badminton

The Chinese love to play badminton as a leisure game with family or friends. To play badminton, a shuttlecock and rackets are all that's needed.

5. Tai chi

Tai chi literally means "supreme ultimate fist." It is a Chinese martial art practiced for both its defense training and its health benefits. It is characterized by its slow movement.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #17

Tourist attractions

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

17

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular tourist attractions in China?
2. 1. 长城
3. 2. 故宫
4. 3. 兵马俑
5. 4. 少林寺
6. 5. 香格里拉

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular tourist attractions in China?
2. 1. 長城
3. 2. 故宮
4. 3. 兵馬俑
5. 4. 少林寺
6. 5. 香格里拉

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular tourist attractions in China?
2. 1. Chángchéng
3. 2. Gùgōng
4. 3. Bīngmǎ Yǒng
5. 4. Shàolín Sì
6. 5. Xiānggélǎ

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular tourist attractions in China?
2. 1. Great Wall of China
3. 2. Forbidden City
4. 3. Terracotta Army
5. 4. Shaolin Temple
6. 5. Shangri-La

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
------------	-------------	--------	---------

兵马俑		Bīngmǎ Yǒng	Terracotta Army
少林寺		Shàolín Sì	Shaolin Temple
香格里拉		Xiānggélǐlā	Shangri-La
故宫	故宫	Gùgōng	Forbidden City
长城		Chángchéng	Great Wall of China

SAMPLE SENTENCES

兵马俑被誉为世界第八大奇迹。 Bīngmǎyǒng bèi yùwéi shìjiè dì bā dà qíjī . The Terracotta Army is regarded as the Eighth Wonder of the World.	很多人去少林寺学功夫。 Hěn duō rén qù Shǎolín Sì xué gōngfū. Many people go to Shaolin Temple to learn Chinese kung fu.
香格里拉在藏族文化中被视为世外桃源。 Xiānggélǐlā zài Zàngzú wénhuà zhōng bèishìwéi shìwàitáoyuán . In Tibetan culture, Shangri-La is believed to be a paradise.	长城是世界七大奇迹之一。 Chángchéng shì shìjiè qī dà qíjī zhīyī. The Great Wall of China is among the Seven Wonders of the World.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Great Wall of China

The Great Wall of China is a series of fortifications made of stone, brick, and other materials. It was built thousands of years ago across the historical northern border of China to protect against intrusions or military incursions by various nomadic groups.

2. Forbidden City

The Forbidden City was the Chinese imperial palace and served as the ceremonial and political center of the Chinese government from the Ming Dynasty to the end of the Qing Dynasty. It is located in the center of Beijing and is listed as a World Heritage Site.

3. Terracotta Army

The Terracotta Army is a collection of terracotta sculptures depicting the armies of the first Emperor of China, Qin Shi Huang. It is located in Xi'an in Shaanxi province, and is also known as the Terracotta Warriors and Horses.

4. Shaolin Temple

Shaolin Temple is a Buddhist temple on Mount Song in Henan province. It is well-known for its association with Chinese martial arts and particularly with Shaolin-style kung fu.

5. Shangri-La

The term *Shangri-La* originates from Tibet. It represents a place described as a "mystical", "harmonious paradise", and is often used in a similar context to the Garden of Eden. In China, *Shangri-La* is believed to exist somewhere in southwestern China.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #18

Common things in the home

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

18

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are five common things in homes in China?
2. 1. 泡菜坛
3. 2. 炕
4. 3. 屏风
5. 4. 盆栽
6. 5. 春联

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are five common things in homes in China?
2. 1. 泡菜壇
3. 2. 炕
4. 3. 屏風
5. 4. 盆栽
6. 5. 春聯

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are five common things in homes in China?
2. 1. pàocài tán
3. 2. kàng
4. 3. píngfēng
5. 4. pénzāi
6. 5. chūnlián

ENGLISH

1. What are five common things in homes in China?
2. 1. Chinese pickle jar
3. 2. Kang bed-stove
4. 3. Folding screen
5. 4. Potted plant
6. 5. Spring couplet

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Pinyin	English
泡菜坛	pāocài tán	Chinese pickle jar

炕	kàng	kang bed-stove
屏风	píngfēng	folding screen
盆栽	pénzāi	potted plant
春联	chūnlián	spring couplet

SAMPLE SENTENCES

要定期向泡菜坛沿加水。 Yào dìngqī xiàng pāocài tán xián jiāshuǐ . It is necessary to add fresh water regularly to the rim of the Chinese pickle jar.	炕是石头或砖做的。 Kàng shì shítou huò zhuān zuò de. The kang bed-stove is built of stones or bricks.
屏风常常被摆放在客厅里。 Píngfēng chángcháng bèi bǎifàng zài kètīng lǐ . The folding screen is often put in the living room.	兰草是一种常见的盆栽植物。 Láncǎo shì yì zhǒng chángjiàn de pénzāi zhíwù. Orchids are a common potted plant.
过春节的时候要贴春联。 Guò Chūn Jié de shíhou yào tiē chūnlián . People hang spring couplets during the Chinese New Year.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Chinese pickle jar

The Chinese pickle jar is a traditional device used to pickle vegetables and fruits. It is generally made of glass or pottery. The rim holds water, and the glass lid is placed upside down into the water to allow carbon dioxide to escape without letting any outside air into the jar.

2. Kang

bed-stove

The kang is a traditional platform for general living, working, entertaining, and sleeping. Its interior channels the exhaust from a wood or coal cooking fire to make it warm and comfortable in the winter.

3. Folding screen

Folding screens have been in use in China for thousands of years. They are usually decorated with traditional Chinese painting, calligraphy, or embroidery and can be used to separate space within a room.

4. Potted plant

The Chinese love potted plants because they can purify the air and are good for health. Also potted plants can serve as a decoration for the house.

5. Spring couplet

A spring couplet is two lines of poetry which adhere to certain rules. Spring couplets are usually seen on the sides of doors leading to people's homes or as hanging scrolls in an interior.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #19

Commonly used medicines and drugs

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

19

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular commonly used medicine and drugs in China?
2. 1. 云南白药
3. 2. 创可贴
4. 3. 板蓝根冲剂
5. 4. 念慈庵川贝枇杷膏
6. 5. 阿司匹林

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular commonly used medicine and drugs in China?
2. 1. 雲南白藥
3. 2. 創可貼
4. 3. 板藍根沖劑
5. 4. 念慈庵川貝枇杷膏
6. 5. 阿司匹林

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular commonly used medicine and drugs in China?
2. 1. Yúnnán Bái Yào
3. 2. chuàngkětiē
4. 3. bǎnlángēn chōngjì
5. 4. Niàncí'ān Chuānbèi Pípa Gāo
6. 5. Āsīpǐlín

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular commonly used medicine and drugs in China?
2. 1. Yunnan Baiyao
3. 2. Gand-aid
4. 3. Woad granules
5. 4. Nin Jiom Pei Pa Ko
6. 5. aspirin

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Pinyin	English
云南白药	Yúnnán Bái Yào	Yunnan Baiyao

创可贴	chuàngkětiē	band-aid
板蓝根冲剂	Bǎnlángēn chōngjì	woad granules
念慈庵川贝枇杷膏	Niàncí'ān Chuānbèi Pípá Gāo	Nin Jiom Pei Pa Ko
阿司匹林	Āsīpǐlín	aspirin

SAMPLE SENTENCES

云南白药是一种中药。 Yúnnán Bái Yào shì yì zhǒng zhōngyào . Yunnan Baiyao belongs to the Chinese traditional medicine category.	创可贴可以止血。 Chuàngkětiē kěyǐ zhǐxuè . The band-aid can stop bleeding.
板蓝根冲剂是甜的。 Bǎnlángēn chōngjì shì tián de. Woad granules taste sweet.	念慈庵川贝枇杷膏可以止咳。 Niàncí'ān Chuānbèi Pípá Gāo kěyǐ zhǐké. The Nin Jiom Pei Pa Ko can relieve a cough.
阿司匹林是一种常见的止痛药。 Āsīpǐlín shì yì zhǒng chángjiàn de zhǐtòngyào. Aspirin is a common pain reliever.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Yunnan Baiyao

Yunnan Baiyao is a powdered or spray medicine used to stop bleeding. The medicine is mainly made up of *sanqi*, the roots of the Tienchi ginseng.

2. Band-aid

Band-aids are adhesive bandages which can be found in Chinese pharmacies, supermarkets, convenience stores, and first-aid kits.

3. Woad granules

Woad granules are generally used to relieve symptoms like sore throat or a cold.

4. Nin Jiom Pei Pa Ko

Nin Jiom is a traditional Chinese medicine maker. It mainly produces Pei Pa Ko, a medicine mainly consisting of fritillary bulb or bei mu, or loquat leaf. It is usually used to relieve cough and reduce sputum.

5. Aspirin

Aspirin is often used to relieve minor aches and pains, to reduce fever, and as an anti-inflammatory medication.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #20

Natural disasters

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

#20

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most natural disasters in China?
2. 1. 地震
3. 2. 台风
4. 3. 洪水
5. 4. 沙尘暴
6. 5. 干旱

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most natural disasters in China?
2. 1. 地震
3. 2. 颱風
4. 3. 洪水
5. 4. 沙塵暴
6. 5. 乾旱

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most natural disasters in China?
2. 1. dìzhèn
3. 2. táifēng
4. 3. hóngshuǐ
5. 4. shāchénbào
6. 5. gānhàn

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most natural disasters in China?
2. 1. Earthquake
3. 2. Typhoon
4. 3. Flood
5. 4. Sandstorm
6. 5. Drought

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Pinyin	English
地震	dìzhèn	earthquake

台风	táifēng	typhoon
洪水	hóngshuǐ	flood
沙尘暴	shāchénbào	sandstorm
干旱	gānhàn	drought

SAMPLE SENTENCES

汶川地震是新中国成立以来最大的地震。 Wènchuān dìzhèn shì xīn Zhōngguó chénglì yǐlái zuì dà de dìzhèn . The Wenchuan earthquake was the biggest earthquake since the establishment of the People's Republic of China.	台风天不要出门。 Táifēng tiān búyào chūmén. Don't go out when a typhoon hits.
遇到洪水时要到高处躲避。 Yùdào hóngshuǐ shí yào dào gāochǔ duǒbì . You should go to somewhere high to stay away from the flood.	沙尘暴不仅污染环境，而且对健康有害。 Shāchénbào bùjǐn wūrán huánjìng, érqiě duì jiànkāng yǒuhài. Sandstorms not only pollute the environment but also harm people's health.
干旱造成了粮食短缺。 Gānhàn zàochéng le liángshi duǎnquē. The drought caused food shortages.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Earthquake

China has sustained earthquakes for thousands of years. Earthquakes often occur in southwestern, northwestern, and northern China.

2. Typhoon

Coastal areas like Zhejiang, Fujian, and Guangdong are hit by a typhoon almost every year during the summer and autumn. Typhoons bring strong winds and storms, and many people suffer great losses from them.

3. Flood

China has seen floods more and more frequently in recent decades. Floods are especially devastating to people's lives and local economies because China is a country of agriculture.

4. Sandstorm

Sandstorms are a common natural disaster in northwestern China, which is covered by desert, and in northern China, where the Loess Plateau is located. They usually occur during the spring.

5. Drought

China is a country where drought has long been a big headache for local governments. It destroys the soil, leaving nothing for farmers and causing great financial and environmental losses.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #21

Transport

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

21

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five frequently used modes of transportation in China?
2. 1. 公交车
3. 2. 地铁
4. 3. 出租车
5. 4. 私家车
6. 5. 自行车

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five frequently used modes of transportation in China?
2. 1. 公共車
3. 2. 地鐵
4. 3. 出租車
5. 4. 私家車
6. 5. 自行車

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five frequently used modes of transportation in China?
2. 1. gōngjiāochē
3. 2. dìtiě
4. 3. chūzūchē
5. 4. sījiāchē
6. 5. zìxíngchē

ENGLISH

1. What are the five frequently used modes of transportation in China?
2. 1. Bus
3. 2. Subway
4. 3. taxi
5. 4. private car
6. 5. bicycle

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Pinyin	English
公交车	gōngjiāochē	bus

地铁	dìtiě	subway
出租车	chūzūchē	taxi
私家车	sījiāchē	private car
自行车	zìxíngchē	bicycle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

坐公交车时要在前门上车，后门下车。 Zuò gōngjiāochē shí yào zài qiánmén shàngchē, hòumén xiàchē. People should get on a bus at the front door and get off at the back door.	地铁在上下班高峰期非常拥挤。 Dìtiě zài shàngxiàbān gāofēngqī fēicháng yōngjǐ. The subway is extremely crowded during rush hour.
有些出租车司机喜欢跟乘客聊天。 Yǒuxiē chūzūchē sījī xǐhuān gēn chéngkè liáotiān. Some taxi drivers like talking to their passengers.	人们喜欢在周末开私家车去郊外。 Rénmen xǐhuān zài zhōumò kāi sījiāchē qù jiāowài . On the weekend, people like to drive to the suburbs.
骑自行车很环保。 Qí zìxíngchē hěn huánbǎo. Riding a bike is environmentally-friendly.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Bus

Taking a bus is cheap and convenient in China. Many bus companies offer a monthly pass at a favorable price and have special discounts for students in elementary and middle schools.

2.

Subway

In China, the subway was first introduced to Beijing and has become a common means of transportation in big cities. Beijing Subway's flat fare is 2 RMB or 2 Yuan per ride with free transfers, which is the lowest among all subway systems in China.

3. Taxi

Taxis are common in China and can be flagged down easily everywhere. In different cities, the rates range from 5 to 15 RMB or Yuan and are counted by the taxi meters.

4. Private car

Private car ownership is rapidly rising in China. It is now one of the most common means of transportation.

5. Bicycle

A bicycle is the most popular means of transportation in China. Many people ride bikes to school or to work.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #22

Shops and services in town

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

22

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular shops and services in China?
2. 1. 菜市场
3. 2. 药店
4. 3. 超市
5. 4. 加油站
6. 5. 书店

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular shops and services in China?
2. 1. 菜市場
3. 2. 藥店
4. 3. 超市
5. 4. 加油站
6. 5. 書店

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular shops and services in China?
2. 1. càishìchǎng
3. 2. yàodiàn
4. 3. chāo shì
5. 4. jiāyóuzhàn
6. 5. shūdiàn

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular shops and services in China?
2. 1. Farmers' market
3. 2. Drug store
4. 3. Supermarket
5. 4. Gas station
6. 5. Bookstore

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
------------	-------------	--------	---------

加油站		jiāyóuzhàn	gas station
书店		shūdiàn	book store
药店		yàodiàn	drug store
菜市场		càishìchǎng	farmers' market
超市	超市	chāoshì	supermarket

SAMPLE SENTENCES

加油站内禁止吸烟。 Jiāyóuzhàn nèi jìnzhǐ xīyān. Smoking is strictly prohibited at a gas station.	在书店经常可以看见坐在地上看书的人。 Zài shūdiàn jīngcháng kěyǐ kànjiàn zuò zài dìshàng kànshū de rén. In bookstores, it is common to see people sitting on the floor reading books.
在药店可以使用医保卡。 The Medicare card is accepted at drug stores.	在菜市场可以讲价。 Zài càishìchǎng kěyǐ jiǎngjià. People can bargain in the farmers' market.
我去超市买东西。 Wǒ qù chāoshì mǎi dōngxi. I'm going to the store to buy things.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Farmers' market

Although supermarkets are everywhere in China, many people prefer to go to the farmers'

markets for fresh meat, fish, vegetables, and fruits. Farmers' markets are crowded in the morning and late in the afternoon.

2. Drug store

Drug stores are common in China. People can find traditional Chinese medicines, Western medicines, and nutritional supplements there.

3. Supermarket

In China, supermarkets can be found everywhere. There are many different supermarket and hypermarket chains.

4. Gas station

Generally, gas stations in China are open 24/7, but they may close up when there is a thunderstorm out of concerns for security. Gas stations along the highway usually have a convenience store, so it's not a bad choice to take a short rest there after long hours of driving.

5. Bookstore

Many Chinese people go to bookstores on the weekends. The most crowded place in a bookstore is usually where the best-sellers are.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #23

Chain stores

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

23

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular chain stores in China?
2. 1. 屈臣氏
3. 2. 同仁堂
4. 3. 国美电器
5. 4. 沃尔玛
6. 5. 大润发

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. What are the five most popular chain stores in China?
2. 1. 屈臣氏
3. 2. 同仁堂
4. 3. 國美電器
5. 4. 沃爾瑪
6. 5. 大潤發

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular chain stores in China?
2. 1. Qūchénshì
3. 2. Tóngréntáng
4. 3. Guóměi Diànrì
5. 4. Wò Ěr Mǎ
6. 5. Dà Rùn Fā

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular chain stores in China?
2. 1. Watson's
3. 2. Tongrentang
4. 3. GOME Electronics
5. 4. Wal-Mart Stores
6. 5. RT-Mart

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Pinyin	English
屈臣氏	Qūchénshì	Watson's

同仁堂	Tóngréntáng	Tongrentang
国美电器	Guóměi Diànrì	GOME Electronics
沃尔玛	Wò Ěr Mǎ	Wal-Mart Stores
大润发	Dà Rùn Fā	RT-Mart

SAMPLE SENTENCES

屈臣氏很受女性消费者欢迎。 Qūchénshì hěn shòu nǚxìng xiāofèizhě huānyíng. Watson's is very popular among female consumers.	同仁堂创建于清朝。 Tóngréntáng chuàngjiàn yú Qīngcháo. Tongrentang was founded in the Qing Dynasty.
国美电器的售后服务不错。 Guóměi Diànrì de shòuhòu fúwù búcuò. GOME offers good after-sale service.	沃尔玛的东西很便宜。 Wò Ěr Mǎ de dōngxi hěn biányi. Goods are cheap at Wal-Mart.
大润发的购物卡是全国通用的。 Dà Rùn Fā de gòuwùkǎ shì quán guó tōng yòng de. The gift cards issued by RT-Mart can be used throughout the country.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Watson's

Watson's is the largest pharmacy and drugstore chain in mainland China and Hong Kong. It sells health and beauty products, perfume, cosmetics, grocery items, and more.

2. Tongrentang

Tongrentang is the largest and most well-known producer of traditional Chinese medicine

with a history of over 200 years. Tongrentang operates over 600 traditional Chinese drug stores in China.

3. GOME Electronics

GOME is one of the largest electronic appliance retail chain stores in mainland China and Hong Kong. It has more than 800 stores throughout China.

4. Wal-Mart Stores

Wal-Mart is an American multinational retail chain. In mainland China, it enjoys high popularity with over 370 stores in 140 cities.

5. RT-Mart

RT-Mart is a hypermarket chain with its headquarters in Taiwan. It has over 100 stores and is one of the largest hypermarket chains in mainland China.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #24

Artists and musicians

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

#24

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. Who are the five most popular artists in China?
2. 1. 梅兰芳
3. 2. 王羲之
4. 3. 苏轼
5. 4. 邓丽君
6. 5. 张学友

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. Who are the five most popular artists in China?
2. 1. 梅蘭芳
3. 2. 王羲之
4. 3. 蘇軾
5. 4. 鄧麗君
6. 5. 張學友

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. Who are the five most popular artists in China?
2. 1. Méi Lánfāng
3. 2. Wáng Xīzhī
4. 3. Sū Shì
5. 4. Dèng Lìjūn
6. 5. Zhāng Xúeyǒu

ENGLISH

1. Who are the five most popular artists in China?
2. 1. Mei Lanfang
3. 2. Wang Xizhi
4. 3. Su Shi
5. 4. Teresa Teng
6. 5. Jacky Cheung

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Pinyin	English
梅兰芳	Méi Lánfāng	Mei Lanfang

王羲之	Wáng Xīzhī	Wang Xizhi
苏轼	Sū Shì	Su Shi
邓丽君	Dèng Lìjūn	Teresa Teng
张学友	Zhāng Xuéyǒu	Jacky Cheung

SAMPLE SENTENCES

梅兰芳是京剧“梅派”艺术的创始人。 Méi Lánfāng shì Jīngjù "Méipài" yìshù de chuàngshǐrén. Mei Lanfang created the "Mei School" of Beijing Opera.	王羲之被称为“书圣”。 Wáng Xīzhī bèi chēngwéi "Shū Shèng". Wang Xizhi is referred to as the "Sage of Calligraphy."
据说东坡肉是苏轼发明的。 Jùshuō Dōngpō ròu shì Sū Shì fā míng de. It is said that Dongpo pork was invented by Su Shi.	很多人喜欢邓丽君甜美的声音。 Hěn duō rén xǐhuān Dèng Lìjūn tiánměi de shēngyīn. Many people like the sweetness of Teresa Teng's voice.
张学友被叫做“歌神”。 Zhāng Xuéyǒu bèi jiàozuò "Gē Shén". Jacky Cheung is nicknamed "god of songs."	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Mei Lanfang

Mei Lanfang is one of the most famous Beijing opera artists in modern history, and he is known for his roles portraying female characters.

2. Wang

Wang Xizhi was a calligrapher of the Jin Dynasty. He is considered to be one of the most esteemed Chinese calligraphers of all time and a master of all forms of Chinese calligraphy, especially the running script.

3. Su Shi

Su Shi was a writer, poet, painter, calligrapher, and gastronome of the Song Dynasty. His literary pseudonym is Dongpo Jushi, so he is also referred to as Su Dongpo.

4. Teresa Teng

Teresa Teng is a pop singer best known for her sweet voice and romantic ballads. It is often said, "Wherever there are Chinese people, the songs of Teresa Teng can be heard."

5. Jacky Cheung

Jacky Cheung is a singer, songwriter, and actor from Hong Kong. The Chinese language media refers to him as one of the Cantopop "Four Heavenly Kings."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Chinese Vocabulary S1 #25

Writers

CONTENTS

- 2 Simplified Chinese
- 2 Traditional Chinese
- 2 Pinyin
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

25

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. Who are the five most popular writers in China?
2. 1. 李白
3. 2. 金庸
4. 3. 老舍
5. 4. 鲁迅
6. 5. 莫言

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. Who are the five most popular writers in China?
2. 1. 李白
3. 2. 金庸
4. 3. 老舍
5. 4. 魯迅
6. 5. 莫言

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. Who are the five most popular writers in China?
2. 1. Lǐ Bái
3. 2. Jīn Yōng
4. 3. Lǎo Shě
5. 4. Lǚ Xùn
6. 5. Mò Yán

ENGLISH

1. Who are the five most popular writers in China?
2. 1. Li Bai
3. 2. Jin Yong
4. 3. Lao She
5. 4. Lu Xun
6. 5. Mo Yan

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Pinyin	English
李白	Lǐ Bái	Li Bai

金庸	Jīn Yōng	Jin Yong
老舍	Lǎo Shě	Lao She
鲁迅	Lǚ Xùn	Lu Xun
莫言	Mò Yán	Mo Yan

SAMPLE SENTENCES

李白被称为“诗仙”。 Lǐ Bái bèi chēngwéi " Shī Xiān " . Li Bai is called "Poet Transcendent."	有一百多部影视作品改编自金庸的小说。 Yǒu yībǎi duōbù yǐngshì zuòpǐn gǎibiān zì Jīn Yōng de xiǎoshuō. Over one-hundred TV series and films have been adapted from Jin Yong's novels.
地道的京片子是老舍作品的一大特点。 Dìdào de jīngpiànzi shì Lǎoshě zuòpǐn de yí dà tèdiǎn . The vivid use of the Beijing dialect is a major characteristics of Lao She's works.	鲁迅曾经在日本学习医学。 Lǚ Xùn céngjīng zài Rìběn xuéxí yīxué. Lu Xun studied medicine in Japan.
莫言是第一位获得诺贝尔文学奖的中国作家。 Mò Yán shì dì yī wèi huòdé Nuòbèiěr wénxuéjiǎng de Zhōngguó zuòjiā . Mo Yan is the first Chinese writer to receive the Nobel Prize in Literature.	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Li Bai

Li Bai is a well-known poet who has been acclaimed as a genius and romantic figure from

his own day to the present. He is one of the most prominent figures in the growth of Chinese poetry during the Tang Dynasty.

2. Jin Yong

Jin Yong is a modern novelist who is well known for his martial arts and chivalry fiction. He is currently the best-selling Chinese author alive.

3. Lao She

Lao She is a novelist and dramatist who has been considered one of the most significant figures of 20th century Chinese literature. He is best known for his novel *Rickshaw Boy* and the play *Teahouse*.

4. Lu Xun

Lu Xun has been considered China's greatest modern writer for most of the 20th century. He is best known for his short stories, including *A Madman's Diary* and *The True Story of Ah Q*.

5. Mo Yan

Mo Yan is a novelist and short story writer. In 2012, he received the Nobel Prize in Literature for his work. His best known novel is *Red Sorghum Clan*.



ChineseClass101.com

ChineseClass101.com

LEARN CHINESE

The Master Guide to



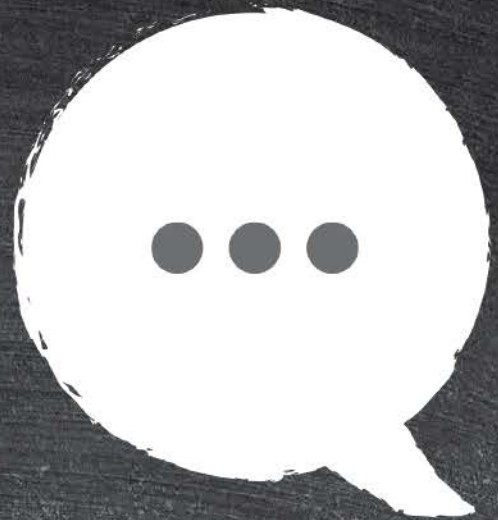
Hong Kong Holidays

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

If you love the **Chinese** language, then you'll love this!

Get our Complete **Chinese** Learning Program
at **ChineseClass101.com**.

- Speak **Chinese** From Your First Lesson
- Access hundreds of Audio & Video Courses
by Real Teachers
- Get **FREE** New Lessons Every Week
- Learn Anywhere, Anytime on Any Android
Device or Computer



Go to
ChineseClass101.com
and sign up for your

FREE

Lifetime Account!



LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #1 New Year's Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#1

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
元旦	元旦	yúandàn	New year's day	noun
新年好	新年好	Xīn Nián Hǎo	"Happy New Year"	expression
倒数计时	倒數計時	dàoshǔ jìshí	countdown	phrase
烟花	煙花	yānhuā	fireworks	noun
黑色星期五	黑色星期五	hēisè Xīngqīwǔ	Chinese Black Friday	phrase
贺年卡	賀年卡	hèniánkǎ	New Year's cards	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

让我们一起倒数计时吧！ ràng wǒmen yīqǐ dàoshǔ jìshíba ! Let's countdown together!	今天的烟花真漂亮！ jīntiān de yānhuā zhēn piàoliang ! Today's fireworks are so beautiful!
今年你寄贺年卡给朋友了吗？ jīnnián nǐ jì hèniánkǎ gěi péngyou le ma ? Have you sent New Year's Cards to your friends?	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #2 Chinese New Year

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#2

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
春节	春節	Chūn jié	Chinese New Year	noun
除夕	除夕	chúxī	New Year's Eve	noun
小除夕	小除夕	xiǎo Chúxī	small New Year's eve	noun
大年初一	大年初一	Dànián chūyī	The first day of the new lunar year	noun
元宵节	元宵節	Yuánxiāojié	Lantern Festival	proper noun
扫房	掃房	sǎo fáng	spring cleaning	phrase
春节晚会	春節晚會	Chūn Jié wǎnhuì	Spring Festival Gala Evening	noun
红包	紅包	hóngbāo	New Year's lucky money	noun
筷落	筷落	kuài luò	"Oh, they fell"	expression

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这次春节是几号？ zhècì Chūn Jié shì jǐ hào ? What day is the coming Chinese New Year?	春节是一个团圆的日子。 Chūn jié shì yí gè tuányuán de rì zi. Chinese New Year is a time for family gatherings.
除夕很冷。 Chúxī hěn lěng. It is very cold on New Year's Eve.	你们怎么过元宵节？ nǐ men zěn me guò Yuánxiāojié ? How do you spend the Lantern Festival?

今年的春节晚会你看了吗？

jīnnián de Chūn Jié wǎnhuì nǐ kàn le ma ?

Have you seen this year's Spring Festival Gala Evening?

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #3 Mid-Autumn Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

3

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
中秋节	中秋節	zhōngqiūjié	Mid-Autumn Festival	noun
月亮	月亮	yuèliàng	moon	noun
交通堵塞	交通堵塞	jiāotōngdǔsè	citywide traffic jam	phrase
月饼	月餅	yuèbǐng	mooncake	noun
赏月	賞月	shǎng yuè	admiring the moon	phrase
国庆节	國慶節	Guóqìngjié	National Day	proper noun
花好月圆	花好月圓	huā hǎo yuè yuán	"Lovely flowers, round moon."	idiom

SAMPLE SENTENCES

今天的月亮又大又圆。 jīntiān de yuèliàng yòu dà yòu yuán . The moon today looks big and round.	月亮代表我的心。 Yuèliàng dàibiǎo wǒ de xīn. The moon represents my heart.
为了避免交通堵塞，我决定这次假期不出门。 wèile bì miǎnjiāo tōng dǔsè , Wǒ juédìng zhècì jiàqī bù chūmén . To avoid the citywide traffic jam, I decided not to travel during the holidays.	你喜欢吃月饼吗？ nǐ xǐhuān chī yuèbǐng ma ? Do you like eating mooncakes?
这次国庆节我要去西安旅游。 zhècì Guóqìngjié Wǒ yào qù Xī'ān lǚyóu . I want to travel to Xi'an during these National Day holidays.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #4 National Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

4

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
国庆节	國慶節	Guóqìngjié	National Day	proper noun
天安门广场	天安門廣場	Tiānānménguǎngchǎng	Tiananmen Square	proper noun
阅兵	閱兵	yuèbīng	military parade	phrase
大典	大典	dà diǎn	Grand ceremony	noun
学生	學生	xuésheng	student	noun
爱国主义	愛國主義	àiguózhǔyì	patriotism	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我要去天安门广场去看升旗仪式。 Wǒ yào qù Tiānānménguǎngchǎng qù kàn shēngqí yíshì. I want to go to Tian an men Square to watch the flag-raising ceremony.	阅兵真壮观啊！ yuèbīng zhēn zhuàngguān ā ! How wonderful the military parade is!
我是北京大学的学生。 Wǒ shì Běijīng Dàxué de xuésheng . I am a student of Beijing University.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #5 Labor Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

5

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
劳动节	勞動節	Láodòngjié	Labor Day	proper noun
五一黄金周	五一黃金周	Wǔyī Huángjīnzhōu	5-1 Golden Week	proper noun
长假旅游	長假旅遊	chángjià lǚyóu	travel on long vacations	phrase
名山大川	名山大川	míng shān dà chuān	famous mountains and rivers	phrase
交通大拥挤	交通大擁擠	jiāotōng dà yōngjǐ	large-scale traffic jam	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这次五一黄金周有7天长假。 hècì Wǔyī Huángjīnzhōu yǒu qī Tiāncháng jiǎ . We have a 7-day-long holiday this 5-1 Golden Week.	这次长假旅游你想去哪里？ zhècì chángjià lǚyóu nǐ xiǎngqù nǎlǐ ? Where do you want to travel to on this long vacation?
许多人喜欢去名山大川旅游。 xǔduō rén xǐhuān qù míngshān dà chuān lǚyóu . Many people like traveling to famous mountains and rivers.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #6 Lantern Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

6

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
元宵节	元宵節	Yuánxiāo Jié	Lantern Festival	proper noun
元宵	元宵節	yuánxiāo	rice glue balls	noun
民以食为天	民以食為天	mín yǐ shí wéi tiān	“food is the paramount necessity of the people.”	expression
汤圆	湯圓	Tāng Yuán	sweet dumplings	noun
游戏	遊戲	yóuxì	play	noun
舞狮子	舞獅子	wǔshīzi	lion dances	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你会做元宵吗？ nǐ huì zuò yuánxiāo ma ? Can you make rice glue balls?	我很喜欢吃汤圆。 Wǒ hěn xǐhuān chī Tāng Yuán . I like eating sweet dumplings.
让我们一起玩个游戏吧！ ràng wǒmen yìqǐ wán ge yóuxì ba ! Let's play a game together!	这是我第一次看舞狮子。 zhè shì Wǒ dì yī cì kàn wǔshī zǐ . This is my first time watching lion dances.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #7 Tomb Sweeping Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#7

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
清明节	清明節	qīngmíng jié	Tomb Sweeping Day	proper noun
烧香	燒香	shāoxiāng	day of burning incense	phrase
祭祖	祭祖	jìzǔ	to worship ancestors	verb, phrase
冥币	冥幣	míng bì	joss paper	noun
殡葬业	殯葬業	bìnzàng yè	funeral industry	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

明天我要去祭祖。 míngtiān Wǒ yào qù Jì Zǔ . I am going to worship my ancestors tomorrow.	在中国的传统里，我们会烧冥币给死去的亲人。 zài Zhōngguó de chuántǒng lǐ , wǒmen huì shāo míng bì gěi sǐqùde qīnrén . In Chinese tradition, we burn joss paper for our relatives who are dead.
---	---

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #8 Dragon Boat Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

8

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
端午节	端午節	duānwǔ jié	Dragon Boat Festival	proper noun
屈原	屈原	Qū Yuán	Qu Yuan	proper noun
粽子	粽子	zòngzi	zongzi, rice dumpling	noun
楚国	楚國	chǔguó	state of Chu	proper noun
龙舟	龍舟	lóngzhōu	dragon boat	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

端午节有什么习俗吗？ Duānwǔjié yǒu shénme xísú ma ? What's the tradition of the Dragon Boat Festival?	屈原是中国古代伟大的诗人之一。 Qū Yuán shì Zhōngguó gǔdài wěidà de shīrén zhīyī . Qu Yuan was one of the greatest poets in ancient China.
我非常喜欢吃粽子。 Wǒ fēicháng xǐhuān chī zòngzi . I like eating glutinous rice puddings.	人们通过吃粽子来纪念诗人屈原。 Rénmen tōngguò chī zòngzi lái jìniàn shīrén Qū Yuán. People eat zongzi to commemorate the death of the poet Qu Yuan.
你划过龙舟吗？ nǐ huáguò Lóngzhōu ma ? Have you ever been on a dragon boat?	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #9 Qixi Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#9

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
七夕节	七夕節	qīxī jié	Qixi Festival	proper noun
牛郎织女	牛郎織女	niúláng zhīnǚ	The Cowherd and the Weaving Maid	proper noun
天帝	天帝	tiāndì	Emperor of Heaven	proper noun
七夕	七夕	qīxī	July 7th	proper noun
长距离恋爱	長距離戀愛	cháng jùlí liàn ài	long-distance relationship	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你听说过牛郎织女的传说吗? nǐ tīngshuō guo niúláng zhī nǚ de chuánshuō ma ? Have you heard the legend of The Cowherd and the Weaving Maid?	七夕是中国的情人节。 qīxī shì Zhōngguó de Qíng rén jié . July 7th of lunar calendar is the Valentine's Day of China.
你谈过长距离恋爱吗? nǐ tán guo cháng jùlí liàn'ài ma ? Have you ever had a long-distance relationship?	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #10 Ghost Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

10

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
中元节	中元節	zhōngyuán jié	Ghost Festival	proper noun
馒头	饅頭	mántou	steamed bread	noun
美味佳肴	美味佳餚	měiwèi jiāyáo	delicacy	phrase
禁忌	禁忌	jìnjì	taboo	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我喜欢吃馒头。 Wǒ xǐhuān chī mántou . I like eating steamed bread.	除夕之夜，我们全家汇聚一堂，享受美味佳肴。 Chúxī zhī yè , wǒmen quánjiā huìjù yī táng , xiǎngshòu měiwèi jiāyáo . At New Year's Eve, our families all gathered together, and ate delicacies.
你知道有关中国新年的禁忌吗？ nǐ zhīdào yǒuguān Zhōngguó Xīnnián de jīnjì ma ? Do you know any taboos about Chinese New Year?	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #11 Double Ninth Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

11

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
重阳节	重陽節	chóngyáng jié	Double Ninth Festival	proper noun
久	久	jiǔ	long	adjective
登高	登高	dēnggāo	ascending heights	verb
菊花	菊花	júhuā	chrysanthemum	noun
糕	糕	gāo	cake	noun
高	高	gāo	height	adjective
九	九	jiǔ	nine	numeral
重阳	重陽	chóngyáng	"double ninth" or "double yang"	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我希望不会要太久。 wǒ xīwàng bùhuì yào tài jiǔ . I hope it doesn't take too long.	菊花是我最喜欢的花。 júhuā shì Wǒ zuì xǐhuān de huā zhīyī . Chrysanthemums are my favorite flower.
菊花是日本皇室的象征。 Júhuā shì Riběn Huángshì de xiàngzhēng. The chrysanthemum is a symbol of Japanese royalty.	他身高比我高。 tā shēngāo bǐ Wǒ gāo . He is taller than me.
他爸爸一九八九年来美国。 Tā bàba yī jiǔ bā jiǔ nián lái Měiguó. His dad came to America in 1989.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #12 Winter Solstice Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#12

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
冬至	冬至	dōngzhì	winter solstice	proper noun
饺子	餃子	jiǎozi	dumpling	noun
好吃不过饺子 好吃不過餃子		hǎochī búguò jiǎozi	There is no better food than dumplings.	expression
圆	圓	yuán	round	noun
数九	數九	shǔ jiǔ	"counting nine"	phrase
张仲景	張仲景	Zhāng Zhòngjǐng	Zhang Zhongjing	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

今天是冬至，我们来做汤圆吧。 jīntiān shì dōng zhì , wǒmen lái zuò Tāng Yuánba . It's the Winter Solstice Festival today, so let's make some sweet dumplings!	我做的饺子大家都喜欢吃。 Wǒ zuò de jiǎozi dàjiā dōu xǐhuān chī . Everyone likes the dumplings I made.
张仲景是中国古代有名的医生。 Zhāng Zhòngjǐng shì Zhōngguó gǔdài yǒumíng de yīshēng . Zhang Zhongjing was a famous doctor in ancient China.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #13 Children's Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

13

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
儿童节	兒童節	értóng jié	Children's Day	proper noun
儿童	兒童	értóng	children	noun
集体活动	集體活動	jítǐ huódòng	collective activities	phrase
联合国	聯合國	Liánhéguó	United Nations	proper noun
童心未泯	童心未泯	tóngxīnwèi mǐn	"one's childish heart remains"	phrase
中华人民共和国	中華人民共和國	Zhōnghuá rén mǐn gòng hé guó	The People's Republic of China	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我买了几件儿童穿的衣服。 Wǒ mǎi le jǐ jiàn értóng chuān de yīfu . I bought some children's clothing.	你参加这次的集体活动吗？ nǐ cānjiā zhècì de jítǐ huódòng ma ? Will you join in on these collective activities?
中国的全称是中华人民共和国。 Zhōngguó de quánchēngshì Zhōnghuá rén mǐn gòng hé guó . The full name of China is The People's Republic of China.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #14 Dragon Head Raising Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#14

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
风调雨顺	風調雨順	fēngtiáoyǔshùn	favorable weather	phrase
降雨	降雨	jiàngyǔ	rainfall	noun
吃龙耳	吃龍耳	chī Lóng ěr	eating dragon ears	phrase
吃龙须面	吃龍鬚麵	chī Lóng Xū miàn	eating dragon beard	phrase
太阳糕	太陽糕	tàiyáng gāo	sun cake	noun
中和节	中和節	zhōnghé jié	Dragon Head Raising Day	proper noun
龙	龍	lóng	dragon	noun
皇帝	皇帝	huángdì	emperor	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

降雨后，空气很清新。 jiàngyǔhòu , kōngqì hěn qīngxīn . After the rainfall, the air becomes fresh.	我从来没有吃过太阳糕。 Wǒ cónglái méiyǒu chīguò tàiyáng gāo . I have never eaten a sun cake.
你见过真的龙吗？ nǐ jiànguo zhēnde Lóng Ma ? Have you ever seen a real dragon?	你喜欢哪一位皇帝？ nǐ xǐhuān nǎ yī wèi huángdì ? Which emperor do you like the most?

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #15 International Women's Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

15

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
女性权利	女性權利	nǚxìng quánlì	women's rights	phrase
姑娘节	姑娘節	gū niang jié	Goddess Festival	proper noun
女儿节	女兒節	nǚér jié	Girl's Day	proper noun
三八	三八	sānbā	Three Eight	proper noun
国际妇女节	國際婦女節	guójì fùnǚ jié	International Women's Day	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

她决定要为维护女性权利奉献一生。 tā juéding yào wéi wéihù nǚxìng quánlì fèngxiàn yīshēng . She decided to dedicate her life to working to protect women's rights.	女儿节是七夕节的另一种说法。 nǚér jié shì qīxī jié de lìngyī zhǒng shuōfa . Girl's Day is another expression for Chinese Valentine's Day.
三八是指3月8日。 sānbāshìzhǐ Sān yuè Bā Rì . Three Eight" refers to March 3.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #16 National Tree Planting Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

16

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
植树节	植樹節	zhíshù jié	National Tree Planting Day	proper noun
植树活动	植樹活動	zhíshùhuódòng	tree-planting activities	phrase
三北	三北	sān běi	Three Norths	proper noun
森林	森林	sēnlín	forests	noun
野生动物保护区	野生動物保護區	yěshēngdòngwù bǎohùqū	wildlife reserves	phrase
国父孙中山	國父孫中山	guófù Sūnzhōngshān	Sun Yat-sen	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

孩子们正在参加植树活动。 háizimen zhèngzài cānjiā zhíshùhuódòng . Children are taking part in tree planting activities.	三北是指哪些区域？ sān běi shìzhǐnǎxiē qūyù ? Which areas does "Three Norths" refer to?
这些动物都住在森林里。 zhè xiē dòngwu dōu zhù zài sēnlín lǐ . These animals all live in forests.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #17

CPC Founding Day and Anniversary of the Return of Hong Kong

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

17

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
建党节香港回归	建黨節香港回歸	jiàndǎng jié Xiānggǎng huíguī	CPC Founding Day and Anniversary of the Return of Hong Kong	phrase
中国共产党	中國共產黨	Zhōngguó gòngchǎndǎng	Chinese Communist Party (CPC)	proper noun
一国两制	一國兩制	yìguóliǎngzhì	one country, two political systems	phrase
邓小平	鄧小平	Dèng Xiǎopíng	Deng Xiaoping	proper noun
主权	主權	zhǔquán	sovereignty	noun
毛泽东	毛澤東	Máo Zédōng	Mao Zedong	noun, proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

中国共产党是中国最大的党。 Zhōngguó gòngchǎndǎng shì Zhōngguó zuì dà de Dǎng . The Chinese Communist Party is the biggest party in China.	主权是什么意思？ zhǔquán shì shénme yìsi ? What's the meaning of sovereignty?
--	---

毛泽东是一位伟大的领导人。
Máo Zédōng shì yī wèi wěidà de lǐngdǎorén .

Mao Zedong is a great leader.

1949年，毛泽东在北京宣布中华人民共和国成立。

Yījiūsìjiǔ nián, Máo Zédōng zài Běijīng xuānbù
Zhōnghuárénmíngònghe chénglì.

In 1949, Mao Zedong announced the
establishment of the People's Republic of
China in Beijing.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #18 The Little New Year

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

18

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
小年	小年	xiǎo nián	The Little New Year	proper noun
灶神	灶神	zàoshén	Kitchen God	proper noun
祭灶节	祭灶節	jìzào jié	Kitchen God Festival	proper noun
官三民四船五	官三民四船五	guān sān mín sì chuán wǔ	official three civilian four fisherman five	phrase
柴米油盐酱醋茶	柴米油鹽醬醋茶	cháimǐyóuyuán jiàng cù chá	firewood, rice, oil, salt, soy, vinegar and tea, firewood	phrase
玉皇大帝	玉皇大帝	yùhuángdàdì	Jade Emperor	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我每年都和好朋友一起过小年。 Wǒ měi nián dōu héhǎo péngyou yìqǐ guò Xiǎo Nián . Every year, I stay with my close friend during the Little New Year.	在中国，人们认为每个灶头都有一个灶神。 zài Zhōngguó , rénmen rènwéi měige zào tóu dū yǒu yī ge zào shén . In China, people think there is one Kitchen God in each kitchen.
玉皇大帝是神仙们的皇帝。 yù huáng dàdìshì shénxiān men de huángdì . The Jade Emperor is the emperor of the immortals.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #19 Teachers' Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

19

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
教师节	教師節	jiàoshī jié	Teachers' Day	proper noun
人有三尊： 君、父、师	人有三尊： 君，父，師	rén yǒu sān zūn : jūn , fù , Shī	three to respect: the emperor, father and teacher	expression
感谢	感謝	gǎnxiè	to appreciate	verb
学年度优秀教师	學年度優秀教師	xuénián dù yōuxiùjiāoshī	Excellent Teacher	phrase
孔子	孔子	Kǒng Zǐ	Confucius	proper noun
毕业生	畢業生	bìyè shēng	alumni	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

对得到的一切都要怀着感谢的心。 duì dé dào de yīqiè dū yào huáizhe gǎnxiè de xīn . We must appreciate everything we get.	孔子是儒家学说的创始人。 Kǒngzǐ shì rújiā xuéshuō de chuàngshǐrén . Confucius is the founder of Confucianism.
孔子又被叫作孔夫子。 Kǒngzǐ yòu bèi jiàozuò Kǒng Fūzǐ. Confucius was also called Kong Fuzi (Master Kong).	毕业生们都回母校庆祝校庆。 Bìyè shēng men dōu huí mǔjiào qìngzhù xiào qìng . The alumni all went back to the school to celebrate the anniversary.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #20 Valentine's Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#20

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
光棍节	光棍節	guāng gùn jié	Single's Day	proper noun
光棍的聚会	光棍的聚會	guānggùnde jùhuì	party for single sticks	phrase
情人	情人	qíngrén	lover	noun
情人节	情人節	Qíngrén Jié	Valentine's Day	noun
礼物	禮物	lǐwù	gift	noun
情侣	情侶	qínglǚ	couple	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这个酒吧今年会举行光棍的聚会。 zhège jiǔbā jīnnián huì jǔxíng guānggùnde jùhuì . This bar will hold a party for single sticks this year.	她是他的情人。 tā shì tā de qíngrén . She is his lover.
星期一是情人节，你有时间吗？ Xīng qī yī shì qíngrénjié, nǐ yǒu shíjiān ma? Monday is Valentine's Day. Do you have time?	挑选礼物真的很令我头疼。 tiāoxuǎn lǐwù zhēnde hěn lǐng Wǒ tóuténg . Choosing a gift is a real headache for me.
这一套家具是专门为情侣设计的。 zhè yī tào jiājù shì zhuānmén wèi qínglǚ shèjì de . This set of furniture is specially designed for couples.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #21 Christmas Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#21

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
商机	商機	shāngjī	opportunity	noun
圣诞果	聖誕果	Shèngdàn guǒ	Christmas Fruit, apple	noun
圣诞老人	聖誕老人	Shèngdàn Lǎorén	Santa Clause	noun, proper noun
圣诞夜	聖誕夜	Shèngdànyè	Christmas Eve	noun, proper noun
圣诞节	聖誕節	shèngdàn jié	Christmas Day	proper noun
改革开放	改革開放	gǎigé kāifàng	economic reform and opening-up policy	proper noun, phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

聪明的商人总是能从细小的方面发现商机。 cōngmíng de shāngrén zǒngshì néng cóng xìxiǎo de fāngmiàn fāxiàn shāngjī . A clever businessman can always find an opportunity in a small matter.	圣诞老人驾着驯鹿来到孩子们的家。 Shèngdànlǎorén jiàzhe xùnlù láidào háizimen de jiā . Santa Claus came to the children's homes by riding a flying reindeer sleigh.
街上有很多圣诞老人。 Jiēshàng yǒu hěn duō Shèngdàn Lǎorén. There are a lot of Santa Clauses on the street.	和家人们一起过圣诞夜真开心。 hé jiārénmen yìqǐ guò Shèngdànyè zhēn kāixīn . The happy family is together on Christmas Eve.

圣诞夜我们有个派对。

Shèngdànyè wǒmen yǒu gè pàiduì.

On Christmas Eve, we are having a party.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #22 April Fools' Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#22

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
愚人	愚人	yú rén	fool	noun
开玩笑	開玩笑	kāi wánxiào	playing tricks	phrase
网络世界	網絡世界	wǎngluò shìjiè	online world	noun
愚人节	愚人節	yú rén jié	April Fools' day	noun
愚公移山	愚公移山	yú gōng yí shān	Old man Yu Gong who moved away to the mountains	phrase, expression

SAMPLE SENTENCES

当你被叫做愚人的时候你会生气吗？ dàng nǐ bèi jiàozuò yú rén de shíhòu nǐ huì shēngqì ma ? Do you feel angry if you are called a fool?	别生气，我是开玩笑的。 bié shēngqì , Wǒ shì kāi wánxiào de . Don't be angry, I'm just joking.
在网络世界里，我们可以和不认识的人聊天。 zài wǎngluò shìjiè lǐ , wǒmen kěyǐ hé bù rènshi de rén liáotiān . We can chat with people we don't know in the online world.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #23 Chinese New Year's Eve

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

23

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
岁岁平安	歲歲平安	sui sui ping an	Peace all year round!	expression
除夕	除夕	Chúxī	Chinese New Year's Eve	noun, proper noun
门神	門神	ménshén	door god	noun
团圆饭	團圓飯	tuányuán fàn	reunion dinner	none
鱼	魚	yú	fish	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

在除夕，我们通常和家人一起吃饭。 zài Chúxī , wǒmen tōngcháng hé jiārén yìqǐ chīfàn . We usually have meals with our families on Chinese New Year's Eve.	今天是除夕，明天是春节。 Jīntiān shì Chúxī, míngtiān shì Chūnjié. Today is Chinese New Year's eve. Tomorrow is Chinese New Year.
我和家人吃着团圆饭，迎接新的一年到来。 Wǒ hé jiārén chīzhe tuányuánfàn , yíngjiē xīn de yī nián dàolái . I have a reunion dinner with my family and wait for the new year to come.	鱼在河里游着。 yú zài hé lǐ yóuzhe . The fish are swimming in the river.
鱼不能离开水。 Yú bù néng líkāi shuǐ . Fish cannot live without water.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #24 Laba Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#24

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
吃冰	吃冰	chī bīng	eating ice	phrase
算	算	suàn	to calculate	verb
腊八节	臘八節	làbā jié	Laba Festival	proper noun
腊八粥	臘八粥	làbāzhōu	Laba congee	noun, proper noun
腊八蒜	臘八蒜	làbā suàn	Laba garlic	noun, proper noun
腊月	臘月	làyuè	the twelfth lunar month	noun
蒜	蒜	suàn	garlic	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

让我算一算这些一共多少钱。 ràng wǒ suàn yī suàn zhè xiē yīgòng duō shǎo qián . Let me calculate how much they are.	中国人习惯在腊八节的时候喝腊八粥。 Zhōngguó rén xíguàn zài Là bā jié de shíhou hē Là bā yù . Chinese people used to eat Laba congee during Laba Festival.
一到腊月，大家都很忙。 yī dào làyuè , dàjiā dōu hěn máng . When the twelfth lunar month comes, all people become busy.	我很喜欢吃蒜。 Wǒ hěn xǐhuān chī suàn . I like eating garlic very much.
她对蒜过敏。 Tā duì suàn guòmǐn. She is allergic to garlic.	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in China #25 Youth Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#25

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
大规模游行	聲勢浩大 大規模游行	dà guī mó yóuxíng	massive protest	phrase
社会实践	社會實踐	shèhuì shíjiàn	social activities	noun
五四青年节	五四青年節	wǔsì qīngnián jié	Youth Day	proper noun
成人冠礼	成人冠禮	chéng rén guān lǐ	coming of age ceremony	noun, phrase
爱国主义	愛國主義	àiguózhǔyì	patriotism	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

3000个学生参加了这次大规模游行。 ānqiān ge xuésheng cānjiā le zhècì dà guī mó yóuxíng . Three thousand students participated in this massive protest.	五四青年节是为纪念五四运动而设立的。 Wǔsìqīngniánjié shì wèi jìniàn wǔ sì yùndòng ér shèlì de . Youth Day was set to commemorate the May 4th movement.
举行过成人冠礼，就是大人了。 jǔxíng guo chéng rén guān lǐ , jiùshì dàren le . After the coming of age ceremony, we are recognized as adults.	学校举行活动来进行爱国主义教育。 xuéxiào jǔxíng huódòng lái jìnxíng àiguó Zhǔyì jiàoyù . The school held an activity for patriotism education.